



**QuTS hero 4.5.0**

# **User Guide**

# Contents

## 1. Preface

Audience.....	9
Document Conventions.....	9

## 2. Overview

About QTS hero.....	10
What's New in QTS hero 4.5.0.....	10
Support and Other Resources.....	10
NAS Access.....	11
Accessing the NAS Using a Browser.....	11
Accessing the NAS Using Qfinder Pro.....	12
Accessing the NAS Using Qmanager.....	12
2-step Verification.....	13
QTS hero Navigation.....	15
Task Bar.....	15
Main Menu.....	23
Desktop.....	25
Getting Started.....	29

## 3. Storage & Snapshots

QNAP Flexible Storage Architecture.....	31
Global Settings.....	32
Storage Global Settings.....	32
Disk Health Global Settings.....	32
Snapshot Global Settings.....	33
Storage.....	33
Disks.....	33
Storage Pools.....	40
Shared Folders.....	48
RAID.....	55
Self-Encrypting Drives (SEDs).....	60
Expansion Units.....	63
Expansion Unit Actions.....	63
Expansion Unit Automatic Recovery.....	64
QNAP External RAID Devices.....	64
Snapshots.....	77
Snapshot Storage Limitations.....	77
Snapshot Creation.....	77
Snapshot Management.....	79
Snapshot Data Recovery.....	81
Snapshot Clone.....	84
Snapshot Replica.....	85
Cache Acceleration.....	96
Cache Acceleration Requirements.....	97
Creating the SSD Cache.....	97
Configuring SSD Cache Disks.....	98
Configuring Cached Storage.....	98
Removing the SSD Cache.....	99
External Storage.....	99
External Storage Device Actions.....	100
External Storage Disk Actions.....	100

External Storage Partition Actions.....	100
Formatting an External Storage Partition.....	101
VJBOD (Virtual JBOD).....	102
VJBOD Requirements.....	103
VJBOD Limitations.....	103
VJBOD Automatic Reconnection.....	103
VJBOD Creation.....	103
VJBOD Management.....	108

## 4. System Settings

General Settings.....	111
Configuring System Administration Settings.....	111
Configuring Time Settings.....	112
Configuring Daylight Saving Time.....	113
Configuring Codepage Settings.....	114
Configuring Region Settings.....	114
Configuring the Login Screen.....	114
Security.....	114
Configuring the Allow/Deny List.....	115
Configuring IP Access Protection.....	115
Configuring Account Access Protection.....	116
Certificate & Private Key.....	116
Configuring the Password Policy.....	118
Hardware.....	118
Configuring General Hardware Settings.....	118
Configuring Audio Alert Settings.....	119
Configuring Smart Fan Settings.....	119
Configuring Expansion Cards Settings.....	120
Power.....	121
Wake-on-LAN (WOL).....	121
Power Recovery.....	121
Power Schedule.....	121
Firmware Update.....	122
Checking for Live Updates.....	122
Updating the Firmware Manually.....	123
Updating the Firmware Using Qfinder Pro.....	123
Backup/Restore.....	124
Backing Up System Settings.....	124
Restoring System Settings.....	124
System Reset and Restore to Factory Default.....	125
External Device.....	126
USB Printer.....	126
Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS).....	128
System Status.....	129
System Logs.....	130
System Event Logs.....	130
System Connection Logs.....	130
Online Users.....	131
Syslog Client Management.....	132
Resource Monitor.....	133

## 5. Privilege Settings

Users.....	135
Default User Accounts.....	135
Creating a Local User.....	135
Creating Multiple Users.....	137

- User Account Lists.....138
- Importing Users.....139
- Exporting Users.....140
- Modifying User Account Information.....140
- Deleting Users.....142
- Home Folders.....142
- User Groups.....143
  - Default User Groups.....143
  - Creating a User Group.....143
  - Modifying User Group Information.....144
  - Deleting User Groups.....145
- Shared Folders.....146
  - Default Shared Folders.....146
  - Creating a Shared Folder.....146
  - Editing Shared Folder Properties.....149
  - Refreshing a Shared Folder.....151
  - Removing Shared Folders.....151
  - ISO Shared Folders.....151
  - Shared Folder Permissions.....153
  - Folder Aggregation.....156
  - Shared Folder Encryption.....158
  - Shared Folder Access.....160
- Quota.....165
  - Enabling Quotas.....166
  - Editing Quota Settings.....166
  - Exporting Quota Settings.....167
  - Quota Conflicts.....167
- Domain Security.....167
  - Active Directory (AD) Authentication.....168
  - LDAP Authentication.....171
  - AD and LDAP Management.....172
- Domain Controller.....174
  - Enabling a Domain Controller.....174
  - Resetting a Domain Controller.....175
  - Default Domain User Accounts.....175
  - Creating a Domain User.....176
  - Creating Multiple Domain Users.....177
  - Domain User Account Lists.....178
  - Modifying Domain User Account Information.....179
  - Deleting Domain Users.....180
  - Domain User Groups.....181
  - Computers.....182
  - DNS.....184
  - Back Up/Restore.....187

## 6. Network & File Services

- Network Access.....188
  - Service Binding.....188
  - Proxy.....188
- Win/Mac/NFS.....189
  - Microsoft Networking.....189
  - Apple Networking.....191
  - NFS Service.....192
- Telnet/SSH.....192
  - Configuring Telnet Connections.....192
  - Configuring SSH Connections.....193
  - Editing SSH Access Permissions.....193

SNMP.....	193
Configuring SNMP Settings.....	193
SNMP Management Information Base (MIB).....	195
Service Discovery.....	196
UPnP Discovery Service.....	196
Bonjour.....	196
Network Recycle Bin.....	196
Configuring the Network Recycle Bin.....	196
Deleting All Files in the Network Recycle Bin.....	197
Restricting Access to the Network Recycle Bin.....	197

## 7. File Station

Overview.....	198
About File Station.....	198
System Requirements.....	198
Supported File Formats.....	198
Parts of the User Interface.....	199
Settings.....	200
File Operations.....	204
Uploading a File.....	205
Downloading a File.....	206
Opening a File.....	206
Opening Microsoft Word, Excel, and PowerPoint Files Using the Chrome Extension.....	207
Opening a Text File Using Text Editor.....	207
Viewing a File in Google Docs.....	208
Viewing a File in Microsoft Office Online.....	208
Opening Image Files Using Image2PDF.....	209
Viewing File Properties.....	209
Modifying File Permissions.....	210
Sorting Files.....	211
Copying a File.....	211
Moving a File.....	212
Renaming a File.....	213
Deleting a File.....	214
Restoring a Deleted File.....	214
Mounting an ISO File.....	215
Unmounting an ISO File.....	215
Compressing a File.....	215
Sharing a File or Folder by Email.....	216
Sharing a File or Folder on a Social Network.....	218
Sharing a File or Folder Using Share Links.....	219
Sharing a File or Folder with a NAS User.....	219
Playing an Audio File.....	221
Playing a Video File.....	221
Playing a Video File Using a Third-Party Player.....	221
Opening a 360-degree Image or Video File.....	222
Streaming to a Network Media Player.....	223
Adding a File to the Transcoding Folder.....	223
Canceling or Deleting Transcoding.....	224
Viewing Transcode Information.....	225
Extracting Compressed Files or Folders.....	225
Folder Operations.....	225
Uploading a Folder.....	226
Uploading a Folder Using Drag and Drop.....	227
Viewing Folder Properties.....	227
Viewing Storage Information.....	228
Modifying Folder Permissions.....	229

Viewing Qsync Folders.....	230
Managing Share Links.....	230
Viewing Files and Folders Shared with Me.....	231
Creating a Folder.....	231
Copying a Folder.....	231
Creating a Desktop Shortcut.....	232
Adding a Folder to Favorites.....	232
Removing a Folder from Favorites.....	233
Compressing a Folder.....	233
Deleting a Folder.....	234
Creating a Shared Folder.....	235
Sharing Space with a New User.....	237
Adding a Folder to the Transcoding Folder.....	238
Canceling or Deleting Transcoding.....	239
Locking or Unlocking an Encrypted Shared Folder.....	239
Keeping a Folder or a File in Reserved Cache.....	240
Removing a Folder from Reserved Cache.....	241

## 8. myQNAPcloud

Getting Started.....	243
Account Setup.....	243
Creating a QNAP ID.....	243
Registering a Device to myQNAPcloud.....	244
Installing myQNAPcloud Link.....	245
Overview.....	245
Configuring Port Forwarding.....	246
Configuring My DDNS Settings.....	246
Configuring Published Services.....	247
Enabling myQNAPcloud Link.....	247
Configuring Device Access Controls.....	248
Installing an SSL Certificate.....	248

## 9. App Center

Overview.....	250
Left Panel.....	250
Toolbar.....	250
Main Area.....	251
App Operations.....	252
Viewing App Information.....	252
Installing an App from App Center.....	252
Installing an App Manually.....	253
Updating an App.....	253
Batch Updating Multiple Apps.....	254
Enabling or Disabling an App.....	254
Migrating an App.....	254
Granting or Denying User Access to an App.....	255
Uninstalling an App.....	255
App Center Settings.....	255
Adding an App Repository.....	255
Configuring App Update Settings.....	256
Digital Signatures.....	256
Enabling Installation of Apps without Valid Digital Signatures.....	257

## 10. Network & Virtual Switch

About Network & Virtual Switch.....	258
Basic and Advanced Mode.....	258

Overview.....	258
Interfaces.....	259
IP Address.....	259
DNS.....	261
Virtual LANs (VLANs).....	262
Port Trunking.....	263
System Default Gateway.....	264
USB QuickAccess.....	265
Wi-Fi.....	267
Thunderbolt.....	270
Virtual Switches.....	271
Creating a Virtual Switch in Basic Mode.....	272
Creating a Virtual Switch in Advanced Mode.....	272
Creating a Virtual Switch in Software-defined Switch Mode.....	275
DHCP Server .....	276
Creating a DHCP Server .....	277
RADVD.....	279
Route.....	282
Creating a Static Route.....	283
DDNS.....	284
Adding a DDNS Service.....	284

## 11. iSCSI & Fibre Channel

Storage Limits.....	285
iSCSI Storage Limits.....	285
Fibre Channel Storage Limits.....	285
iSCSI & Fibre Channel Global Settings.....	285
Creating a Block-Based LUN.....	286
iSCSI.....	288
Getting Started with iSCSI.....	288
iSCSI Performance Optimization.....	288
iSCSI Storage.....	289
Remote Disk.....	297
Fibre Channel.....	299
FC Ports.....	299
FC Storage.....	302
FC WWPN Aliases.....	304
LUN Import/Export.....	306
Creating a LUN Export Job.....	307
Importing a LUN from an Image File.....	308
LUN Import/Export Job Actions.....	310
LUN Import/Export Job Status.....	310

## 12. Multimedia

HybridDesk Station (HD Station).....	311
Installing HD Station.....	312
Configuring HD Station.....	313
HD Station Applications.....	314
Using HD Player in HD Station.....	314
DLNA Media Server.....	314
Enabling DLNA Media Server.....	314
Configuring DLNA Media Server.....	315
Media Streaming Add-on.....	315
Configuring General Settings.....	316
Configuring Browsing Settings.....	317
Configuring Media Receivers.....	317

Multimedia Console.....	318
Overview.....	318
Content Management.....	318
Indexing.....	319
Thumbnail Generation.....	320
Transcoding.....	323
Multimedia App Suite.....	328

### 13. Notification Center

Overview.....	332
Notification Queue and History.....	332
Queue.....	332
History.....	332
Service Account and Device Pairing.....	333
Email Notifications.....	334
SMS Notifications.....	336
Instant Messaging Notifications.....	337
Push Notifications.....	339
System Notification Rules.....	341
Event Notifications.....	341
Alert Notifications.....	345
Global Notification Settings.....	348
System Logs.....	349

### 14. License Center

Related Portals.....	350
Buying Licenses Using QNAP ID.....	350
License Activation.....	351
Activating a License Using QNAP ID.....	352
Activating a License Using a Product or License Key.....	352
Activating a License Using a PAK.....	353
Activating a License Offline.....	354
License Deactivation.....	355
Deactivating a License Using QNAP ID.....	355
Deactivating a License Offline.....	356
License Extension.....	357
Extending a License Using QNAP ID.....	357
Extending a License Offline Using an Unused License.....	358
Extending a License Offline Using a Product Key.....	359
Extending a License by Purchasing Online.....	360
License Management.....	361
Recovering Licenses.....	361
Transferring a License to the New QNAP License Server.....	362
Deleting a License.....	362

### 15. Helpdesk

Overview.....	363
Configuring Settings.....	363
Help Request.....	363
Submitting a Ticket.....	364
Remote Support.....	365
Enabling Remote Support.....	365
Extending Remote Support.....	365
Disabling Remote Support.....	365
Diagnostic Tool.....	366
Downloading Logs.....	366







Performing an HDD Standby Test.....	366
Performing an HDD Stress Test.....	366

# 1. Preface

## Audience

This document is intended for consumers and storage administrators. This guide assumes that the user has a basic understanding of storage and backup concepts.

## Document Conventions

Symbol	Description
	Notes provide default configuration settings and other supplementary information.
	Important notes provide information on required configuration settings and other critical information.
	Tips provide recommendations or alternative methods of performing tasks or configuring settings.
	Warnings provide information that, when ignored, may result in potential loss, injury, or even death.

## 2. Overview

### About QuTS hero

QuTS hero is a Linux-based operating system that runs applications for file management, virtualization, surveillance, multimedia, and other purposes. The optimized kernel and various services efficiently manage system resources, support applications, and protect your data. QuTS hero also has built-in utilities that extend the functionality and improve the performance of the NAS.

QuTS hero uses the advanced ZFS file system, which offers features such as inline data duplication, compression, compaction, self healing, and multi-level caching to ensure data integrity and high performance.

The multi-window, multitasking user interface helps you to manage the NAS, user accounts, data, and apps. Out of the box, QuTS hero provides built-in features that allow you to easily store and share files. QuTS hero also contains App Center, which offers additional downloadable applications for customizing the NAS and improving user workflows.

### What's New in QuTS hero 4.5.0

QuTS hero 4.5.0 is the first public release of the QuTS hero operating system. QuTS hero 4.5.0 offers the following new features:

- **ZFS:** An advanced file system, which ensures high performance and data integrity.
- **Inline data deduplication:** A block-based data reduction technique performed before data is written to storage. This helps optimize storage usage and reduce storage requirements.
- **Inline compression:** Compress data to reduce storage I/O workloads for improved performance.
- **Inline compaction:** QuTS hero rearranges how data is stored on SSDs, reducing the amount of space required to store data. This can help deliver higher cost efficiency for all-flash storage systems.
- **Data self-healing:** ZFS uses end-to-end checksums to detect and correct silent data corruption caused by hardware defects, bugs in firmware, or metadata errors.
- **New RAID types:** QuTS hero adds support for RAID Triple Parity for protecting against three-disk failures, and Triple Mirror for an identical copy of data stored on three disks.
- **RAID Z:** Designed to deal with petabytes of data, RAID Z allows you to create ready-to-use high-capacity RAID configurations in a matter of seconds.
- **Multi-level cache technology:** QuTS hero supports main memory read cache (L1 ARC), SSD second-level read cache (L2 ARC), and ZFS Intent Log (ZIL) for accelerated read and write performance and improved cache integrity.
- **Near limitless snapshots:** Support for up to 65,535 snapshots of iSCSI LUNs and shared folders. If one snapshot is created every hour, 24 snapshots per day, then up to seven years of snapshots can be stored on a single NAS.

### Support and Other Resources

QNAP provides the following resources:

Resource	URL
Documentation	<a href="https://docs.qnap.com">https://docs.qnap.com</a>

Resource	URL
Service Portal	<a href="https://service.qnap.com">https://service.qnap.com</a>
Downloads	<a href="https://download.qnap.com">https://download.qnap.com</a>
Community Forum	<a href="https://forum.qnap.com">https://forum.qnap.com</a>

## NAS Access

Method	Description	Requirements
Web browser	<p>You can access the NAS using any computer on the same network if you have the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NAS name (Example: <a href="#">http://example123/</a>) or IP address</li> <li>Logon credentials of a valid user account</li> </ul> <p>For details, see <a href="#">Accessing the NAS Using a Browser</a>.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Computer that is connected to the same network as the NAS</li> <li>Web browser</li> </ul>
Qfinder Pro	<p>Qfinder Pro is a desktop utility that enables you to locate and access QNAP NAS devices on a specific network. The utility supports Windows, macOS, Linux, and Chrome OS.</p> <p>For details, see <a href="#">Accessing the NAS Using Qfinder Pro</a>.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Computer that is connected to the same network as the NAS</li> <li>Web browser</li> <li>Qfinder Pro</li> </ul>
Qmanager	<p>Qmanager is a mobile application that enables administrators to manage and monitor NAS devices on the same network.</p> <p>You can download Qmanager from the Apple App Store and the Google Play Store.</p> <p>For details, see <a href="#">Accessing the NAS Using Qmanager</a>.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mobile device that is connected to the same network as the NAS</li> <li>Qmanager</li> </ul>
Explorer (Windows)	<p>You can map a NAS shared folder as a network drive to easily access files using Explorer.</p> <p>For details on mapping shared folders, see <a href="#">Mapping a Shared Folder on a Windows Computer</a>.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows computer that is connected to the same network as the NAS</li> <li>Qfinder Pro</li> </ul>
Finder (macOS)	<p>You can mount a NAS shared folder as a network drive to easily access files using Finder.</p> <p>For details on mounting shared folders, see <a href="#">Mounting a Shared Folder on a Mac Computer</a>.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mac computer that is connected to the same network as the NAS</li> <li>Qfinder Pro</li> </ul>

## Accessing the NAS Using a Browser

1. Verify that your computer is connected to the same network as the NAS.

2. Open a web browser on your computer.
3. Type the IP address of the NAS in the address bar.

**Tip**

If you do not know the IP address of the NAS, you can locate it using Qfinder Pro. For details, see [Accessing the NAS Using Qfinder Pro](#).

The QuTS hero login screen appears.

4. Specify your username and password.
5. Click **Login**.  
The QuTS hero desktop appears.

## Accessing the NAS Using Qfinder Pro

1. Install Qfinder Pro on a computer that is connected to the same network as the NAS.

**Tip**

To download Qfinder Pro, go to <https://www.qnap.com/en/utilities>.

2. Open Qfinder Pro.  
Qfinder Pro automatically searches for all QNAP NAS devices on the network.
3. Locate the NAS in the list, and then double-click the name or IP address.  
The QuTS hero login screen opens in the default web browser.
4. Specify your username and password.
5. Click **Login**.  
The QuTS hero desktop appears.

## Accessing the NAS Using Qmanager

1. Install Qmanager on an Android or iOS device.

**Tip**

To download Qmanager, go to the Apple App Store or the Google Play Store.

2. Open Qmanager.
3. Tap **Add NAS**.  
Qmanager automatically searches for all QNAP NAS devices on the network.
4. Locate the NAS in the list, and then tap the name or IP address.
5. Specify your username and password.
6. Optional: If your mobile device and NAS are not connected to the same subnet, perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Add NAS manually	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tap <b>Add NAS manually</b>.</li> <li>b. Specify the following information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Host name or IP address of the NAS</li> <li>• Password of the admin account</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Tap <b>Save</b>.</li> </ol>
Sign in using QID	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tap <b>Sign in QID</b>.</li> <li>b. Specify the following information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Email address that you used to create your QNAP account</li> <li>• Password of your QNAP account</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Tap <b>Sign in</b>.</li> <li>d. Locate the NAS in the list, and then tap the name or IP address.</li> </ol>

## 2-step Verification

2-step verification enhances the security of user accounts. When the feature is enabled, users are required to specify a six-digit security code in addition to the account credentials during the login process.

To use 2-step verification, you must install an authenticator application on your mobile device. The application must implement verification services using the Time-based One-time Password Algorithm (TOTP). QuTS hero supports Google Authenticator (for Android, iOS, and BlackBerry) and Authenticator (for Windows Phone).

### Enabling 2-step Verification

1. Install an authenticator application on your mobile device.  
QuTS hero supports the following applications:
  - Google Authenticator: Android, iOS, and BlackBerry
  - Authenticator: Windows Phone
2. Verify that the system times of the NAS and mobile device are synchronized.



**Tip**

QNAP recommends connecting to an NTP server to ensure that your NAS follows the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) standard.

3. In QuTS hero, go to **Options > 2-step Verification**.
4. Click **Get Started**.  
The **2-step Verification** window opens.
5. Open the authenticator application on your mobile phone.
6. Configure the application by scanning the QR code or specifying the security key displayed in the **2-step Verification** window.

7. In the **2-step Verification** window, click **Next**.  
The **Confirm your 2-step verification settings** screen appears.
8. Specify the security code generated by the authenticator application.
9. Select an alternative verification method that will be used whenever your mobile device is inaccessible.




Method	Steps
Answer a security question.	Select one of the options or provide your own security question.
Email a security code.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Notification Center &gt; Service Account and Device Pairing &gt; Email</b> .</li> <li>b. Verify that the SMTP server is correctly configured.</li> </ol>

10. Click **Finish**.

### Logging in to QuTS hero Using 2-step Verification

1. Specify your username and password.
2. Specify the security code generated by the authenticator application installed on your mobile device.
3. Optional: If your mobile device is inaccessible, click **Verify another way**.
4. Specify the answer to the security question.
5. Click **Login**.


### Disabling 2-step Verification

Situation	User Action	Steps
Users are locked out of their accounts.	Administrators can disable 2-step verification from the Control Panel.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; Users</b> .</li> <li>2. Identify a locked out user, and then click  .</li> <li>3. Deselect <b>2-step Verification</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
An administrator is locked out and no other administrators can access the account.	An administrator must restore the factory settings.	<p>Press the RESET button on the back of the NAS for three seconds. The NAS restores the default administrator password and network settings.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> For information on the default admin password, see <a href="#">Backup/Restore</a>.</p> <p> <b>Warning</b> Pressing the RESET button for 10 seconds resets all settings and deletes all data on the NAS.</p>


## QuTS hero Navigation


### Task Bar



No.	Element	Possible User Actions
1	<b>Show Desktop</b>	Click the button to minimize or restore all open windows.
2	<b>Main Menu</b>	Click the button to open the <b>Main Menu</b> panel on the left side of the desktop.
3	<b>Search</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Type key words to locate settings, applications, and help content.</li> <li>Click an entry in the search results to open the application, system utility, or <b>Help Center</b> window. If the application is not yet installed, QuTS hero opens the corresponding download screen in the <b>App Center</b> window.</li> </ul>
4	<b>Volume Control</b>  <b>Note</b> This feature is only available on models with certain hardware specifications.	Click the button to view the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Media Volume: Click and drag the slider thumb to adjust the audio volume for applications that use the built-in speaker or line-out jack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HD Station</li> <li>Music Station</li> <li>OceanKTV</li> </ul> </li> <li>Audio Alert Volume: Click and drag the slider thumb to adjust the volume of system audio alerts.</li> </ul>
5	<b>Background Tasks</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Position the mouse pointer over the button to see the number of background tasks that are running. Examples of background tasks are file backup and multimedia conversion.</li> <li>Click the button to see the following details for each background task:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Task name</li> <li>Task description</li> <li>Progress (percentage of completion)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Click <input type="checkbox"/> to stop a task.</li> </ul>

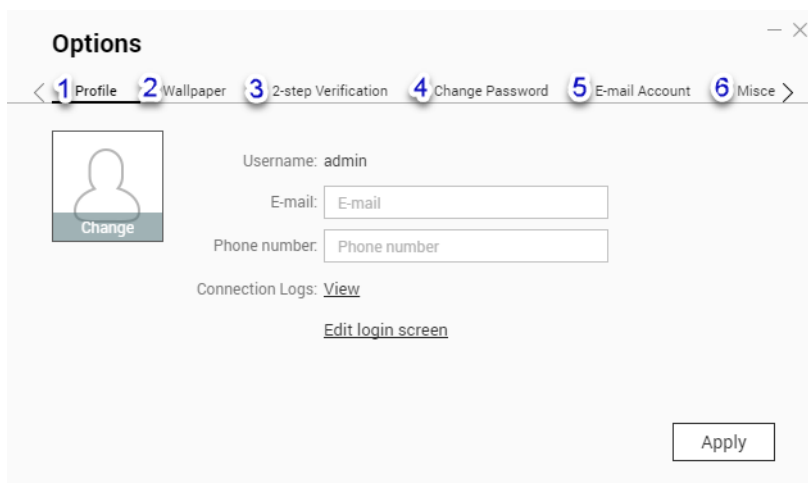


No.	Element	Possible User Actions
6	<b>External Devices</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Position the mouse pointer over the button to view the number of external storage devices and printers that are connected to the USB and SATA ports on the NAS.</li> <li>• Click the button to view the details for each connected device.</li> <li>• Click a listed device to open File Station and view the contents of the device.</li> </ul>
7	<b>Event Notifications</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Position the mouse pointer over the button to see the number of recent errors, warnings, and notices.</li> <li>• Click the button to view the following details for each event:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Event type</li> <li>• Description</li> <li>• Timestamp</li> <li>• Number of instances</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Click a list entry to view the related utility or application screen. Clicking a warning or error log entry opens the <b>System Logs</b> window.</li> <li>• Click <b>More&gt;&gt;</b> to open the <b>System Logs</b> window.</li> <li>• Click <b>Clear All</b> to delete all list entries.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can create notification rules using Notification Center. For details, see <a href="#">System Notification Rules</a>.</p>
8	<b>Options</b>	<p>Click your profile picture to open the <b>Options</b> screen. For details, see <a href="#">Options</a>.</p>

No.	Element	Possible User Actions
9	[USER_NAME]	<p>Click the button to view the last login time and the following menu items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Options:</b> Opens the <b>Options</b> window For details, see <a href="#">Options</a>.</li> <li>• <b>Sleep:</b> Keeps the NAS powered on but significantly reduces power consumption This feature is only available on models with certain hardware specifications.</li> <li>• <b>Restart:</b> Restarts the NAS</li> <li>• <b>Shutdown:</b> Shuts down QuTS hero and then powers off the NAS</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can also power off the NAS using one of the following methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press and hold the power button for 1.5 seconds.</li> <li>• Open Qfinder Pro, and then go to <b>Tools &gt; Shut down Device</b> .</li> <li>• Open Qmanager, and then go to <b>Menu &gt; System Tools &gt; System</b> . Tap <b>Shutdown</b>.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Logout:</b> Logs the user out of the current session</li> </ul>

No.	Element	Possible User Actions
10	<b>More</b>	<p>Click the button to view the following menu items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Help:</b> Displays links to the Quick Start Guide, Virtualization Guide, Help Center, and online tutorials page</li> <li>• <b>Language:</b> Opens a list of supported languages and allows you to change the language of the operating system</li> <li>• <b>Desktop Preferences:</b> Opens a list of display modes and allows you to select your preferred mode of displaying the QTuS hero desktop based on your device type</li> <li>• <b>Help Request:</b> Opens the Helpdesk window</li> <li>• <b>Data &amp; Privacy:</b> Opens the <b>QNAP Privacy Policy</b> page</li> <li>• <b>About:</b> Displays the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operating system</li> <li>• Hardware model</li> <li>• Operating system version</li> <li>• Number of installed drives</li> <li>• Number of empty drive bays</li> <li>• System pool name</li> <li>• Used disk space</li> <li>• Available disk space</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
11	<b>Dashboard</b>	<p>Click the button to display the dashboard. For details, see <a href="#">Dashboard</a>.</p>

## Options



No.	Tab	Possible User Actions
1	<b>Profile</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the following optional information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Profile picture</li> <li>• Email address</li> <li>• Phone number</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Click <b>View</b> to display the <b>System Connection Logs</b> screen.</li> <li>• Click <b>Edit login screen</b> to open the <b>Login Screen</b> configuration screen in the <b>Control Panel</b> window.</li> <li>• Click <b>Apply</b> to save all changes.</li> </ul>
2	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a wallpaper from the built-in options or upload a photo.</li> <li>• Click <b>Apply</b> to save all changes.</li> </ul>
3	<b>2-step Verification</b>	Click <b>Get Started</b> to open the configuration wizard. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling 2-step Verification</a> .
4	<b>Change Password</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specify the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Old password</b></li> <li>• <b>New password:</b> Specify a password with a maximum of 64 characters. QNAP recommends using passwords with at least 6 characters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Click <b>Apply</b> to save all changes.</li> </ul>
5	<b>E-mail Account</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add, edit, and delete email accounts to use when sharing files.</li> <li>• Click <b>Apply</b> to save all changes.</li> </ul>

No.	Tab	Possible User Actions
6	Miscellaneous	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable the following settings as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto logout after an idle period:</b> Specify the duration of inactivity after which the user is automatically logged out.</li> <li>• <b>Warn me when leaving QTS Hero:</b> When enabled, QTS hero prompts users for confirmation whenever they try to leave the desktop (by clicking the Back button or closing the browser). QNAP recommends enabling this setting.</li> <li>• <b>Reopen windows when logging back into NAS:</b> When enabled, the current desktop settings (including all open windows) are retained until the next session.</li> <li>• <b>Show the desktop switching button:</b> When enabled, QTS hero displays the desktop switching buttons &lt; &gt; on the left and right sides of the desktop.</li> <li>• <b>Show the link bar on the desktop:</b> When enabled, QTS hero displays the link bar on the bottom of the desktop.</li> <li>• <b>Show the Dashboard button:</b> When enabled, QTS hero displays the button to show the dashboard on the taskbar.</li> <li>• <b>Show the NAS time on the desktop:</b> When enabled, QTS hero displays the current NAS time, day, and date at the bottom-right of the desktop.</li> <li>• <b>Keep Main Menu open after selection:</b> When enabled, QTS hero keeps the main menu pinned to the desktop after you open it.</li> <li>• <b>Show a list of actions when external storage devices are detected:</b> When enabled, QTS hero displays an <b>Autoplay</b> dialog box whenever an external storage device is inserted into a USB or SATA port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Click <b>Apply</b> to save all changes.</li> </ul>

## Dashboard

The dashboard is divided into several sections:

- System Health (1):** Shows a server icon with a red 'X' and the text 'Alert'.
- Hardware Information (2):** Displays system temperature (34°C/93°F), SYS Fan 1 (3312 RPM), and SYS Fan 2 (3564 RPM).
- Resource Monitor (3):** Features circular gauges for CPU (0%) and RAM (8%), and a line graph for network activity.
- Disk health (5):** Shows 'NAS' with '11 / 12 Disks' and a 'Good' status.
- Storage (6):** Displays 'Web' storage usage, showing 'Used: 212.00 KB' and 'Available: 181.37 GB'.
- Online Users (7):** Lists one user 'admin' with session duration '00:00:46' and IP '172.20.254.2'.
- Scheduled Tasks (8):** Shows 'All Jobs' and 'Last 24 hours' filters, with a message: 'No scheduled tasks were executed.'


The dashboard opens in the lower right corner of the desktop.




**Tip**

You can click and drag a section onto any area of the desktop.

No.	Section	Displayed Information	User Actions
1	System Health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NAS name</li> <li>Uptime (number of days, hours, minutes and seconds)</li> <li>Health status</li> </ul>	Click the heading to open <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; System Status &gt; System Information</b> . If disk-related issues occur, clicking the heading to open <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots</b> .


No.	Section	Displayed Information	User Actions
2	Hardware Information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System temperature</li> <li>• CPU fan speed</li> <li>• System fan speed</li> <li>• System fan speed</li> </ul>	<p>Click the heading to open <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; System Status &gt; Hardware Information</b> .</p>
3	Resource Monitor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CPU usage in %</li> <li>• Memory usage in %</li> <li>• Network upload and download speeds for each adapter.</li> </ul>	<p>Click the heading to open <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Resource Monitor &gt; Overview</b> .</p>
4	Expansion Cards	<p>For each expansion card:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assignment (or "Ready" if unassigned)</li> <li>• Manufacturer</li> <li>• Model</li> <li>• Memory usage</li> <li>• GPU usage</li> <li>• Fan speed</li> <li>• Temperature</li> </ul>	<p>Click the heading to open <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Hardware &gt; Expansion Cards</b> .</p>
5	Disk Health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of installed disks</li> <li>• Health status of installed disks</li> <li>• Number of VJBOD disks</li> <li>• Health status of VJBOD disks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click the heading to open the <b>Disk Health</b> screen in <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots</b>.</li> <li>• Click  to switch between disk and NAS information.</li> <li>• Click a disk name to view the following information for each installed disk: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Capacity/size</li> <li>• Temperature</li> <li>• Health status</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Click <b>Details</b> to open <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Overview &gt; Storage</b> .</li> </ul>

No.	Section	Displayed Information	User Actions
6	Storage	<p>For each shared folder:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status</li> <li>• Used space</li> <li>• Available space</li> <li>• Folder size</li> </ul> <p>For each storage pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status</li> <li>• Used space</li> <li>• Available space</li> <li>• Shared folder size</li> </ul> <p>For each LUN:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Status</li> <li>• Used space</li> <li>• Available space</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click the heading to open the <b>Storage Resource</b> screen in the <b>Resource Monitor</b> window.</li> <li>• Click  to switch between shared folder and storage pool information.</li> </ul>
7	Online Users	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User name</li> <li>• Session duration</li> <li>• IP address</li> </ul>	Click the heading to open <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; System Logs &gt; Online Users</b> .
8	Scheduled Tasks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Task type</li> <li>• Task summary</li> <li>• Task name</li> <li>• Timestamp</li> <li>• Status</li> </ul>	Use the filters to view tasks that were executed within a specific period.
9	News	Links to QNAP announcements	Click the heading to open the relevant pages on the QNAP website.

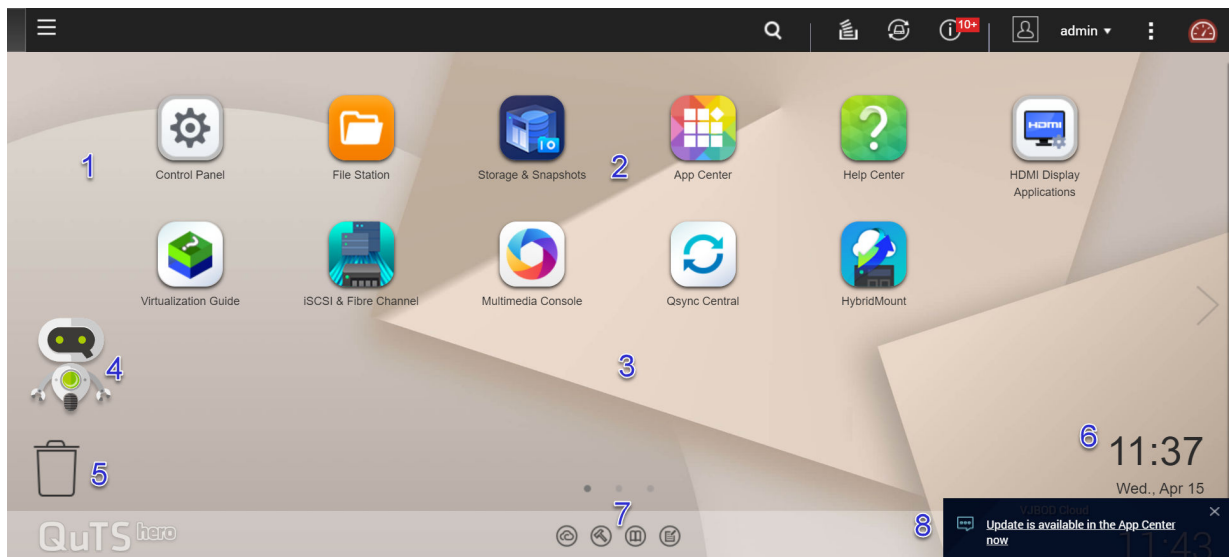
## Main Menu

No.	Section	Description	Possible User Actions
1	NAS Information	Displays the NAS name and model number.	N/A









No.	Section	Description	Possible User Actions
2	System	<p>Displays a list of system utilities and other programs that enable you to manage the NAS. The following are the default system utilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control Panel</li> <li>• Storage &amp; Snapshots</li> <li>• iSCSI &amp; Fibre Channel</li> <li>• Users</li> <li>• Network &amp; Virtual Switch</li> <li>• myQNAPcloud</li> <li>• Resource Monitor</li> <li>• App Center</li> <li>• Help Center</li> <li>• Qboost</li> <li>• HDMI Display Applications</li> </ul> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> This menu item only appears on models with certain hardware specifications.</p> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Open a system utility or application in the QuTS hero desktop               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click a menu item.</li> <li>• Right-click a menu item and then select <b>Open</b>.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Open an application in a new browser tab (only for certain apps)               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right-click a menu item and then select <b>Open in new browser tab</b>.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Create a shortcut on the desktop               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Right-click a menu item and then select <b>Create shortcut</b>.</li> <li>• Click and drag a menu item to the desktop.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
3	Applications	<p>Displays a list of applications developed by QNAP or third-party developers. When an app is installed, it is automatically added to the applications list. The following are the default applications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Backup Station</li> <li>• File Station</li> <li>• Helpdesk</li> <li>• License Center</li> <li>• Multimedia Console</li> <li>• Notification Center</li> <li>• QuTS hero SSL Certificate</li> </ul>	

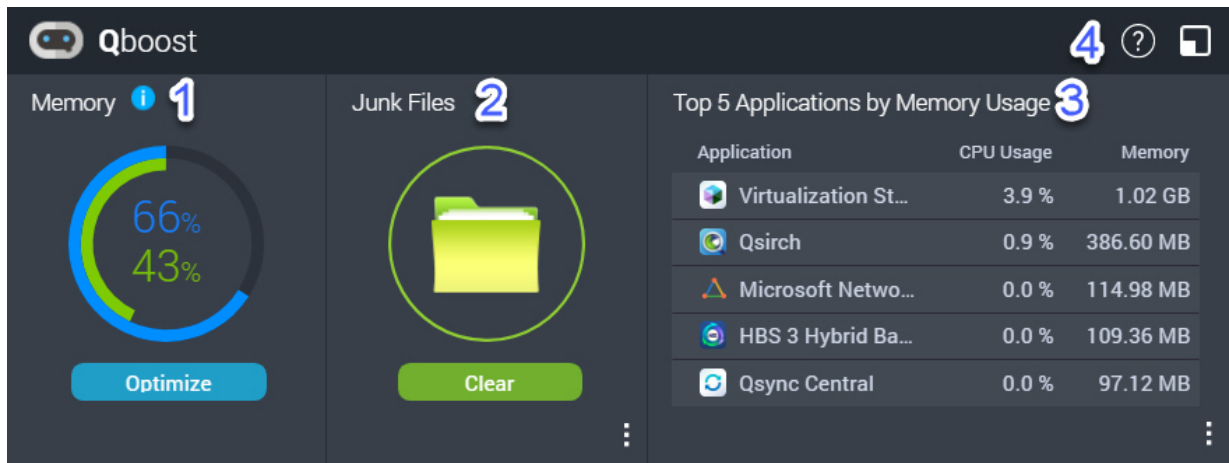
## Desktop



#	Element	Description	Possible User Actions
1	Wallpaper	This is a digital image that is used as a background for the QTS hero desktop. Users can either select from one of the provided wallpapers or upload an image	Change the wallpaper in the <b>Options</b> window.
2	Shortcut icons	This opens an app or a utility. When you install an application, QTS hero automatically creates a shortcut on the desktop. The following are the default shortcuts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control Panel</li> <li>File Station</li> <li>Storage &amp; Snapshots</li> <li>App Center</li> <li>Help Center</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click an icon to open the application window.</li> <li>Right-click an icon and then select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Open:</b> Opens the application window</li> <li><b>Remove:</b> Deletes the icon from the desktop</li> </ul> </li> <li>Click and drag an icon to another desktop.</li> </ul>
3	Desktop	This area contains open system utilities and applications. The desktop consists of three separate screens.	Click < or > to move to another desktop.
4	Qboost	This enables you to manage and monitor memory consumption.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click  or  to display the memory status and open the Qboost panel.</li> <li>Click  or  to hide the memory status and close the Qboost panel.</li> </ul>





#	Element	Description	Possible User Actions
5	Recycle Bin	<p>This displays the list of files that the currently active user moved to the Recycle Bin.</p> <p>The following applications provide users a choice between permanently deleting files and moving files to the Recycle Bin.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• File Station</li> <li>• Music Station</li> <li>• Photo Station</li> <li>• Video Station</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click  to open the <b>Recycle Bin</b> screen in the <b>File Station</b> window.</li> <li>• Right-click  and then select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Open</b>: Opens the <b>Recycle Bin</b> screen in the <b>File Station</b> window</li> <li>• <b>Empty All</b>: Permanently deletes files in the Recycle Bin</li> <li>• <b>Settings</b>: Opens the <b>Network Recycle Bin</b> screen in the <b>Control Panel</b> window</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
6	Date and time	This displays the date and time that the user configured during installation of the operating system.	N/A
7	Link bar	This displays shortcut links to myQNAPcloud, utility and app download pages, feedback channels, and the Helpdesk.	<p>Click any of the following buttons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• : Opens the myQNAPcloud website in another browser tab</li> <li>• : Opens the download page for mobile applications and utilities</li> <li>• : Provides links to the QNAP Wiki, QNAP Forum, and Customer Service portal</li> <li>• : Opens the Helpdesk utility</li> </ul>
8	Notifications	This notifies the user about important system events that may or may not require user action. Notifications appear in the lower right corner of the desktop.	Click the notification to open the corresponding utility or app.

## Qboost



Qboost is a system utility that monitors and enables you to manage memory consumption. It provides the following information:

#	Section	Description	User Actions
1	Memory	<p>A graphic showing memory usage on the NAS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blue: Available memory, expressed as a percentage. Available memory is the sum of free memory, buffer memory, cache memory, and other reclaimable memory.</li> <li>• Green: Free memory, expressed as a percentage. Free memory is memory that is currently unused and unallocated.</li> </ul>	<p>Click <b>Optimize</b> to clear the buffer memory (block level) and cache memory (file level).                      Hover the pointer over the memory widget to see the amount of available memory and free memory in MB, GB, or TB.</p>







#	Section	Description	User Actions
2	Junk Files	Junk files are unnecessary system files and files in the Recycle Bin, which consume disk space and memory.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Clear</b> to permanently delete junk files. By default, clicking <b>Clear</b> only deletes unnecessary system files, such as files that the operating system and applications create while performing certain tasks.</li> <li>Click  to select other types of files to delete. Select <b>Empty Recycle Bin</b> to include files that were moved to the Recycle Bin by the currently active user.</li> </ul>
3	Top 5 Applications by Memory Usage	Top five applications and services that consume the most memory	Click  to display all applications and services that can be enabled and disabled from either the Control Panel or the App Center. For details, see <a href="#">Application Management</a> .
4	Qboost taskbar	Taskbar for the Qboost widget	Click  to view the Qboost help. Click  to close the Qboost widget.

### Application Management

Application Management displays the following information.

Item	Description
Application	Displays the application name
CPU Usage	Displays the percentage of consumed processing power
Memory	Displays the amount of memory consumed
CPU Time	Displays the amount of time the CPU requires to process an application request
Status	Displays one of the following statuses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Always Enabled</li> <li>Always Disabled</li> <li>Scheduled</li> </ul>
Action	Displays icons for the possible actions

You can perform the following actions.

Objective	Action
Enable or disable an application or service.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click  to change the status to Always Enabled.</li> <li>Click  to change the status to Always Disabled.</li> </ul>
Create a schedule for enabling and disabling an application or service.  <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-left: 10px;">  <b>Warning</b>                          Setting a schedule may force an application to stop in the middle of a task.                     </div>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click  to open the scheduling screen.</li> <li>Select <b>Enable Schedule</b>. The calendar is activated. All days and hours are enabled by default.</li> <li>Select the hours during which the application or service should be enabled or disabled. Hours are filled with one of the following colors or patterns.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blue: The application or service is enabled.</li> <li>Gray: The application or service is disabled.</li> <li>Striped: The NAS is scheduled to sleep or shut down.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Optional: If you want to enable the app at a certain time, specify the number of minutes after the hour when the application is enabled or disabled. Example: To enable an application only after half an hour, type 30.</li> <li>Perform one of the following actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Apply</b>: Applies the schedule to the selected application or service</li> <li>Select <b>Auto-apply</b>: Applies the schedule to all applications and services</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Delete a schedule.	Click  to delete the schedule and disable an application or service.
Remove an application.	Click  . This function applies only to applications that are available in App Center.

## Getting Started

- Log in to the NAS as an administrator.  
The default administrator account is `admin`.  
For details, see [NAS Access](#).
- Optional: Create one or more storage pools.  
For details, see [Creating a Storage Pool](#).
- Create one or more shared folders.  
You must create at least one shared folder in order to store files on the NAS..  
For details, see [Creating a Shared Folder](#).
- Create user accounts.  
QNAP recommends creating a user account for each person that requires access to the NAS.  
For details, see [Creating a Local User](#).
- Optional: Create user groups.

User groups help you to easily manage user accounts.  
For details, see [Creating a User Group](#).

6. Edit shared folder permissions.  
Permissions enable you to control who can view and modify files in a shared folder.  
For details, see [Shared Folder Permissions](#).
7. Map the shared folders as network drives on your computer.  
For details, see [Shared Folder Access](#).
8. Store and manage files.  
For details, see [File Station](#).

### 3. Storage & Snapshots

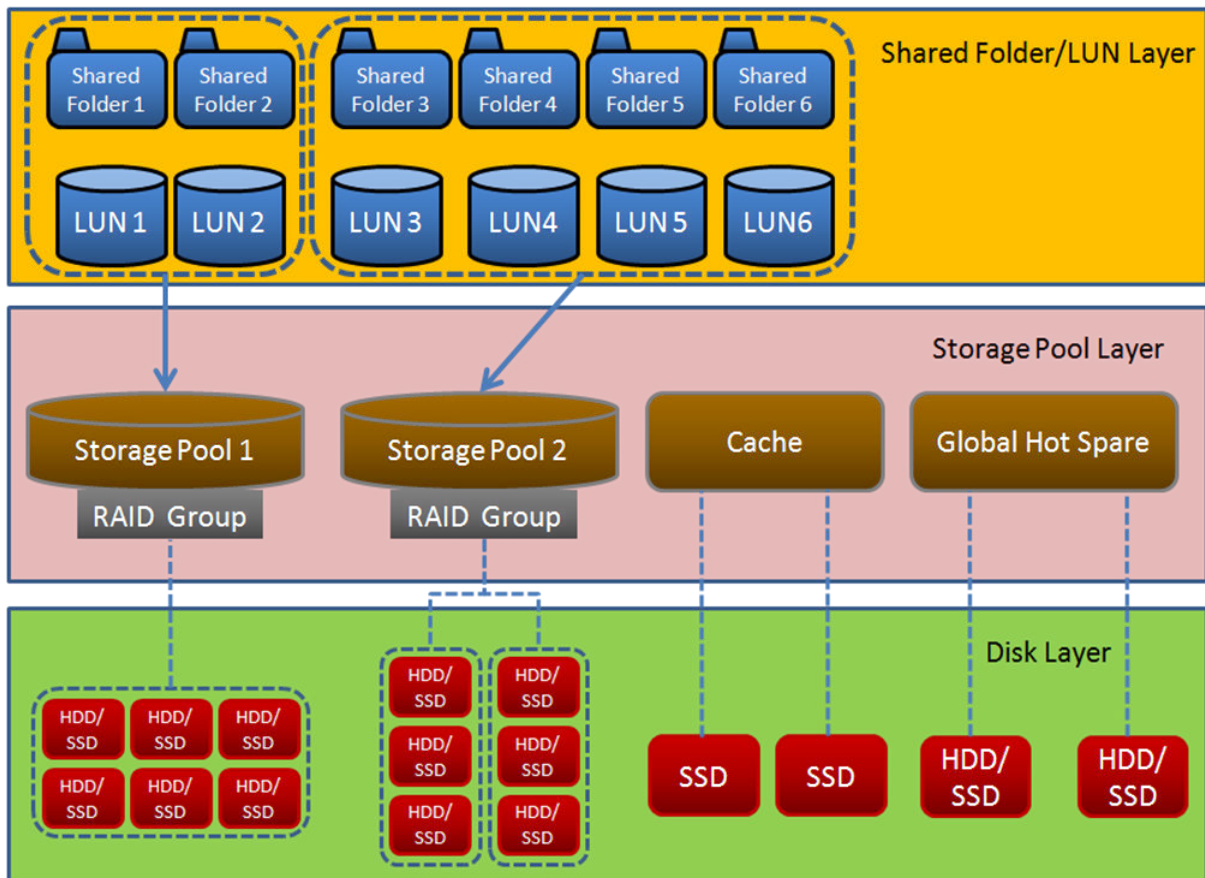
Storage & Snapshots is a QTS hero utility that helps you create, manage, and monitor storage on your NAS. With Storage & Snapshots you can perform the following tasks:

- Create RAID groups, storage pools, and shared folders.
- Monitor storage usage and access speeds.
- Back up data using snapshots.
- Accelerate the performance of your NAS by creating an SSD cache.
- Specify which hosts (computers, servers, other NAS devices) are allowed to access the NAS.

#### QNAP Flexible Storage Architecture

QNAP flexible storage architecture consists of three layers, which combine to offer storage flexibility and data protection.

- Disks
- Storage pools
- Shared folders and LUNs








**Tip**

You can expand the storage capacity of your NAS by connecting a QNAP expansion unit. For details on compatible models, see [www.qnap.com/compatibility](http://www.qnap.com/compatibility) or your NAS hardware user guide.


## Global Settings

You can access global settings by clicking  in the Storage & Snapshots window.


### Storage Global Settings

Setting	Description
Pool Scrubbing Schedule	<p>Pool scrubbing detects and automatically repairs damaged data blocks in the ZFS file system.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Important</b> While the scrubbing task is running, the read and write performance of the storage pool may be reduced. You should schedule pool scrubbing to run during times of low NAS usage.</p> </div>

### Disk Health Global Settings

Setting	Description
Activate Predictive S.M.A.R.T. Migration	<p>Enable this feature to regularly monitor disk health. If S.M.A.R.T. errors are detected on a disk, QuTS hero displays a warning and then begins migrating data from the faulty disk to a spare disk. After the migration is finished, the healthy disk is used in place of the faulty disk. This process is safer than manually initiating a full RAID rebuild after a disk has failed.</p>
S.M.A.R.T. polling time	Specify how often QuTS hero checks disks for S.M.A.R.T. errors in minutes.
Disk Temperature Alarm	Enable this feature to monitor the disk temperatures. QuTS hero displays a warning when the disk temperature is equal to or above the specified threshold. You can set separate thresholds for hard disk drives and solid state drives.
TLER/ERC Timer	<p>Enable this feature to specify a maximum response time of all disks in seconds. When a disk encounters a read or write error, it may become unresponsive while the disk firmware attempts to correct the error. QuTS hero might interpret this unresponsiveness as a disk failure. Enabling this feature ensures that a disk has sufficient time to recover from a read or write error before QuTS hero marks it as failed and initiates a RAID group rebuild.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid yellow; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This setting is also known as Error recovery control (ERC), Time-limited error recovery (TLER) or Command completion time limit (CCTL).</li> <li>• When this feature is disabled, QuTS hero uses the default TLER/ERC settings specified by the disk manufacturer.</li> </ul> </div>

## Snapshot Global Settings

Setting	Description
Smart Snapshot Space Management	<p>Enable this feature to automatically delete the oldest snapshots when the available snapshot storage space (guaranteed snapshot space plus free storage pool space) is less than 32GB. You can choose to exclude the most recent snapshot, or snapshots that were created with the setting <b>Keep this snapshot permanently</b>.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> If QuTS hero is unable to create 32GB of free snapshot space, it will not create any new snapshots.</p>
Enable File Station Snapshot Directory for administrators	Enable this feature to consolidate all available snapshots into a centralized folder in File Station. You can restore files and folders from the snapshot directory by copying them into another folder.
Make snapshot directory (@Recently-Snapshot) visible in shared folder root	Enable this feature to show a read-only folder @Recently-Snapshot at the root level of each shared folder, containing all of the shared folder's snapshots. You can restore files and folders from @Recently-Snapshot by copying them into another folder.
When the number of snapshots reaches maximum	Specify the default QuTS hero behavior after a shared folder, LUN, or NAS reaches its maximum number of snapshots. You can choose one of the following behaviors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overwrite the oldest snapshot when taking a new one.</li> <li>• Stop taking snapshots.</li> </ul>
Use timezone GMT+0 for all new snapshots	Enable this feature to use the GMT+0 time zone in the file names of new snapshots. This file naming convention can simplify snapshot management especially when working with snapshots from NAS devices located in different time zones. This setting only applies to new snapshots. Existing snapshots are not renamed.
Show hidden files in Snapshot Manager	Enable this feature to display hidden files in Snapshot Manager. This setting does not affect files inside the File Station Snapshot Directory.
Enable Windows Previous Versions	When enabled, Windows users can view and restore files from snapshots using the Previous Versions feature in Windows. You can disable this feature for individual folders by modifying the folder's properties.

## Storage

QuTS hero provides a flexible storage architecture that enables you to easily manage, store, and share files.

### Disks

#### Disk Types

QuTS hero restricts which types of disks can be used to create an SSD cache or storage pool.



#### Important

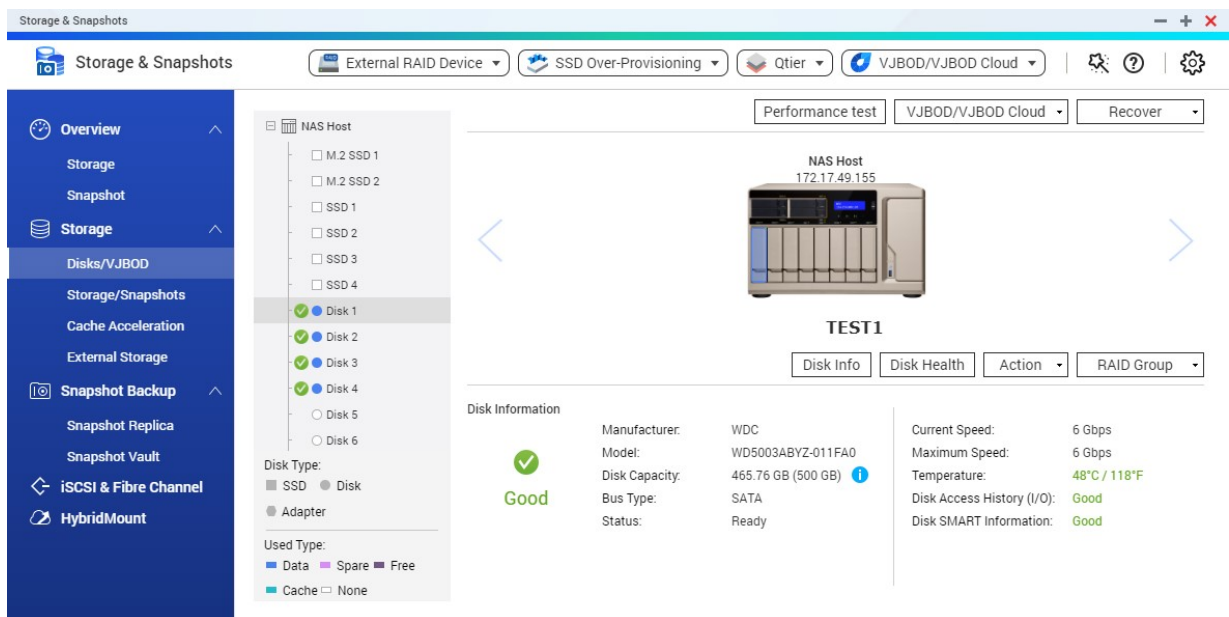
- For compatibility reasons, PCIe form-factor SSDs and PCIe M.2 SSDs installed in third-party adapter cards cannot be used to create storage pools.

- If you are already using NVMe PCIe SSDs for data storage, then your existing storage configuration will not be affected after upgrading to the latest version of QUTS hero.

Disk Type	Installation Method	SSD Cache	Storage Pools
SATA/SAS/NL-SAS 3.5" HDD	NAS drive bay	No	Yes
SATA/SAS 2.5" HDD	NAS drive bay	No	Yes
SATA/SAS 2.5" SSD	NAS drive bay	Yes	Yes
PCIe NVMe M.2 SSD	QM2 card	Yes	Yes
PCIe NVMe M.2 SSD	Third-party M.2 to PCIe adapter card	Yes	No
SATA M.2 SSD	QM2 card	Yes	Yes
SATA M.2 SSD	NAS internal M.2 slot	Yes	Yes
PCIe form-factor SSD	PCIe slot	Yes	No

## Disk Management

You can manage disks at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** . Select a disk to view its status and hardware details.





## Disk Status

Status	Description
Data	The disk is being used for data storage.
Spare	The disk is configured as a hot spare.
Free	The disk is not in use.
Cache	The disk is being used in the SSD cache.
None	There is no disk in the drive bay.
Warning	QTuS hero has detected S.M.A.R.T. errors. Run a full S.M.A.R.T. test and a disk scan.


Status	Description
Error	QTS hero has detected I/O errors. You must replace the disk immediately.
Safely Detached	The disk's storage pool or expansion unit was safely detached from the NAS.

### Disk Information

Information	Description
Disk Health Status	<p>The general health status of the disk</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Good: The disk is healthy.</li> <li>• Warning: QTS hero has detected an error. Run a full S.M.A.R.T. test and a disk scan.</li> <li>• Error: QTS hero has detected a critical error. You must replace the disk immediately.</li> </ul>
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the disk
Model	The disk model
Disk Capacity	<p>The capacity of the disk, in both binary and decimal formats</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #00AEEF; padding-left: 10px; margin-left: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Binary format assumes that 1 GB = 1,073,741,824 bytes. This is the true capacity of the disk and is used by computers and operating systems such as QTS hero.</li> <li>• Decimal format assumes that 1 GB = 1,000,000,000 bytes. This format is used by disk manufacturers and appears in advertising, on the disk's box, and in the disk's hardware specifications.</li> <li>• Due to differences in the number of bytes per gigabyte, a disk's binary capacity will be slightly lower than its decimal capacity. For example, a disk advertised as 500 GB (decimal) has a true capacity of 456 GB (binary).</li> </ul> </div>
Bus Type	The interface that the disk uses
Status	The hardware status of the disk
Current Speed	The speed at which the disk is connected to the enclosure
Maximum Speed	The maximum transfer speed supported by the drive bay or slot that the disk is installed in
Temperature	<p>The current temperature of the disk</p> <p>Disk temperature is retrieved from the disk's firmware using S.M.A.R.T.</p>
Disk Access History (I/O)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Good: QTS hero has not detected any I/O errors on the disk.</li> <li>• Error: QTS hero has detected one or more I/O errors on the disk.</li> </ul>


Information	Description
Disk SMART Information	 <b>Important</b> If any of the S.M.A.R.T. attribute values reach the threshold set by the disk manufacturer or a predefined threshold determined by QTS hero, this field will change to <code>Warning</code> .
Estimated Life Remaining	The remaining life of the disk, as calculated by the disk's firmware. When the value reaches 0, you should replace the disk. This information is only available for solid-state drives (SSDs).


### Disk Actions

Action	Description
Disk Info	Displays disk details, including the disk manufacturer, model, serial number, disk capacity, bus type, firmware version, ATA version, and ATA standard.
Disk Health	Displays disk S.M.A.R.T information. For details, see <a href="#">Disk Health Information</a> .
Scan for Bad Blocks	Scan the disk for bad blocks.   <b>Tip</b> Run this scan if the disk's status changes to <code>Warning</code> or <code>Error</code> . If QTS hero does not detect any bad blocks, the status changes back to <code>Ready</code> .  To view the number of bad blocks, see <b>Disk Health &gt; Summary</b> .
Locate	Prompt the drive LEDs to blink so that you can locate the drive in a NAS or expansion unit.
Detach	Remove the disk from its RAID group. The group must be of type: RAID 1, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10.
Set as Enclosure Spare	Assign the disk as a global hot spare for all RAID groups within the same enclosure (NAS or expansion unit). For details, see <a href="#">Configuring an Enclosure Spare Disk</a> .
Disable Spare	Unassign the disk as a global hot spare.
Secure Erase	Permanently erase all data on a disk. For details, see <a href="#">Secure Erase</a> .
RAID Group	Select a RAID group to view its RAID type, capacity, and member disks.

### Disk Health Information

Tab	Description	Actions
Summary	Displays an overview of S.M.A.R.T. disk information and the results from the most recent disk scan and S.M.A.R.T. test.	No actions

Tab	Description	Actions
IronWolf Health Management	IronWolf Health Management (IHM) monitors environment and usage conditions, such as temperature, shock, and vibration, and suggests preventative actions to ensure optimal performance for Seagate IronWolf disks. Run an IHM test to view the disk's IHM status.	<p>Click one of the following buttons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Test:</b> Run an IHM test now.</li> <li>• <b>Set Schedule:</b> Run the IHM test periodically on a schedule.</li> <li>• <b>Statistics:</b> View IHM data read/write statistics.</li> </ul>
SSD Features List	Displays all supported SSD ATA features.	No actions
SMART Information	<p>Displays S.M.A.R.T. disk information and supported attributes.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Important</b> If the value of a S.M.A.R.T. attribute reaches the threshold set by the disk manufacturer or a predefined threshold determined by QuTS hero, the SMART attribute's status will change to to Warning.</p> </div>	No actions
Test	Run a S.M.A.R.T. disk self-test.	<p>Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Rapid Test:</b> Tests the electrical and mechanical properties of the disk, and a small portion of the disk surface. The test takes approximately one minute.</li> <li>• <b>Complete Test:</b> Tests the electrical and mechanical properties of the disk, and the full disk surface. This test duration varies depending on the storage environment.</li> </ul>

Tab	Description	Actions
Settings	Disk settings can be applied individually, or to multiple disks at once.	<p>Configure the following settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enable temperature alarm:</b> QTS hero displays a warning when the disk temperature is equal to or above the specified threshold.</li> <li>• <b>S.M.A.R.T. Test schedule:</b> Schedule periodic rapid and complete S.M.A.R.T. disk tests. The results are displayed on the <b>Summary</b> screen.</li> <li>• <b>IronWolf Health Management:</b> Schedule a daily IHM test for the disk. The results are saved in the selected shared folder, and are displayed on the <b>IronWolf Health Management</b> screen.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can apply these settings to the current disk, all disks, or to disks with the same type as the current disk (HDD or SSD).</p>

### Disk Performance Tests

QTS hero can test the sequential and random read speeds of your disks.



#### Important

- The results provided by these tests are specific to the NAS being tested.
- For accurate results, do not use any resource-intensive applications while the tests are running.

### Testing Disk Performance Manually

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
2. Click **Performance Test**.  
The **Performance Test** screen appears.
3. Select one or more disks.
4. Click **Performance Test** and then select a test type.

Test Type	Description	Test Results Format
Sequential read	Test sequential read speed.	MB/s
IOPS read	Test random read speed.	IOPS

A confirmation message appears.

5. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero runs the test and then displays the results on the **Performance Test** screen. To see detailed results for the IOPS read test, select one or more disks and then select **Result > IOPS read result** .

### Testing Disk Performance on a Schedule

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
2. Click **Performance Test**.  
The **Performance Test** screen appears.
3. Set **Weekly Test** to **On**.  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero runs a sequential read test for all disks every Monday at 6.30am, and then displays the results on the **Performance Test** screen.

### Secure Erase

Secure erase permanently deletes all data on a disk, ensuring that the data is unrecoverable. Using secure erase on an SSD also restores the disk's performance to its original factory state.


### Securely Erasing a Disk



#### Important

Do not disconnect any disks or power off the NAS while secure erase is running.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
2. Select a free disk.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Secure Erase**.  
The **Secure Erase** window opens.
4. Optional: Select additional disks to erase.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select an erase mode.

Mode	Description
Complete	<p>QuTS hero writes over all blocks on the disk with zeros or ones. This mode is the most secure but can take a long time to finish. Select <b>Customized</b> to configure the following the erase settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of rounds: QuTS hero writes over all blocks on the disk the specified number of times.</li> <li>• Overwrite with: Overwrite all blocks with zeros, ones, or a random zero or one.</li> </ul>
SSD	<p>QuTS hero issues a solid state drive (SSD) secure erase ATA command. The SSD firmware then erases all data and restores the disk to its original factory performance.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This feature is only supported on specific SSD models.</p>



Mode	Description
Fast	QuTS hero overwrites the partition and RAID configuration data on the disk with zeros. This mode is the quickest but is less secure than the other modes.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Enter the administrator password.
9. Click **Apply**.

QuTS hero starts erasing the disk. You can monitor the progress in **Background Tasks**.

## Storage Pools

A storage pool combines many physical disks into one large pool of storage space. Disks in the storage pool are joined together using RAID technology to form RAID groups. Storage pools may contain more than one RAID group.

Using storage pools provides the following benefits:

- Multiple shared folders can be created on a storage pool, enabling you to divide the storage space among different users and applications.
- Disks of different sizes and types can be mixed into one large storage space.
- Disks from connected expansion units can be mixed with disks installed in the NAS to form a storage pool.
- Extra disks can be added while the storage pool is in use, increasing storage capacity without interrupting services.
- Qtier provides auto-tiering when a storage pool contains a mix of SATA, SAS, and SSD disks. Qtier automatically moves frequently accessed hot data to the faster SSDs, and infrequently accessed cold data to the slower disks.
- Snapshots can be used with storage pools. Snapshots record the state of the data in a shared folder or LUN at a specific point in time. Data can then be restored to that time if it is accidentally modified or deleted.
- Multiple RAID 5 or RAID 6 groups can be striped together using RAID 0 to form a RAID 50 or RAID 60 storage pool.

## Creating a Storage Pool

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Perform one of the following actions.

NAS State	Action
No storage pools	Click <b>New Storage Pool</b> .
One or more storage pools	Click <b>Create</b> , and then select <b>New Storage Pool</b> .

The **Create Storage Pool Wizard** window opens.

3. Click **Next**.

- Optional: Select an expansion unit from the **Enclosure Unit** list.



**Important**

- You cannot select disks from multiple expansion units.
- If the expansion unit is disconnected from the NAS, the storage pool will become inaccessible until it is reconnected.

- Select one or more disks.



**Important**

QTS hero assigns the first storage pool created as the system pool. The system pool should consist of only SSDs.

For details, see [The System Pool](#).



**Warning**

All data on the selected disks will be deleted.

- Select a RAID type.  
QTS hero displays all available RAID types and automatically selects the most optimized RAID type.



**Tip**

Use the default RAID type if you are unsure of which option to choose.

For details, see [RAID Types](#).

- Optional: Select the number of RAID 50 or RAID 60 subgroups.  
The selected disks are divided evenly into the specified number of RAID 5 or 6 groups.
  - A higher number of subgroups results in faster RAID rebuilding, increased disk failure tolerance, and better performance if all the disks are SSDs.
  - A lower number of subgroups results in more storage capacity, and better performance if all the disks are HDDs.



**Warning**

If a RAID group is divided unevenly, the excess space becomes unavailable. For example, 10 disks divided into 3 subgroups of 3 disks, 3 disks, and 4 disks will provide only 9 disks of storage capacity.

- Click **Next**.
- Optional: Configure storage pool over-provisioning.  
Storage pool over-provisioning reserves the specified percentage of space in the storage pool in order to maintain consistent pool access performance. Storage pool over-provisioning also extends the lifespan of SSDs in the pool.



**Tip**

To determine the optimal amount of over-provisioning for the storage pool, download and run ZFS Pool Profiling Tool from App Center.

- Optional: Configure the alert threshold.  
QTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used pool space is equal to or above the specified threshold.
- Click **Next**.
- Verify the storage pool information.

13. Click **Create**.  
A confirmation message appears.
14. Click **OK**.

QTS hero creates the storage pool and then displays the information on the **Storage/Snapshots** screen.

## The System Pool

The system pool is a normal storage pool that QTS hero uses to store system data such as logs, metadata, and thumbnails. By default, applications are installed to the system pool. If no system pools exists, either because the NAS has recently been initialized or the system pool was deleted, QTS hero will assign the next storage pool that you create as the system pool.



### Tip

To ensure system performance and stability, the system pool should consist of only SSDs.

## Storage Pool Management

### Deleting a Storage Pool

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.
4. Click **Remove**, and then select **Remove Pool**.  
A notification window opens.
5. Select **Remove every shared folder, LUN, and snapshot vault in this storage pool**.



### Warning

All data in the storage pool will be deleted.

6. Click **OK**.  
The **Remove Pool** window opens.
7. Enter the admin password.
8. Click **OK**.

### Scrubbing a Storage Pool

Scrubbing a storage pool scans the file system of each RAID group in the pool. QTS hero automatically attempts to repair bad blocks to maintain data consistency.



### Important

- While the scrubbing task is running, the read and write performance of the storage pool may be reduced. You should schedule pool scrubbing to run during times of low NAS usage.
- To perform storage pool scrubbing automatically on a schedule, see Global Storage Settings.


1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .

2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Actions**, and then select **Pool Scrubbing**.  
The **Start Storage Pool Scrub** window opens.
5. Click **OK**.

### Configuring a Storage Pool Space Alert

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Actions**, and then select **Set Threshold**.  
The **Alert Threshold** window opens.
5. Enable space alerts.
6. Specify an alert threshold.  
QuTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used space is greater than or equal to the specified threshold.
7. Click **Apply**.

### Storage Pool Status

Status	Description
Ready	The storage pool is working normally. All RAID groups in the pool have the status <i>Ready</i> .
Warning (Degraded)	One or more RAID groups in the storage pool have the status <i>Degraded</i> . There are not enough spare disks available to QuTS hero to rebuild all of the RAID groups.
Warning (Rebuilding)	One or more RAID groups in the storage pool have the status <i>Degraded (Rebuilding)</i> . QuTS hero is currently rebuilding them due to disk failure.
Warning (Read-Only)	One or more RAID groups in the storage pool have the status <i>Not Active</i> .  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Note</b> It might be possible to recover some data from shared folders and LUNs.</p> </div> </div>

### Configuring Storage Pool Over-Provisioning

Storage pool over-provisioning reserves the specified percentage of space in the storage pool in order to maintain consistent pool access performance. Storage pool over-provisioning also extends the lifespan of SSDs in the pool.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.

3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Actions**, and then select **Configure Over-Provisioning**.  
The **Configure Over-Provisioning** window opens.
5. Enable over-provisioning.
6. Set the percentage of storage pool space to reserve for over-provisioning.



**Tip**

The default value is 5%.

7. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Storage Pool Resync Priority

Storage pool resync priority determines the minimum speed of RAID operations in the storage pool.



**Important**

This setting only affects RAID operation speeds when the NAS is in use. When the NAS is idle, all RAID operations are performed at the highest possible speeds.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots**.
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Actions**.
5. Under **Resync Priority**, select one of the following priorities.
  - **Service First:** QTS hero performs RAID operations at lower speeds in order to maintain NAS storage performance.
  - **Default:** QTS hero performs RAID operations at the default speed.
  - **Resync First:** QTS hero performs RAID operations at higher speeds. Users may notice a decrease in NAS storage performance while RAID operations are in progress.

### Storage Pool Expansion

#### Expanding a Storage Pool By Adding a New RAID Group

You can expand the capacity of a storage pool by creating a new RAID group and adding it to the pool. QTS hero combines the new group with the other RAID groups in the storage pool using striping (RAID 0).



**Important**

- The new RAID group must have the same RAID type as all existing RAID groups in the pool.
- Adding a RAID group to a pool may change the RAID type of the pool.

The number of required disks for expansion depends on the current RAID type of the specified pool.

Pool RAID Type	Disks Required to Expand Pool	Pool RAID Type After Expansion
RAID 0	≥ 1	RAID 0
RAID 1	2	RAID 10
RAID 5	≥ 3	RAID 50
RAID 6	≥ 4	RAID 60
RAID-TP	≥ 5	RAID-TP
Triple Mirror	Multiple of 3	Triple Mirror
RAID 10	Multiple of 2	RAID 10
RAID 50	≥ 3 for each additional RAID 5 group	RAID 50
RAID 60	≥ 4 for each additional RAID 6 group	RAID 60

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Expand Pool**.  
The **Expand Storage Pool Wizard** opens.
5. Select **Create and add a new RAID group**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Optional: Select an expansion unit from the **Enclosure Unit** list.



**Important**

- You cannot select disks from multiple expansion units.
- If the expansion unit is disconnected from the NAS, the storage pool will become inaccessible until it is reconnected.

8. Select one or more disks.



**Warning**

All data on the selected disks will be deleted.

9. Click **Next**.
10. Review the summary information.
11. Click **Expand**.  
A confirmation message appears.
12. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero begins expanding the storage pool. The status of the pool changes to `Expanding`, and then changes back to `Ready` after expansion is finished.

## Expanding a Storage Pool by Replacing Disks in a RAID Group

You can increase the maximum storage capacity of a storage pool by expanding a RAID group in the pool. To expand the RAID group you replace one of the group's member disks with a higher-capacity disk, wait for the RAID group to rebuild, then repeat until all of its disks have been replaced. This operation can be performed while the storage pool is online and accessible to users.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Select a RAID group.  
The RAID group can be of any type except for RAID 0.
5. Ensure there are no global spare disks assigned to the RAID group's enclosure.  
You can view and disable global enclosure spare disks at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
6. Prepare a number of higher-capacity disks.  
You must prepare one higher-capacity disk for each disk in the RAID group.
7. Click **Manage**, and then select **Replace Disks One by One**.  
The **Replace Disks One by One** window opens.
8. Select a disk to replace.
9. Click **Change**.  
The disk description changes to `Please remove this drive`.
10. Remove the disk from the NAS drive bay.
  - The NAS beeps twice.
  - The disk description changes to `Please insert the new disk`.
  - The status of the RAID group changes to `Degraded`.
  - The status of the RAID group's storage pool changes to `Warning (Degraded)`.
11. Insert a new higher-capacity disk into the same drive bay.  
The NAS beeps twice. Then the status of the disk and RAID group change to `Rebuilding`.
12. Wait for the RAID group to finish rebuilding.



### Warning

Do not remove any disks while the RAID group is rebuilding.

The RAID group status changes back to `Ready`.

13. Repeat the previous steps until all disks in the RAID group have been replaced with higher-capacity disks.

The additional capacity from the new disks is added to the storage pool after the RAID group finishes rebuilding for the final disk.

## Storage Pool Migration

Storage pool migration enables you to safely remove a storage pool and move it to another QNAP NAS. The following data is retained:

- Files and folders
- Storage configuration
- Snapshots

### Storage Pool Migration Requirements

The following requirements apply when migrating a storage pool to a new NAS.

- The two NAS devices must both be running QuTS hero, or both be running QTS. QuTS hero to QTS migration is not possible.
- The version of QuTS hero or QTS running on the new NAS must be the same or newer than the version running on the original NAS.

### Migrating a Storage Pool to a New NAS

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Click **Action**, and then select **Safely Detach Pool**.  
A confirmation message appears.
5. Click **Yes**.  
The storage pool status changes to *Safely Detaching...* After QuTS hero has finished detaching the pool, it disappears from Storage & Snapshots.
6. Remove the drives containing the storage pool from the NAS.
7. Install the drives in the new NAS.
8. On the new NAS, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
9. Click **Recover**, and then select **Attach and Recover Storage Pool**.  
A confirmation message appears.
10. Optional: Enter the SED password.  
You must enter this password if you were using self-encrypted drives (SEDs) with encryption enabled.
11. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero scans the disks and detects the storage pool.
12. Click **Apply**.

The storage pool appears in Storage & Snapshots on the new NAS.



## Shared Folders

A shared folder is a portion of storage space created from the space of a storage pool. Shared folders enable users to store data on the NAS and allow connected clients to access that data.



### Tip

- To create and configure shared folders, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
- A QuTS hero shared folder is the same as a QTS volume that contains one shared folder.


## Creating a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Click **Create**, and then select **New Shared Folder**.
3. Specify a shared folder name.
  - The name can be in any Unicode language.
  - The maximum length is 64 bytes. In English, this equals 64 characters.
  - The following special characters are not allowed: @ " + = / \ : | \* ? < > ; [ ] % , ` ' non-breaking space
  - The last character cannot be a period (.) or space.
  - The first characters cannot be a space.
4. Optional: Specify a description.  
The information is for your reference and is not used by QuTS hero.
5. Select a storage pool.  
The shared folder is created using storage space from this pool.
6. Select a method of space allocation.

Allocation	Description
Thick provisioning	QuTS hero allocates storage pool space when the shared folder is created, guaranteeing that space will be available.
Thin provisioning	QuTS hero allocates storage pool space on demand, as data is written to the shared folder.


7. Specify the capacity of the shared folder.  
The method of space allocation determines the maximum shared folder capacity.

Method	Maximum Size
Thick provisioning	Amount of free space in the parent storage pool.

Method	Maximum Size
Thin provisioning	1 PB   <b>Tip</b> Setting the maximum size of a shared folder to a value that is greater than the amount of free space in its parent storage pool is called over-allocation.


8. Optional: Enable folder encryption.





- a. Under **Folder Encryption**, click **Edit**.
- b. Select **Encryption**.  
Folder encryption protects folder content against unauthorized data access when the drives are physically stolen.
- c. Specify the following information.

Field/Option	Description
<b>Input Password</b>	Specify a password that contains 8 to 32 characters except the following: " \$ : = \ This field does not support multibyte characters.
<b>Verify Password</b>	The password must match the previously specified password.
<b>Save encryption key</b>	When enabled, QTS hero automatically unlocks the shared folder after the NAS restarts. When disabled, the administrator must unlock the folder after the NAS restarts. For details, see <a href="#">Unlocking a Shared Folder</a> .   <b>Warning</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saving the encryption key on the NAS can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.</li> <li>• If you forget the encryption password, all data will become inaccessible.</li> </ul>

9. Click **Next**.

10. Optional: Configure any of the following storage settings.

Setting	Description
Compression	QTS hero compresses the data in the shared folder to reduce the size of stored data. Enabling compression also reduces the total number of blocks that QTS hero needs to read and write, increasing read and write speeds.   <b>Tip</b> Compression does not impact read/write and processor performance on ZFS filesystems. Only disable this setting when necessary.

Setting	Description
Deduplication	<p>QuTS hero reduces the amount of storage needed by eliminating duplicate copies of repeated data.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> To enable deduplication your NAS must have at least 8 GB of memory.</p>
SSD cache	<p>QuTS hero adds data from this folder to the SSD cache to improve read performance.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> Shared folders and LUNs created in an all-SSD storage pool cannot use the SSD cache.</p>
Fast clone	<p>Fast Clone enables QuTS hero to create copies of files faster. It also saves storage space by modifying file metadata, allowing original and copied files to share the same data blocks.</p> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To enable this setting, <b>Thin provision</b> must be selected.</li> <li>• Fast Clone only works when the copied file is created in the shared folder containing the original file.</li> <li>• Fast Clone does not improve the speed of snapshot restoration operations such as restoring files from a snapshot, snapshot revert, and snapshot clone.</li> </ul>
Synchronous I/O	<p>Select the ZFS Intent Log I/O mode to improve data consistency or performance. There are three modes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All: All I/O transactions are treated as synchronous and are always written and flushed to a non-volatile storage (such as a SSD or HDD). This option gives the best data consistency, but might have a small impact on performance.</li> <li>• Auto: QuTS hero uses synchronous I/O or asynchronous I/O based on the application and the type of I/O request.</li> <li>• None: All I/O transactions are treated as asynchronous. This option gives the highest performance, but has a higher risk of data loss in the event of a power outage. Ensure that a UPS (uninterrupted power supply) is installed when using this option.</li> </ul>
Performance profile	<p>Specify how the shared folder will be used. Each option results in a different block size, optimizing performance for the specified application.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> The default is 128K.</p>

11. Optional: Configure WORM (Write Once Read Many).

WORM prevents anyone from modifying or deleting files or folders after they have been written to the shared folder.



**Important**

This setting cannot be modified after shared folder creation.

- a. Select **WORM**.
- b. Select a WORM type.

Type	Description
Enterprise	Users can delete the shared folder.
Compliance	Users cannot delete the shared folder. An administrator must remove the storage pool to delete the WORM shared folder.

- c. Optional: Specify a retention time.  
Limit how long WORM applies to each file and folder. Files and folders can be modified after the specified time period.

12. Click **Next**.


13. Optional: Configure user access permissions.

- a. Under **Configure access privileges for users**, click **Edit**.
- b. Specify the access permissions for users.  
For details, see [Shared Folder Permissions](#).

14. Click **Next**.

15. Optional: Configure advanced settings.

Option	Description
<b>Guest Access Right</b>	Select the permission level assigned to users without a NAS account.
<b>Hide network drive</b>	Selecting this option hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Lock File (Oplocks)</b>	Opportunistic lock (Oplocks) is a Windows file locking mechanism that facilitates caching and access control to improve performance. This feature is enabled by default and should only be disabled in networks where multiple users simultaneously access the same files.
<b>SMB Encryption</b>	This option is available only when SMB3 is enabled. Selecting this option encrypts all Microsoft network communication using the SMB3 protocol.
<b>Enable Windows Previous Versions</b>	When enabled, the Previous Versions feature in Windows can be used with the shared folder.
<b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b>	Selecting this option creates a Recycle Bin for this shared folder.

Option	Description
<b>Restrict the access of Recycle Bin to administrators only for now</b>	Selecting this option prevents non-administrator users from recovering or deleting files in the Recycle Bin.   <b>Note</b> This option is available only when <b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b> is selected.
<b>Enable sync on this shared folder</b>	Selecting this option allows this shared folder to be used with Qsync. This option is only available if Qsync Central is installed on the NAS.
<b>Enable access-based share enumeration (ABSE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the shared folders that they have permission to mount and access. Guest account users must enter a username and password to view shared folders.
<b>Enable access-based enumeration (ABE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the files and folders that they have permission to access.
<b>Set this folder as the Time Machine backup folder (macOS)</b>	When enabled, the shared folder becomes the destination folder for Time Machine in macOS.

16. Click **Next**.

17. Review the summary information, and then click **Finish**.

## Shared Folder Management

### Deleting a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Shared Folder Management** window opens.
4. Click **Remove**.  
A confirmation message appears.



#### Warning

All data in the shared folder will be deleted.

5. Click **Apply**.

### Expanding a Shared Folder

Expanding a shared folder increases its storage capacity.




#### Note

- Expansion can be performed while the shared folder is online and accessible to users.
- For a thick shared folder, additional space is allocated from the shared folder's parent storage pool.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .

2. Select a shared folder.
3. Click **Manage**.
4. Click **Resize Shared Folder**.  
The **Shared Folder Resizing Wizard** opens.
5. Specify a new larger capacity for the shared folder.  
Capacity can be specified in megabytes (MB), gigabytes (GB) or terabytes (TB).

Method	Maximum Size
Thick provisioning	Amount of free space in the parent storage pool.
Thin provisioning	1 PB   <b>Tip</b> Setting the maximum size of a shared folder to a value that is greater than the amount of free space in its parent storage pool is called over-allocation.

6. Optional: Click **Set to Max**.  
Sets the new shared folder capacity to the maximum available size. This option is only available for thick shared folders.
7. Click **Apply**.  
The **Shared Folder Resizing Wizard** closes. The shared folder status changes to *Expanding...*

After expansion is complete, the shared folder's status changes back to *Ready*.

### Shrinking a Shared Folder

Shrinking a shared folder decreases its maximum capacity.



#### Note

- Users and applications will be unable to access the shared folder until the operation is finished.
- For a thick shared folder, the freed space is returned to the shared folder's parent storage pool.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.
3. Click **Manage**.
4. Click **Resize Shared Folder**.  
The **Shared Folder Resizing Wizard** opens.
5. Specify a new smaller capacity for the shared folder.  
Capacity can be specified in megabytes (MB), gigabytes (GB) or terabytes (TB).
6. Click **Apply**.  
A confirmation message appears.
7. Click **OK**.  
The **Shared Folder Resizing Wizard** closes. The shared folder's status changes to *Shrinking...*


After shrinking is finished, the shared folder's status changes back to `Ready`.

### Configuring a Shared Folder Space Alert

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Shared Folder Management** window opens.
4. Click **Actions**, and then select **Set Threshold**.  
The **Alert Threshold** window opens.
5. Enable space alerts.
6. Specify an alert threshold.  
QuTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used space is greater than or equal to the specified threshold.
7. Click **Apply**.

### Data Reduction

QuTS hero supports the following data reduction features:

Feature	Description
Compression	Compression attempts to reduce the size of stored files by removing redundant data within each file. Making files smaller means less storage space is consumed and more files can be stored on the NAS.
Deduplication	<p>Deduplication is a technique for eliminating duplicate copies of repeating data. Deduplication reduces the space required to store files, and can also be applied to network data transfers to reduce the number of bytes sent.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>To enable deduplication your NAS must have at least 8 GB of memory.</p> </div> </div>

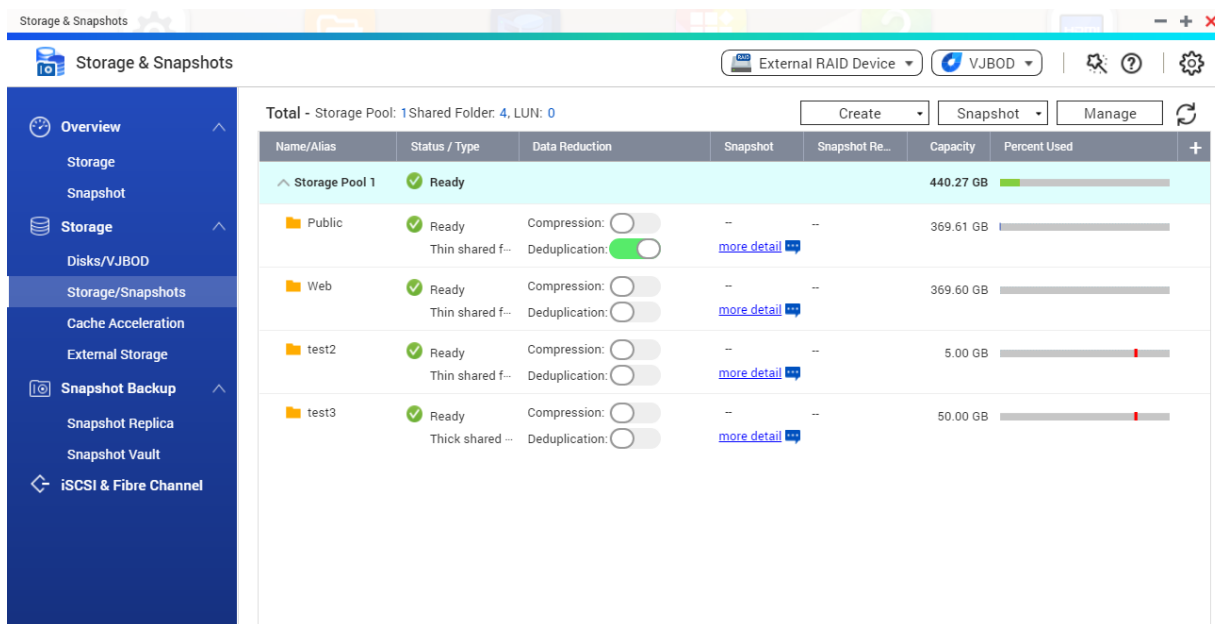
### Configuring Compression and Deduplication

To quickly enable or disable compression or deduplication, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** and then use the toggle buttons in the **Data Reduction column**.



**Important**

- Disabling compression only affects new data. Existing data in the folder remains compressed.
- Disabling deduplication only affects new data. Existing data in the folder remains deduplicated.



### Viewing Data Reduction Statistics

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
4. Go to the **Data Reduction** tab.

### RAID

Redundant array of independent disks (RAID) combines multiple physical disks into a single storage unit, and then distributes data across the disks in one of several predefined methods.

The following features make RAID ideal for use with data storage and NAS applications.

RAID Feature	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Grouping	Disks that are combined using RAID form a RAID group, which QuTS hero considers one large logical disk.	Managing the storage space of one large disk is simpler and more efficient than multiple small disks.	Initial configuration can be more complicated.
Striping	Data is split into smaller pieces. Each piece is stored on a different disk in the RAID group. QuTS hero can then access that data by reading from or writing to multiple disks simultaneously, increasing read and write speeds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Greater read/write speeds, compared to a single disk</li> <li>• Speeds can be increased further by adding disks</li> </ul>	If one disk in the RAID group fails, and the RAID group has no redundancy, all data will be lost.



RAID Feature	Description	Advantages	Disadvantages
Redundancy	<p>Each disk in the RAID group can store the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete copy of the stored data</li> <li>• Metadata that allows reconstruction of lost data</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disks can fail or be removed from the RAID group without any loss of data</li> <li>• Users can access data while failed disks are being replaced</li> </ul>	Total storage capacity of the RAID group is reduced.

## RAID Types



### Important

- For best performance and space efficiency, you should use disks of the same brand and capacity when creating a RAID group.
- Increasing the number of disks in a RAID group increases the risk of simultaneous disk failure and lengthens rebuild times. When creating a storage pool with a large number of disks, you should split the disks into sub-groups using RAID 50 or RAID 60.

RAID Type	Number of Disks	Disk Failure Tolerance	Overview
RAID 0	≥ 1	0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disks are combined together using striping.</li> <li>• RAID 0 offers the fastest read and write speeds, and uses the total capacity of all the disks.</li> <li>• Provides no disk failure protection. This RAID type must be paired with a data backup plan.</li> </ul>
RAID 1	2	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An identical copy of data is stored on each disk.</li> <li>• Half of the total disk capacity is lost, in return for a high level of data protection.</li> <li>• Recommended for storing important data.</li> </ul>

RAID Type	Number of Disks	Disk Failure Tolerance	Overview
RAID 5	≥ 3	1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data and parity information are striped across all disks.</li> <li>• The capacity of one disk is lost to store parity information.</li> <li>• Striping means read speeds are increased with each additional disk in the group.</li> <li>• Recommended for a good balance between data protection, capacity, and speed.</li> <li>• Ideal for running databases and other transaction-based applications.</li> </ul>
RAID 6	≥ 4	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data and parity information are striped across all disks.</li> <li>• The capacity of two disks are lost to store parity information.</li> <li>• Recommended for critical data protection, business and general storage use. It provides high disk failure protection and read performance.</li> </ul>
RAID 10	≥ 4 (Must be an even number)	1 per pair of disks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Every two disks are paired using RAID 1 for failure protection. Then all pairs are striped together using RAID 0.</li> <li>• Excellent random read and write speeds and high failure protection, but half the total disk capacity is lost.</li> <li>• Recommended for applications that require high random access performance and fault tolerance, such as databases.</li> </ul>
RAID 50	≥ 6	1 per disk subgroup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multiple small RAID 5 groups are striped to form one RAID 50 group.</li> <li>• Better failure protection and faster rebuild times than RAID 5. More storage capacity than RAID 10.</li> <li>• Recommended for applications that require high fault tolerance, capacity, and random access performance.</li> </ul>
RAID 60	≥ 8	2 per disk subgroup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multiple small RAID 6 groups are striped to form one RAID 60 group.</li> <li>• Better failure protection and faster rebuild time than RAID 6. More storage capacity than RAID 10.</li> <li>• Recommended if you need higher fault tolerance than RAID 50.</li> </ul>

RAID Type	Number of Disks	Disk Failure Tolerance	Overview
Triple Mirror	3	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An identical copy of data is stored on three disks.</li> <li>• There is also no degradation in performance while the RAID group is being rebuilt.</li> <li>• Read performance is increased, but capacity is greatly decreased.</li> <li>• Triple Mirror is suitable for storing critical data.</li> </ul>
RAID-TP	≥ 5	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data and parity information are striped across all disks.</li> <li>• The capacity of three disks are lost to store parity information.</li> <li>• RAID-TP adds an extra level of redundancy over RAID 6.</li> </ul>

## RAID Actions



### Tip

To perform any of the following actions:

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Overview > Storage**
2. Select a storage pool.
3. Click **Manage**.
4. Select a RAID group.
5. Click **Manage**.

Action	Description
Replace Disks One By One	Increases the capacity of the RAID group by replacing all of its disks with higher capacity disks. For details, see <a href="#">Expanding a Storage Pool by Replacing Disks in a RAID Group</a> . You can also use this feature to replace working disks for maintenance purposes.
Recover	Recovers the RAID group from accidental disk removal. For details, see <a href="#">Recovering a RAID Group</a> .

## RAID Group Status

Status	Description
Ready	The RAID group is working normally.
Degraded	One or more disks in the RAID group have failed. The number of disk failures are within the disk failure tolerance of the RAID group. There are not enough spare disks available to QuTS hero to replace all the failed disks.

Status	Description
Degraded (Rebuilding)	One or more disks in the RAID group have failed. The number of disk failures are within the disk failure tolerance of the RAID group. QTS hero has replaced the failed disks with spare disks, and is now rebuilding the RAID group.
Not active	One or more disks in the RAID group have failed. The number of disk failures exceeds the disk failure tolerance of the RAID group.

### RAID Disk Failure Protection

All RAID types except for RAID 0 can tolerate a specific number of disk failures without losing data. When a disk in a RAID group fails, the RAID group status changes to `degraded` and then QTS hero performs one of the following actions.

Spare Disk Available	Actions
Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• QTS hero automatically replaces the failed disk with a spare disk and then starts rebuilding the RAID group.</li> <li>• The status of the RAID group changes to <code>rebuilding</code>, and then changes back to <code>Ready</code> after rebuilding has finished.</li> </ul>
No	You must replace the failed disk manually. QTS hero starts rebuilding the RAID group after you have installed a working disk.

### Configuring an Enclosure Spare Disk

An enclosure space disk acts as a hot spare for all RAID groups within a single enclosure (NAS or expansion unit). Under normal conditions, the enclosure space disk is unused and does not store any data. When a disk in any RAID group fails, the hot spare disk automatically replaces the faulty disk.



#### Important

Storage enclosures (the NAS and expansion units) cannot share enclosure space disks. A unique spare disk must be assigned to each storage enclosure.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD**
2. Optional: Select a connected expansion unit.
3. Select a free disk.



#### Warning

All data on the selected disk will be deleted.

4. Click **Action**, and then select **Set as Enclosure Spare**.  
A confirmation message appears.
5. Click **OK**.

The disk appears as a `Spare` on the **Disks/VJBOD** screen.

### Recovering a RAID Group

RAID recovery enables you to recover a RAID group in the event of accidental disk removal or SATA connector failure. When several disks are removed or disconnected from a RAID group:

- The status of the group changes to `Error`.

- The statuses of all storage pools using the RAID group change to *Inactive*.
- All data on shared folders and LUNs in affected storage pools becomes inaccessible.



**Important**

RAID recovery only helps when disks are temporarily disconnected and then reconnected. It does not help in the event of disk failure.

1. Reconnect all disconnected disks.



**Important**

Ensure that each disk is reinserted into its original drive bay.

2. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
3. Select a storage pool with the status *Inactive*.
4. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
5. Select a RAID group with the status *Error*.
6. Click **Manage**, and then select **Recover RAID**.

QTuS hero starts to rebuild the RAID group.

## Self-Encrypting Drives (SEDs)

A self-encrypting drive (SED) is a drive with encryption hardware built into the drive controller. An SED automatically encrypts all data as it is written to the drive and decrypts all data as it is read from the drive. Data stored on an SED is always fully encrypted by a data encryption key (DEK). The DEK can also be encrypted by a user-specified authentication key (AK) that allows the SED to be locked and unlocked. Both encryption keys are stored in the drive's hardware and cannot be accessed by the host operating system or unauthorized users.

### Creating an SED Secure Storage Pool

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Perform one of the following actions.

NAS State	Action
No storage pools	Click <b>New Storage Pool</b> .
One or more storage pools	Click <b>Create</b> , and then select <b>New Storage Pool</b> .

The **Create Storage Pool Wizard** window opens.

3. Click **Next**.
4. Optional: Select an expansion unit from the **Enclosure Unit** list.



**Important**

- You cannot select disks from multiple expansion units.
- If the expansion unit is disconnected from the NAS, the storage pool will become inaccessible until it is reconnected.

**5. Select **Create SED secure storage pool.****

The list of disks only displays SED disks.

**6. Select one or more disks.**



**Warning**

All data on the selected disks will be deleted.

**7. Select a RAID type.**

QuTS hero displays all available RAID types and automatically selects the most optimized RAID type.



**Tip**

Use the default RAID type if you are unsure of which option to choose.  
For details, see [RAID Types](#).

**8. Optional: Select the number of RAID 50 or RAID 60 subgroups.**

The selected disks are divided evenly into the specified number of RAID 5 or 6 groups.

- A higher number of subgroups results in faster RAID rebuilding, increased disk failure tolerance, and better performance if all the disks are SSDs.
- A lower number of subgroups results in more storage capacity, and better performance if all the disks are HDDs.



**Warning**

If a RAID group is divided unevenly, the excess space becomes unavailable. For example, 10 disks divided into 3 subgroups of 3 disks, 3 disks, and 4 disks will provide only 9 disks of storage capacity.

**9. Click **Next**.**

**10. Optional: Configure storage pool over-provisioning.**

Storage pool over-provisioning reserves the specified percentage of space in the storage pool in order to maintain consistent pool access performance. Storage pool over-provisioning also extends the lifespan of SSDs in the pool.

**11. Optional: Configure the alert threshold.**

QuTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used pool space is equal to or above the specified threshold.

**12. Specify the SED password.**

The SED password must consist of 8 to 32 characters from any of the following groups:

- Letters: A to Z, a to z
- Numbers: 0 to 9
- Special characters: Any except for space ( )



**Warning**

Remember this password. If you forget the password, the pool will become inaccessible and all data will be unrecoverable.

**13. Optional: Save the encryption key to the local NAS**

Saving the encryption key enables QuTS hero to automatically unlock and mount the SED pool when the NAS starts up. If the encryption key is not saved, you must specify the encryption password every time the NAS restarts.



**Warning**

Saving the encryption key can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.

14. Click **Next**.
15. Click **Create**.  
A confirmation message appears.
16. Click **OK**.

QTS hero creates the storage pool and then displays the information on the **Storage/Snapshots** screen.

### SED Storage Pool Actions

Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** , select a SED pool, click **Manage**, then select **Actions > SED Settings** to perform the following actions.

Action	Description
Change SED Pool Password	<p>Change the SED security password. You can also choose to save the encryption key to the local NAS.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Warning</b> Remember this password. If you forget the password, the pool will become inaccessible and all data will be unrecoverable.</p> </div> <p>Saving the encryption key enables QTS hero to automatically unlock and mount the SED pool when the NAS starts up. If the encryption key is not saved, you must specify the encryption password every time the NAS restarts.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Warning</b> Saving the encryption key can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.</p> </div>
Lock	Lock the pool. All shared folders, LUNs, snapshots, and data will become inaccessible until it is unlocked.
Unlock	Unlock a locked SED pool. All shared folders, LUNs, snapshots, and data will become accessible.
Disable SED Security	Remove user password and disable the ability to lock and unlock the pool.
Enable SED Security	Add user password and enable the ability to lock and unlock the pool.

### Removing a Locked SED Storage Pool

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a locked SED storage pool.

3. Click **Manage**, and then select **Remove**.  
The **Removal Wizard** window opens.
4. Select a removal option.

Option	Description
Enter the password of the pool	QuTS hero unlocks the SED disks in the storage pool, and then deletes all data.
Forget password	QuTS hero removes the storage pool without unlocking the disks. The SED disks cannot be used again until you perform one of the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock the disks. Go to <b>Disks/VJBOD</b>, click <b>Recover</b>, and then select <b>Attach and Recover Storage Pool</b>.</li> <li>• Erase the disks using SED erase.</li> </ul>

5. Click **Apply**.

### SED Erase

SED Erase erases all of the data on a locked or unlocked SED disk and removes the SED security password.

#### Erasing a Disk Using SED Erase

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD**.
2. Select an SED disk.
3. Click **Actions**, and then select **SED Erase**.  
The **SED Erase** window opens.
4. Enter the disk's PSID.



**Tip**  
The PSID can usually be found on the front of the disk.

5. Click **Apply**.

### Expansion Units

Expansion units are designed to expand the storage capacity of a QNAP NAS by adding extra drive bays. Expansion units can be connected to the NAS using USB, Mini-SAS, Thunderbolt, or other cable type.



**Tip**  
Expansion units used to be known as JBODs.

#### Expansion Unit Actions

Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** and select an expansion unit to perform one of the following actions.



Action	Description
<b>Enclosure Info</b>	View full hardware details of the expansion unit, including the model, serial number, firmware version, BUS type, CPU temperature, system temperature, power status, and fan speeds.
<b>Action &gt; Locate</b>	Prompt the expansion unit chassis LEDs to blink, so that you can locate the device in a server room or rack.
<b>Action &gt; Safely Detach</b>	Stop all activity and safely unmount the enclosure from the host NAS.
<b>Action &gt; Update Firmware</b>	Update the expansion unit's firmware.
<b>Action &gt; Rename Enclosure</b>	Rename the selected expansion unit.
<b>RAID Group</b>	View details about each RAID group on the expansion unit, including its RAID type, capacity, and member disks.

### Expansion Unit Automatic Recovery



If an expansion unit is accidentally disconnected from the NAS, for example by an unscheduled shutdown or disconnected cable, then the following changes to storage state will occur:

- The status of all storage pools on the expansion unit will change to `Error`.
- The status of all RAID groups on the expansion unit will change to `Not Active`.

If you encounter this situation, reconnect the expansion unit to the NAS and QTS hero will automatically guide you through the recovery process.

### Expansion Unit Recovery Actions

Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD**, select an expansion unit, and then click **Recover** to perform one of the following actions.

Action	Description
Reinitialize enclosure ID	<p>Reset all expansion unit IDs, and then give each unit a new ID number starting from 1 based on the order than they are physically connected.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> Use this action if the expansion unit IDs appear out of sequential order in the enclosure list.</p>
<b>Attach and Recover Storage Pool</b>	<p>Scan all free disks on the NAS and all connected expansion units for existing shared folders, LUNs, and storage pools.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> Perform this action after moving disks between NAS devices.</p>

### QNAP External RAID Devices

## About QNAP External RAID Devices

QNAP External RAID devices are a series of expansion units designed to increase the storage capacity of your NAS or computer. External RAID devices are different from other QNAP expansion units in that they feature hardware RAID. A host can either access the disks in an external RAID individually, or the external RAID device can combine the disks using hardware RAID so that the host accesses them as one large disk. Some external RAID devices have hardware switches for storage configuration, while other models can only be configured through a software interface.

## QNAP External RAID Device Types

Device Type	Summary	Example Models
External RAID enclosure	An expansion unit featuring hardware RAID that connects to a NAS or computer using a connector cable.	TR-004, TR-002, TR-004U
Drive Adapter	A small enclosure featuring hardware RAID that allows you to install 1-2 smaller drives into a larger drive bay in a NAS or computer (e.g. two 2.5-inch SATA drives in a 3.5-inch bay).	QDA-A2AR, QDA-A2MAR, QDA-U2MP

## Storage Modes

QNAP RAID enclosures support two different storage modes.



### Important

QNAP drive adapters only support NAS storage mode.

Storage Mode	Description	Supported RAID Types	Supported Hosts
NAS Storage	Use the RAID enclosure's storage capacity to create a new storage pool on a QNAP NAS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• JBOD</li> <li>• RAID 0</li> <li>• RAID 1</li> <li>• RAID 5</li> <li>• RAID 10</li> </ul>	QNAP NAS running QuTS hero 4.5.0 or later
External Storage	Use the RAID enclosure as an external USB disk. This mode supports multiple RAID groups. Each RAID group appears as a separate disk when the enclosure is connected to a host.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individual</li> <li>• JBOD</li> <li>• RAID 0</li> <li>• RAID 1</li> <li>• RAID 5</li> <li>• RAID 10</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows</li> <li>• macOS</li> <li>• Linux</li> <li>• QNAP NAS</li> <li>• Other NAS devices</li> </ul>

## Storage Configuration

## Creating a Storage Pool on a RAID Enclosure



### Important

- The Mode switch on the RAID enclosure must be set to Software Control mode. For details, see the enclosure's hardware user guide.
- The RAID enclosure must not contain any existing RAID groups.



### Warning

To prevent errors or data loss, do not change the enclosure Mode switch from Software Control to any other mode while the enclosure is connected to the NAS.

1. Open **Storage & Snapshots**.
2. Click **External RAID Device**, and then select **External RAID Management**. The **External RAID Management** window opens.
3. Click **Configure**. The **External RAID Device Configuration Wizard** opens.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select two or more disks.



### Warning

- All data on the selected disks will be deleted.
- All unselected disks will be automatically assigned as spare disks, and cannot be used until the RAID group has been deleted.

6. Select a RAID type. QuTS hero displays all available RAID types and automatically selects the most optimized RAID type.

Number of disks	Supported RAID Types	Default RAID Type
Two	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 1	RAID 1
Three	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 5	RAID 5
Four	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 5, RAID 10	RAID 5



### Tip

Use the default RAID type if you are unsure of which option to select.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Select **Create Storage Pool**.
9. Click **Create**. A confirmation message appears.
10. Click **OK**.
  - The RAID enclosure creates the RAID group.
  - The **Create Storage Pool Wizard** opens on the **Select Disks** screen.
  - The RAID group you created is automatically selected and the RAID type is set to `Single`.

11. Click **Next**.
12. Configure the alert threshold.  
QTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used pool space is equal to or above the specified threshold.
13. Click **Next**.
14. Click **Create**.  
A confirmation message appears.
15. Click **OK**.

QTS hero creates the storage pool and then displays the information on the **Storage/Snapshots** screen.

### Creating a Storage Pool on a Drive Adapter

1. Set the drive adapter to the RAID mode that you want using the device's hardware Mode switch.
2. Install the drive adapter in the NAS.  
For details, see the drive adapter's hardware user guide.
3. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
4. Perform one of the following actions.
  - Click **New Storage Pool**.
  - Click **Create**, and then select **New Storage Pool**.

The **Create Storage Pool Wizard** window opens.

5. Click **Next**.
6. Under **Enclosure Unit**, select **NAS Host**.
7. In the list of disks, select the drive adapter.
8. Under **RAID Type**, select **Single**.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Optional: Configure SSD over-provisioning.  
Over-provisioning reserves a percentage of SSD storage space on each disk in the RAID group to improve write performance and extend the disk's lifespan. You can decrease the amount of space reserved for over-provisioning after QTS hero has created the RAID group.



#### Tip

To determine the optimal amount of over-provisioning for your SSDs, download and run SSD Profiling Tool from App Center.

11. Optional: Configure the alert threshold.  
QTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used pool space is equal to or above the specified threshold.
12. Click **Next**.
13. Click **OK**.
  - The **Create Storage Pool Wizard** opens on the **Select Disks** screen.

- The RAID group created in steps 3-5 is selected as the disk for the storage pool.
- The RAID type is set to `Single`.

14. Click **Next**.

15. Configure the alert threshold.

QTuS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used pool space is equal to or above the specified threshold.

16. Click **Next**.

17. Click **Create**.

A confirmation message appears.

18. Click **OK**.

QTuS hero creates the storage pool and then displays the information on the **Storage/Snapshots** screen.

### Configuring a RAID Enclosure as an External Storage Device



#### Important

- The Mode switch on the RAID enclosure must be set to Software Control mode. For details, see the enclosure's hardware user guide.
- The RAID enclosure must not contain any existing RAID groups.



#### Warning

To prevent errors or data loss, do not change the enclosure Mode switch from Software Control to any other mode while the enclosure is connected to the NAS.

1. Open **Storage & Snapshots**.

2. Click **External RAID Device**, and then select **External RAID Management**.  
The **External RAID Management** window opens.

3. Click **Configure**.  
The **External RAID Device Configuration Wizard** opens.

4. Click **Next**.

5. Select two or more disks.



#### Warning

- All data on the selected disks will be deleted.
- All unselected disks will be automatically assigned as spare disks, and cannot be used until the RAID group has been deleted.

6. Select a RAID type.

QTuS hero displays all available RAID types and automatically selects the most optimized RAID type.

Number of disks	Supported RAID Types	Default RAID Type
Two	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 1	RAID 1
Three	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 5	RAID 5
Four	JBOD, RAID 0, RAID 5, RAID 10	RAID 5



**Tip**

Use the default RAID type if you are unsure of which option to choose.



7. Click **Next**.
8. Select **Create External Storage Space**.
9. Click **Create**.  
A confirmation message appears.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > External Storage**.
12. Select the uninitialized partition on the RAID enclosure.



**Tip**

Double-click on the RAID enclosure to see all of its partitions.

13. Click **Actions**, and then select **Format**.  
The **Format Partition** window opens.
14. Select a file system.

File System	Recommended Operating Systems and Devices
NTFS	Windows
HTS+	macOS
FAT32	Windows, macOS, NAS devices, most cameras, mobile phones, video game consoles, tablets   <b>Important</b> The maximum file size is 4 GB.
exFAT	Windows, macOS, some cameras, mobile phones, video game consoles, tablets   <b>Important</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using exFAT on QUTS hero requires an exFAT driver license. You can purchase the license in License Center.</li> <li>• Verify that your device is compatible with exFAT before selecting this option.</li> </ul>
EXT3	Linux, NAS devices
EXT4	Linux, NAS devices

15. Specify a disk label.  
The label must consist of 1 to 16 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Special characters: Hyphen "-"

**16. Optional: Enable encryption.**

**a. Select an encryption type.**

Select one of the following options:

- AES 128 bits
- AES 192 bits
- AES 256 bits

**b. Specify an encryption password.**

The password must consist of 8 to 16 characters from any of the following groups:

- Letters: A to Z, a to z
- Numbers: 0 to 9
- All special characters (excluding spaces)

**c. Confirm the encryption password.**

**d. Optional: Select **Save encryption key**.**

Select this option to save a local copy of the encryption key on the NAS. This enables QTS hero to automatically unlock and mount the encrypted volume when the NAS starts up. If the encryption key is not saved, you must specify the encryption password each time the NAS restarts.



**Warning**

- Saving the encryption key on the NAS can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.
- If you forget the encryption password, the volume will become inaccessible and all data will be lost.

**17. Click **Format**.**

A warning message appears.

**18. Click **OK**.**

QTS hero formats the RAID group on the external RAID enclosure as an external disk. You can view and manage it at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > External Storage** .

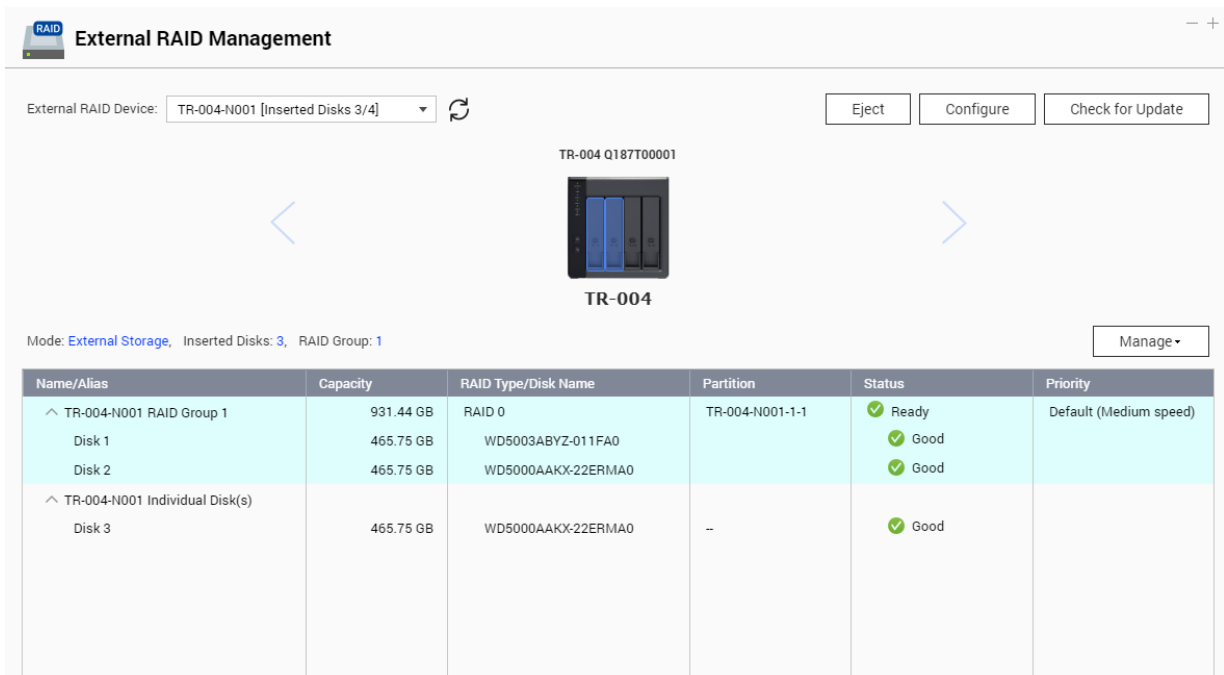
**QTS hero External RAID Management**




Open **Storage & Snapshots**, click **External RAID device**, and then select **External RAID Management** to view, manage, and configure RAID devices connected to the NAS.






**Warning**

To prevent errors or data loss, do not change an RAID device's Mode switch from Software Control to any other mode while the device is connected to the NAS.



UI Element	Description
<b>External RAID Device</b>	Select a RAID device to manage.
<b>Safely Detach</b>	<p>Disconnect a RAID device from the NAS when the device is in NAS Storage mode. QUTS hero will stop and then safely remove all storage pools, shared folders, volumes, and LUNs stored on the device, without deleting any data. You can then connect it to another NAS or computer.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To access the storage pools, shared folders, volumes, and LUNs on another QNAP NAS, connect the RAID device to the target NAS, go to <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Disks/VJBOD</b> then select <b>Recover &gt; Scan all Free Disks</b> .</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This button only appears when the device is in NAS Storage mode.</p>
<b>Eject</b>	<p>Safely disconnect a RAID device from the NAS when the device is in External Storage mode. You can then connect it to another NAS or computer.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This button only appears when the device is in External Storage mode.</p>




UI Element	Description
<b>Configure</b>	<p>Create a RAID group on the RAID device and configure the storage mode.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> The RAID device's Mode switch must be set to Software Control mode.</p>
<b>Check for Update</b>	<p>Update the RAID device's firmware, either over the internet or from a local file. For details, see <a href="#">Manually Updating External RAID Device Firmware in QuTS hero</a>.</p>
<b>Manage &gt; Configure Spare Disk</b>	<p>Configure a global hot spare disk for the RAID device. If a disk in any RAID group on the device fails, the hot spare disk will automatically replace the faulty disk. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring a Spare Disk</a>.</p>
<b>Manage &gt; Remove</b>	<p>Delete the RAID group. The member disks will be automatically assigned as global spare disks if the device contains any other RAID groups.</p> <p> <b>Warning</b> All data on the selected disks will be deleted.</p>
<b>Manage &gt; View Disks</b>	<p>View the information about the disks installed in the RAID device, including their status and health information.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Selecting this option takes you to the <b>Disks/VJBOD</b> screen.</p>

### Migrating an External RAID Enclosure in NAS Storage Mode

Follow these steps to move a RAID enclosure containing a storage pool from a QNAP NAS to a different QNAP NAS (which we will call the target NAS).

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
2. Select an enclosure.
3. Select **Action > Safely Detach** .  
The **Safely Detaching Enclosure** window opens.
4. Click **Apply**.

 **Warning**  
Do not disconnect or power off the RAID enclosure until the enclosure has been detached.

A confirmation message appears.



5. Disconnect the RAID enclosure from the NAS.
6. Connect the RAID enclosure to the target QNAP NAS.
7. On the target NAS, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .

8. Click **Recover**, and then select **Attach and Recover Storage Pool**.  
A confirmation message appears.
9. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero scans the RAID enclosure for storage pools, and then displays them on the **Recover Wizard** window.
10. Click **Apply**.

QuTS hero makes all storage pools, shared folders, and LUNs on the RAID enclosure available on the target NAS at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .

### Manually Updating External RAID Device Firmware in QuTS hero

1. Open **Storage & Snapshots**.
2. Click **External RAID Device** and then select **External RAID Management**.  
The **External RAID Management** window opens.
3. Select a RAID device.
4. Click **Check for Update**.  
The **Firmware Management** window opens. QuTS hero checks online for the latest device firmware.
5. Select a firmware update method.

Firmware Update Method	Description
Install the latest firmware version	<p>Download and install the latest version of the device firmware.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #00a0e3; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Note</b> You can only select this option if QuTS hero has checked online and found a newer firmware version than the one currently installed on the device.</p> </div>
Select a local firmware file	<p>Update the firmware using a local firmware IMG file on your computer. Click <b>Browse</b> to select the file.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #ffc107; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b> You can download firmware updates at <a href="https://download.qnap.com">https://download.qnap.com</a>.</p> </div>

6. Click **Update**.



#### Warning

Do not power off or disconnect the RAID device unless prompted.

7. Follow the instructions to install the firmware update.  
Depending on the model you may be asked to power off then power on the device, or disconnect then reconnect the device.  
QuTS hero re-detects the device and displays a notification message.
8. Wait for confirmation that the firmware update has finished.
9. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
10. Click **Recover**, and then select **Attach and Recover Storage Pool**.

## Configuring a Spare Disk

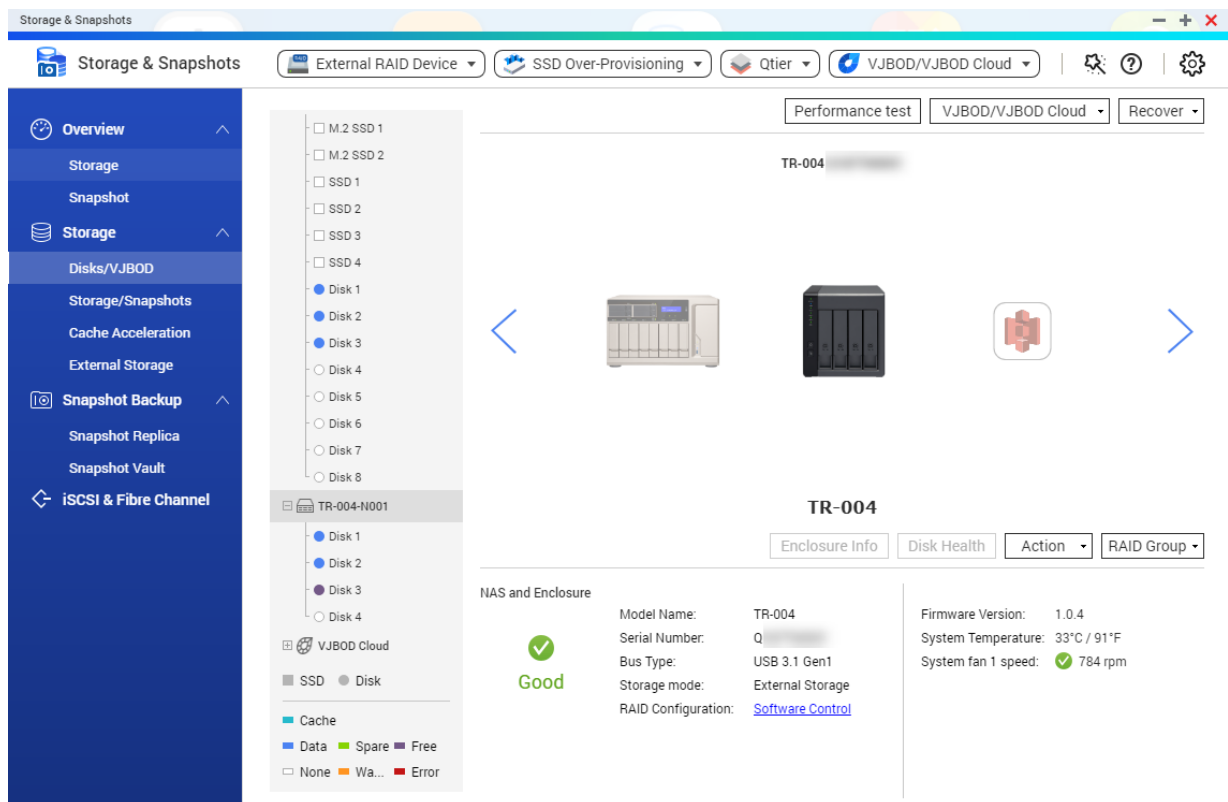
1. Open **Storage & Snapshots**.
2. Click **External RAID Device** and then select **External RAID Management**.  
The **External RAID Management** window opens.
3. Click **Manage**, and then select **Configure Spare Disk**.  
The **Configure Spare Disk** window opens.
4. Select one or more free disks.
5. Click **Apply**.

The selected disks are assigned as spare disks for the RAID group on the external RAID device.

## External RAID Device Health

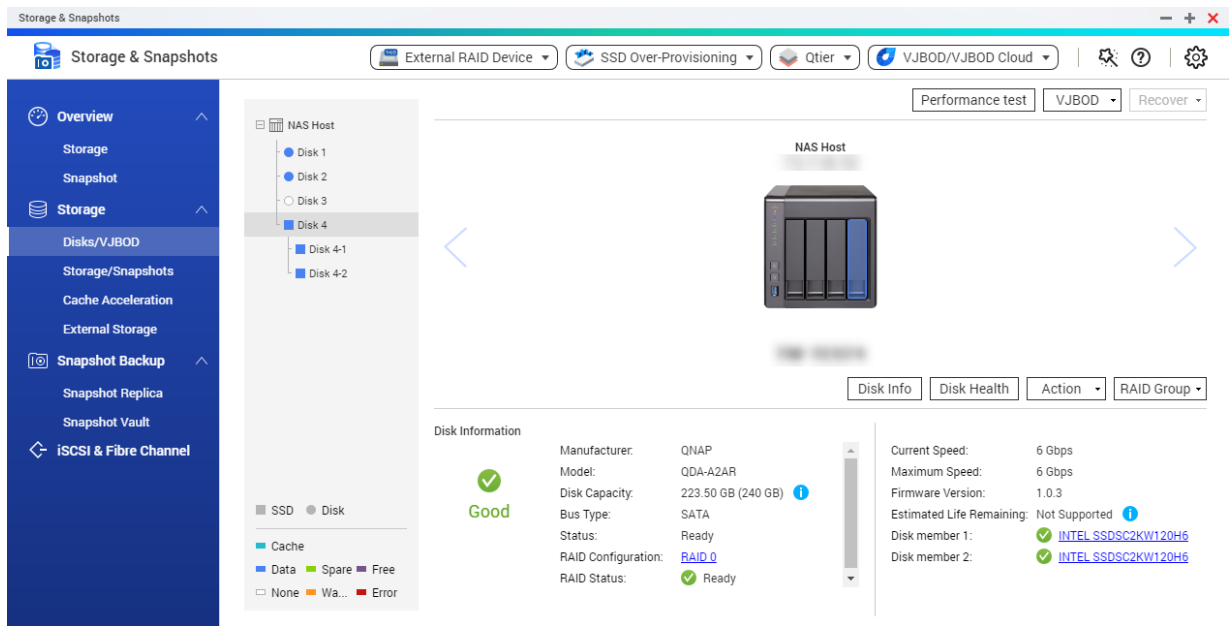
### RAID Enclosure Health

To view the status and health of RAID enclosures connected to the NAS, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD**.



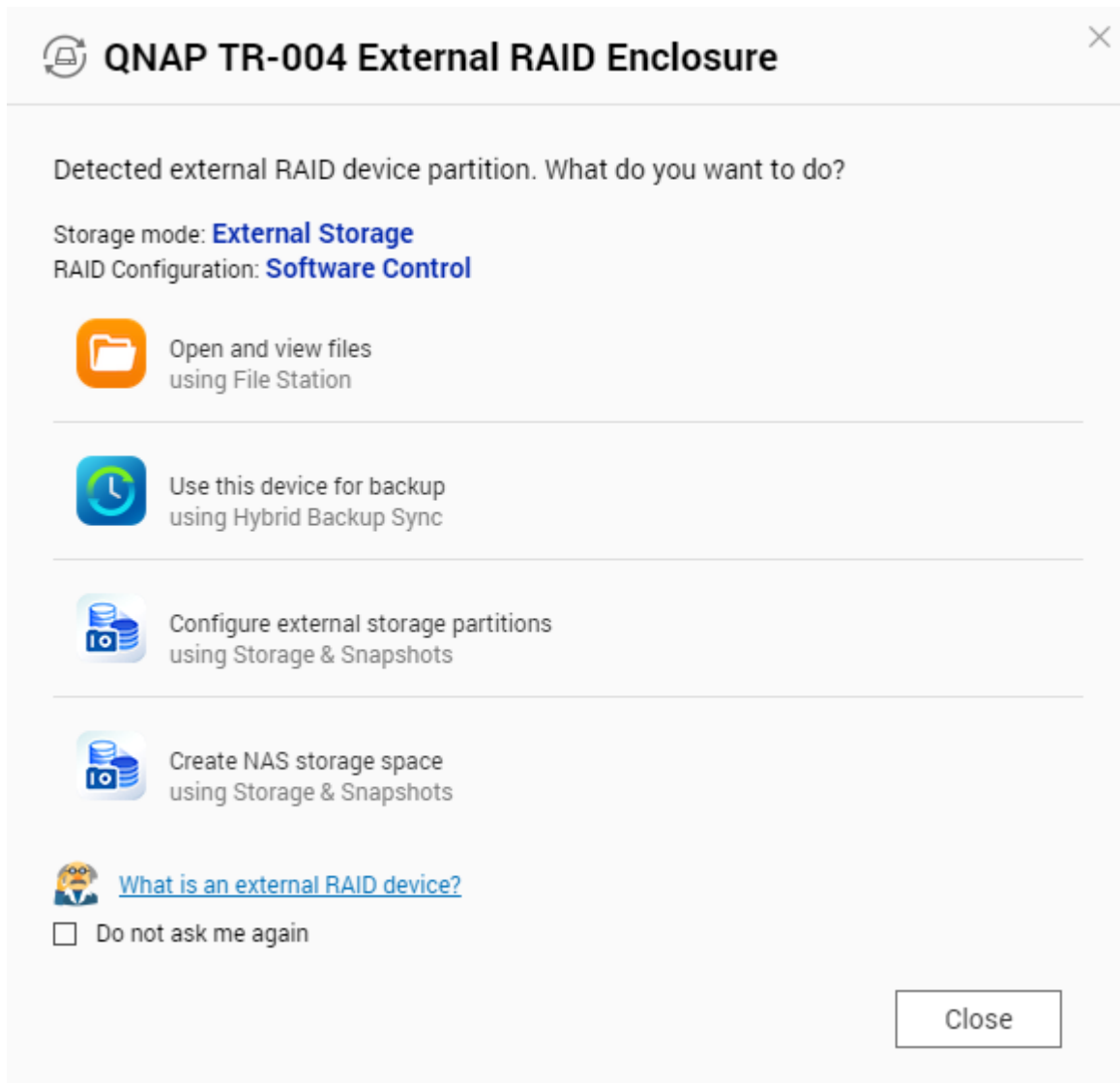
## Drive Adapter Health

To view the status and health of drive adapters and the disks installed in it, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD**.



## The Autoplay Menu

The Autoplay menu opens when you connect a RAID enclosure to a NAS. The actions available in this menu vary depending on the enclosure's current storage mode and RAID configuration.



Action	Description
Open and view files	Opens the enclosure in <b>File Station</b> .
Use this device for backup	Opens <b>HBS</b> .
Configure external storage partitions	Opens <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Storage &gt; External Storage</b> . For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring a RAID Enclosure as an External Storage Device</a> .
Create NAS storage space	Opens <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Storage &gt; Storage/Snapshots</b> . For more information, see: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Creating a Storage Pool on a RAID Enclosure</a></li> </ul>
Edit access permissions	Opens the <b>Edit Shared Folder Permissions</b> window to edit access permissions for this device.

## Snapshots

A snapshot protects data by recording the state of a shared folder or LUN at a specific point in time. With snapshots, you can perform the following:

- Restore a shared folder or LUN to a previous state.
- Access and restore previous versions of files and folders.
- Create an identical copy of a shared folder or LUN.



**Note**

To use snapshots, your NAS model must support snapshots and have at least 1 GB of memory. For a list of compatible NAS models, see [www.qnap.com/solution/snapshots](http://www.qnap.com/solution/snapshots).

## Snapshot Storage Limitations


- Maximum snapshots per NAS: 65536
- Maximum snapshots per shared folder or LUN: 65536

## Snapshot Creation

### Taking a Snapshot

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder or LUN.
3. Click **Snapshot** and then select **Take a Snapshot**.  
The **Take a Snapshot** window opens.
4. Optional: Specify a name.
5. Optional: Choose to keep the snapshot permanently.  
If selected, QTS hero retains the snapshot indefinitely. If not selected, QTS hero may delete the snapshot according to the snapshot retention policy set for the shared folder or LUN.
6. Select the LUN snapshot type.  
This setting is only available when taking a snapshot of a block-based LUN.

Type	Description
Crash consistent	The snapshot records the state of the data on the LUN.

Type	Description
Application consistent	<p>The snapshot records the state of data and applications on the LUN. The iSCSI host flushes data in memory to the LUN before QuTS hero takes a snapshot. If VMware vCenter is using the LUN, vCenter takes a virtual machine snapshot.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Important</b> This option is only available for VMware vCenter, or for Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) aware applications running on a Windows server. You must install QNAP Snapshot Agent on the iSCSI initiator.</p> </div>

7. Optional: Specify a description.  
The description helps you to identify the snapshot.
8. Click **OK**.  
A confirmation message appears.
9. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero takes the snapshot. The snapshot appears in **Snapshot Manager**.

### Configuring a Snapshot Schedule




**Tip**

You can configure a separate snapshot schedule for each shared folder and LUN.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder or LUN.
3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Click **Schedule Snapshot**.  
The **Snapshot Settings** window opens.
5. Select **Enable schedule**.
6. Specify how often QuTS hero will take a snapshot.
7. Select the LUN snapshot type.  
This setting is only available when taking a snapshot of a block-based LUN.

Type	Description
Crash consistent	The snapshot records the state of the data on the LUN.

Type	Description
Application consistent	<p>The snapshot records the state of data and applications on the LUN. The iSCSI host flushes data in memory to the LUN before QuTS hero takes a snapshot. If VMware vCenter is using the LUN, vCenter takes a virtual machine snapshot.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Important</b> This option is only available for VMware vCenter, or for Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) aware applications running on a Windows server. You must install QNAP Snapshot Agent on the iSCSI initiator.</p> </div>

8. Optional: Enable smart snapshots.  
When enabled, QuTS hero only takes a snapshot if data on the shared folder or LUN was modified since the last snapshot was taken.
9. Optional: Specify a description.  
The description helps you to identify the snapshot.
10. Click **OK**.  
A confirmation message appears.
11. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero starts taking snapshots according to the schedule.

## Snapshot Management

### Snapshot Retention Policy

The snapshot retention policy determines how long QuTS hero keeps each snapshot of a shared folder or LUN before deleting it. Each shared folder and LUN has its own individual snapshot retention policy.

#### Configuring a Snapshot Retention Policy




**Important**

After you create or modify a snapshot retention policy, QuTS hero applies the new policy to existing snapshots. If the new policy is more restrictive than the previous policy, for example changing from `Keep for: 5 days` to `Keep for: 2 days`, then QuTS hero deletes existing snapshots to conform with the new policy.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder or LUN.
3. Click **Snapshot** and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Click **Schedule Snapshot**.  
The **Snapshot Settings** window opens.
5. Click **Snapshot Retention**.
6. Select a snapshot retention policy.



Snapshot Retention Policy	UI Label	Description
Time-based	Keep for	Keep each snapshot for the specified length of time.
Fixed number	Keep the specified number of snapshots	Keep a fixed maximum number of snapshots on the NAS. After the maximum number is reached, QTS hero deletes the oldest snapshot when taking a new snapshot.
Smart versioning	Smart versioning	<p>Keep a snapshot created during a time period for a specified length of time. Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Hourly:</b> 24 - At the end of every hour, the earliest snapshot created that hour becomes the hourly backup. The snapshot is retained for 24 hours and then deleted.</li> <li>• <b>Daily:</b> 14 - At the end of every day, the earliest snapshot created that day becomes the daily snapshot. The snapshot is retained for 14 days and then deleted.</li> <li>• <b>Weekly:</b> 5 - At the end of every week, the earliest snapshot created that week becomes the weekly snapshot. The snapshot is retained for 5 weeks and then deleted.</li> <li>• <b>Monthly:</b> 11 - At the end of every month, the earliest snapshot created that month becomes the monthly snapshot. The snapshot is retained for 11 months and then deleted.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b> The maximum number of snapshots for all time periods combined is 256.</p>

7. Click **OK**.


### Configuring Pool Guaranteed Snapshot Space

Pool guaranteed snapshot space is storage pool space that is reserved for storing snapshots. Enabling this feature ensures that QTS hero always has sufficient space to store new snapshots.

Pool Guaranteed Snapshot Space Status	Snapshot Storage Location
Disabled	Free space in the storage pool
Enabled	Pool guaranteed snapshot space until full, then free space in the storage pool

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .

2. Select a shared folder or LUN.
3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.
4. Click **Pool Guaranteed Snapshot Space**, and then select **Configure**.
5. Enable **Enable Pool Guaranteed Snapshot Space**.
6. Select the amount of reserved space.

Option	Description
Recommended	Reserve a percentage of the total storage pool space.   <b>Tip</b> The default value is 20%.
Custom	Reserve a fixed amount of storage pool space.

7. Click **OK**.

### Deleting Snapshots

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder or LUN.
3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Optional: Change the view to list view.

a.  Click

- b. Select **List View**.

5. Select one or more snapshots.

6.  Click

### Snapshot Data Recovery

#### Restoring Files and Folders from a Snapshot





**Tip**

- Use snapshot revert to quickly restore all data on a shared folder or LUN.
- You can restore files and folders from a snapshots in File Station by enabling **Enable File Station Snapshot Directory for administrators**.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.  
The shared folder must contain at least one snapshot.
3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.

The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.

4. Select a snapshot.
5. Select the files and folders to be restored.
6. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Description
Select <b>Restore &gt; Restore Files</b>	Restore the files or folders to their original storage location. If the files or folders still exists on the NAS, then they will be overwritten with the older versions.   <b>Warning</b> All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.
Select <b>Restore &gt; Restore Files to</b>	Choose one of the following restoration options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restore the files or folders to a different location on the NAS.</li> <li>• Restore the files or folders to remote mounted storage space.</li> <li>• Restore a single shared folder as a new shared folder.</li> </ul>
In the menu bar, click 	Download the files and folders to your computer in a ZIP file.

QuTS hero restores the files and folders then displays a confirmation message.


### Reverting a Shared Folder

Reverting restores a shared folder or LUN to the state at which the snapshot was taken. Restoring data using snapshot revert is faster than restoring individual files and folders.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.

 **Important**  
 The shared folder must be the source folder for a Snapshot Replica job.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
 The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Select a snapshot.
5. Click **Revert Folder Snapshot**.

 **Warning**  
 All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.

6. Click **Local Revert**.

The status of the shared folder changes to *Reverting*. QuTS hero disables access to the shared folder until the revert process is finished.

## Reverting a LUN

Reverting restores a shared folder or LUN to the state at which the snapshot was taken. Restoring data using snapshot revert is faster than restoring individual files and folders.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a block-based LUN.



### Important

The LUN must have at least one snapshot.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Select a snapshot.
5. Click **Revert LUN Snapshot**.



### Warning

All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.

6. Optional: Configure the following settings.

Setting	Description
Re-map LUN to the same iSCSI target after revert	If enabled, QuTS hero automatically remaps the LUN to its current target after reverting. If disabled, you must manually remap the LUN after reverting.

7. Click **Local Revert**.

QuTS hero unmaps the LUN from its iSCSI target. The status of the LUN changes to `Reverting`.

## Restoring Files and Folders using Windows Previous Versions

QuTS hero snapshots integrate with the Previous Versions feature, which enables Windows users to restore files and folders from a snapshot in Windows File Explorer.




### Important

- You must be using Windows 7, Windows 8 or Windows 10.
- The files must be stored on a shared folder that has at least one snapshot.
- **Enable Windows Previous Versions** must be enabled in the shared folder settings.
- **Allow symbolic links between different shared folders** must be enabled at **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Win/Mac/NFS > Microsoft Networking > Advanced Options** .

1. In Windows, open a NAS shared folder using File Explorer.
2. Right-click a file or folder, and then select **Properties > Previous Versions**  
A list of available previous versions appears. Each version corresponds to a snapshot containing the file or folder.
3. Select a previous version.

4. Select one of the following options.

Button	Description
Open	Open the previous version of the file or folder.
Restore	<p>Overwrite the current version of the file or folder with the previous version.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Warning</b> All changes made to the file or folder after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.</p> </div>

## Snapshot Clone

Cloning creates an identical copy of a shared folder or LUN from a snapshot. The copy is stored in the same storage pool as the original shared folder or LUN.

### Cloning a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.



#### Important

The shared folder have at least one snapshot.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Select a snapshot.
5. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
6. Specify a shared folder name.
7. Click **OK**.

### Cloning a Block-Based LUN

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a block-based LUN.



#### Important

The LUN must have at least one snapshot.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Select a snapshot.
5. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
6. Specify a LUN name.

7. Optional: Select an iSCSI target.  
QTS hero will map the LUN copy to the target.
8. Click **OK**.

QTS hero clones the LUN and then displays a confirmation message.

## Snapshot Replica

- Snapshot Replica is a snapshot-based full backup solution for QTS hero.
- With Snapshot Replica you can back up a shared folder or block-based LUN to another storage pool, either on the same NAS or on a different QNAP NAS, using snapshots.
- Backing up data with Snapshot Replica reduces storage space and bandwidth requirements, and simplifies data recovery.

## Protection Levels

Snapshot Replica can back up your snapshots to another storage pool on the local NAS, or to a remote NAS. These different backup configurations provide different levels of data protection.

Protects Against	Snapshots only	Snapshots + Local Snapshot Replica	Snapshots + Remote Snapshot Replica
Accidental modification or deletion of files	✓	✓	✓
Ransomware	✓	✓	✓
RAID Group Failure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Member disks fail</li> <li>• Member disks are removed from the NAS</li> </ul>		✓	✓
Storage Pool Failure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One or more RAID groups in the pool fail</li> <li>• Pool is deleted</li> </ul>		✓	✓
NAS Hardware Failure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NAS cannot power on</li> <li>• QTS hero encounters an error and cannot start</li> <li>• NAS is stolen</li> </ul>			✓

## Snapshot Replica Requirements

NAS	Requirement
Source and Destination NAS	Must be a QNAP NAS that supports snapshots.
Source and Destination NAS	Both source and destination NAS devices must be running QuTS hero. Replicating snapshots from QuTS hero to QTS or vice versa is not supported.
Source and Destination NAS	Must have at least 1GB of installed memory.
Source and Destination NAS	SSH port 22 and TCP data ports 50100-50199 must be open.
Destination NAS	The NAS must have at least one storage pool with free space greater than or equal to the size of the shared folder or LUN being backed up.
Destination NAS	<b>Allow SSH connections</b> must be enabled at <b>Control Panel &gt; Network &amp; File Servers &gt; Telnet / SSH</b> .

## Creating a Snapshot Replica Job



### Important

When running a Snapshot Replica job for the first time, all data on the shared folder or LUN is transferred to the destination NAS. This may take a long time, depending on the network connection speed and the read/write speeds of both NAS devices.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Snapshot Backup > Snapshot Replica** .
2. Click **Create a Replication Job**.  
The **Create a Snapshot Replication Job** wizard opens.
3. Select the source shared folder or LUN.
4. Optional: Specify a job name.



### Tip

The default job name is the first 6 characters of the source shared folder or LUN name followed by "\_rep".

5. Click **Next**.
6. Specify the address of the destination NAS.  
Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Destination NAS Location	Description
Manually specify the NAS address	LAN, WAN, Internet	Allows you to enter an IP address, hostname, or FQDN
Click <b>Detect</b> and then select a NAS from the list	LAN	Displays a list of all QNAP NAS devices on the local network
Click <b>Local Host</b>	Local NAS	Replicates snapshots between different storage pools on the same NAS

7. Enter the password for the default admin account on the destination NAS.

8. Optional: Specify a port.



**Tip**

The default port is 22.

9. Click **Test**.

QTS hero connects to the destination NAS using the specified admin password, and checks that there is sufficient storage space.

10. Click **Next**.

11. Specify how many replicated snapshots will be kept on the destination NAS.

After the specified number is reached, QTS hero will delete the oldest snapshot each time it replicates a new snapshot.

12. Select the destination storage pool.

13. Click **Next**.

14. Select a backup plan.


Backup Plan	Description
Start replication job after taking a local snapshot	The replica job will run each time QTS hero creates the specified number of snapshots. These snapshots may be created manually or on a schedule.
Start replication job on a schedule	<p>The replica job runs according to the specified schedule, and replicates all snapshots created since it was last run. If no new snapshots were created, it will not replicate any data. Choose one of the following scheduling options, and then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Run on a schedule: The job automatically runs daily, weekly, or monthly. Settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schedule: How often the job runs</li> <li>• Day: The day that the job runs on</li> <li>• Expiration date: The replica job stops running after this date</li> <li>• Frequency: How often the job runs on the days specified by "Schedule" and "Day"</li> <li>• Start at: The time that the job starts running.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Run once: The job runs once on a specific time and day.</li> <li>• Manually start: The job does not run unless a user starts it.</li> </ul>



Backup Plan	Description
<p>Take a new snapshot on a schedule, then run replication job</p>	<p>The replica job runs according to the specified schedule. QuTS hero takes a new snapshot immediately before starting each run of the job. This ensures that there is always at least one snapshot to replicate.</p> <p>Choose one of the following scheduling options, and then click <b>Add</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Run on a schedule: The job automatically runs daily, weekly, or monthly. Settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schedule: How often the job runs</li> <li>• Day: The day that the job runs on</li> <li>• Expiration date: The replica job stops running after this date</li> <li>• Frequency: How often the job runs on the days specified by "Schedule" and "Day"</li> <li>• Start at: The time that the job starts running.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Run once: The job runs once on a specific time and day.</li> <li>• Manually start: The job does not run unless a user starts it.</li> </ul>

15. Click **Next**.

16. Optional: Configure transfer settings.

Setting	Description
<p>Encrypt transfer</p>	<p>QuTS hero encrypts the snapshot before replicating it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The job must be run by the NAS admin user</li> <li>• The port used by this job must be the same as the SSH port on the destination NAS</li> </ul>
<p>Compress transfer</p>	<p>QuTS hero compresses snapshots when replicating them. This consumes more CPU and system memory, but reduces the amount of bandwidth required.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Tip</b></p> <p>Enable this setting in low bandwidth networks, or if the NAS devices are connected through a WAN.</p> </div> </div>
<p>Maximum transfer speed</p>	<p>Limits how much network bandwidth this job uses</p>

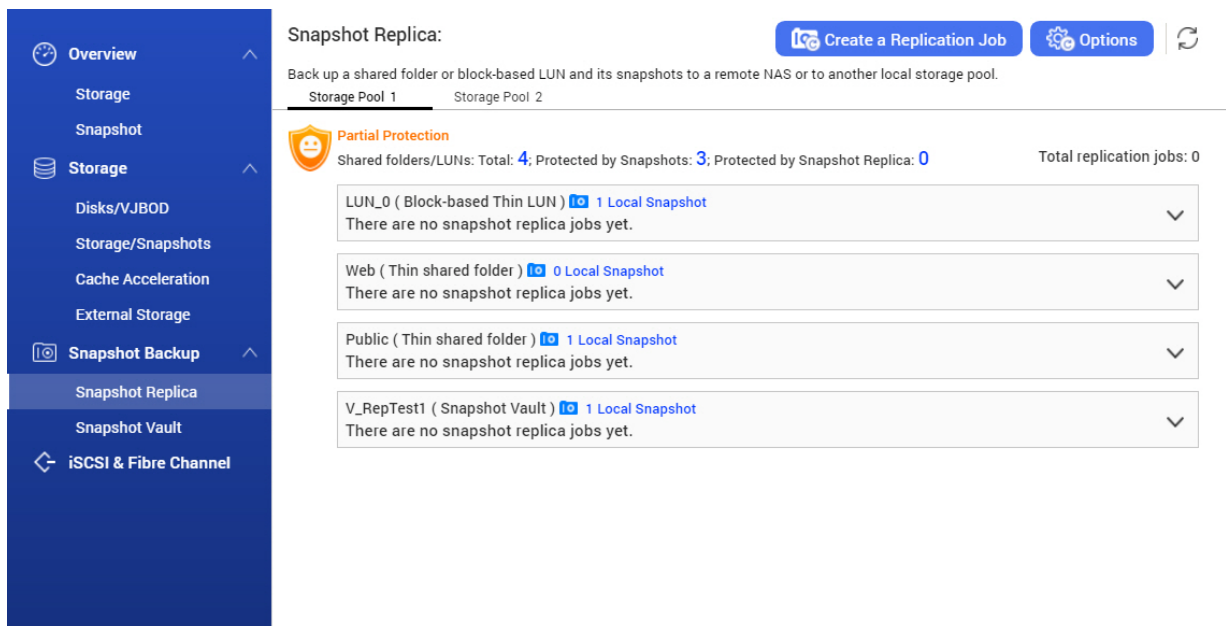
17. Optional: Export the source data to an external storage device.

To save time and bandwidth, you can export the source data to a connected external storage device such as a USB disk. After connecting the external storage device to the destination NAS, QuTS hero will import the source data when the job is next run.

- a. Connect an external storage device to the NAS.
  - b. Select **Export source data to external storage device on first run**.
  - c. Select the external storage device.
  - d. Optional: Select **Skip the export** if you have already exported the source data to the external storage device.
18. Click **Next**.
  19. Optional: Select **Execute backup immediately**.  
When enabled, the job will run immediately after being created.
  20. Review the job information.
  21. Click **Finish**.  
QuTS hero creates the job.
  22. Optional: If you chose to export source data to an external storage device, disconnect the storage device from the source NAS and connect it to the destination NAS.





### Snapshot Replica Management

To manage snapshot replica setting and jobs, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Snapshot Backup > Snapshot Replica** .



### Snapshot Replica Job Actions

Icon	Description
	Enable or disable the schedule
	Start

Icon	Description
	Stop
	Edit settings
	View logs
	Delete

### Snapshot Replica Options

Setting	Description	Default Value
Timeout (seconds)	When a job is interrupted, QuTS hero waits the specified number of seconds before canceling the job and marking it as failed.	600
Number of retries	When a job fails, QuTS hero runs the job again the specified number of times.	3

## Data Recovery on a Source NAS

### Restoring Files and Folders from a Remote Snapshot



**Important**

Restoration time depends on the amount of data being restored and the connection speed between the two NAS devices.



1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.



**Important**

The shared folder must be the source folder for a Snapshot Replica job.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Under **Select snapshot location**, select a remote NAS.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Select the files and folders to be restored.
7. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Description
Select <b>Restore &gt; Restore Files</b>	Restore the files or folders to their original storage location. If the files or folders still exists on the NAS, then they will be overwritten with the older versions.   <b>Warning</b> All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.
Select <b>Restore &gt; Restore Files to</b>	Choose one of the following restoration options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restore the files or folders to a different location on the NAS.</li> <li>• Restore the files or folders to remote mounted storage space.</li> <li>• Restore a single shared folder as a new shared folder.</li> </ul>
In the menu bar, click 	Download the files and folders to your computer in a ZIP file.

QuTS hero restores the files and folders then displays a confirmation message.

### Reverting a Shared Folder Using a Remote Snapshot

Reverting restores a shared folder or LUN to the state at which the snapshot was taken. Restoring data using snapshot revert is faster than restoring individual files and folders.



**Important**

Restoration time depends on the amount of data being restored and the connection speed between the two NAS devices.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.



**Important**

The shared folder must be the source folder for a Snapshot Replica job.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Under **Select snapshot location**, select a remote NAS.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Click **Revert Folder Snapshot**.



**Warning**

All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.

7. Optional: Configure the following settings.

Setting	Description
Take a new snapshot before reverting	QuTS hero takes a snapshot before starting the revert. This ensures that changes made to data since the snapshot was taken are not permanently lost.
Enable encryption during transfer	QuTS hero encrypts the snapshot before sending it for additional security.



**Warning**

If the network connection is interrupted or if the storage configuration of the source or destination NAS changes while reverting, the shared folder might become inaccessible. If this happens, revert the shared folder again using a local or remote snapshot.

8. Click **Remote Revert**.  
The **Remote Revert Warning** window opens.
9. Enter the QuTS hero administrator password.
10. Click **OK**.

The status of the shared folder changes to *Remote Reverting*. QuTS hero disables access to the shared folder until the revert process is finished.

**Reverting a LUN Using a Remote Snapshot**

Reverting restores a shared folder or LUN to the state at which the snapshot was taken. Restoring data using snapshot revert is faster than restoring individual files and folders.



**Warning**

- While reverting, ensure that data is not being accessed on the LUN. The safest way to do this is to disconnect all iSCSI initiators. Accessing the LUN during a snapshot revert might result in data loss.
- Restoration time depends on the amount of data being restored and the connection speed between the two NAS devices.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a block-based LUN.



**Important**

The LUN must have at least one snapshot.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Under **Select snapshot location**, select a remote NAS.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Click **Revert LUN Snapshot**.



**Warning**

All changes made after the snapshot was taken will be deleted.

7. Optional: Configure the following settings.

Setting	Description
Take a new snapshot before reverting	QuTS hero takes a snapshot before starting the revert. This ensures that changes made to data since the snapshot was taken are not permanently lost.
Enable encryption during transfer	QuTS hero encrypts the snapshot before sending it for additional security.
Re-map LUN to the same iSCSI target after revert	If enabled, QuTS hero automatically remaps the LUN to its current target after reverting. If disabled, you must manually remap the LUN after reverting.



**Warning**

If the network connection is interrupted or if the storage configuration of the source or destination NAS changes while reverting, the LUN might become inaccessible. If this happens, revert the LUN again using a local or remote snapshot.

8. Click **Remote Revert**.  
The **Remote Revert Warning** window opens.
9. Enter the QuTS hero administrator password.
10. Click **OK**.

QuTS hero unmaps the LUN from its iSCSI target. The status of the LUN changes to *Reverting*.

**Cloning a Shared Folder from a Remote Snapshot**



**Important**

The time required to clone the shared folder depends on the amount of data stored in the folder and the connection speed between the two NAS devices.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a shared folder.



**Important**

The shared folder have at least one snapshot.

3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Under **Select snapshot location**, select a remote NAS.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
7. Specify a shared folder name.
8. Select a storage pool.
9. Optional: Select **Enable encryption during transfer**.  
QuTS hero encrypts the snapshot before sending it for additional security.
10. Click **OK**.

QTS hero clones the shared folder, and then displays a confirmation message.

### Cloning a Block-Based LUN from a Remote Snapshot

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Select a block-based LUN.



#### Important

The LUN must have at least one snapshot.

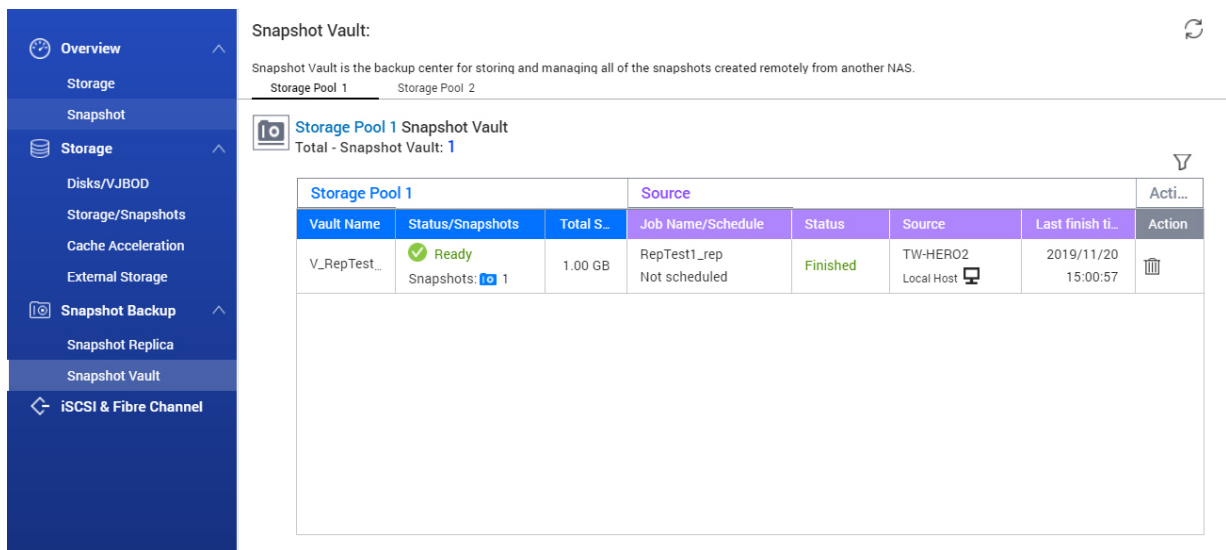
3. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Manager**.  
The **Snapshot Manager** window opens.
4. Under **Select snapshot location**, select a remote NAS.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
7. Specify a LUN name.
8. Select a storage pool.
9. Optional: Select an iSCSI target.  
QTS hero will map the LUN copy to the target.
10. Select **Enable encryption during transfer**.  
QTS hero encrypts the snapshot before sending it for additional security.
11. Click **OK**.

QTS hero clones the LUN and then displays a confirmation message.


### Data Recovery on a Destination NAS

#### Snapshot Vault


After setting a NAS as the destination for a Snapshot Replica job, the replicated snapshots are stored in Snapshot Vault. Each replica job has its own separate vault.



### Restoring Files and Folders from a Snapshot Vault

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Snapshot Backup > Snapshot Vault** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. On a vault, click  .  
The **Snapshot Vault** window opens.
4. Optional: Unlock the vault.  
If the original source shared folder is encrypted, you must unlock the vault with the shared folder's encryption password.
  - a. Click **Unlock**.
  - b. Enter the encryption password or upload the encryption key.
  - c. Click **OK**.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Select the files and folders to be restored.
7. Click **Restore Files To**.
8. Specify a restore location.
9. Click **OK**.

### Cloning a Shared Folder from a Snapshot Vault

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Snapshot Backup > Snapshot Vault** .
2. Select a storage pool.
3. On a vault, click  .  
The **Snapshot Vault** window opens.



4. Optional: Unlock the vault.  
If the original source shared folder is encrypted, you must unlock the vault with the shared folder's encryption password.
  - a. Click **Unlock**.
  - b. Enter the encryption password or upload the encryption key.
  - c. Click **OK**.
5. Select a snapshot.
6. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
7. Specify a shared folder name.
8. Click **OK**.


QTS hero clones the shared folder, and then displays a confirmation message.

### Cloning a Block-Based LUN from a Snapshot Vault



#### Important

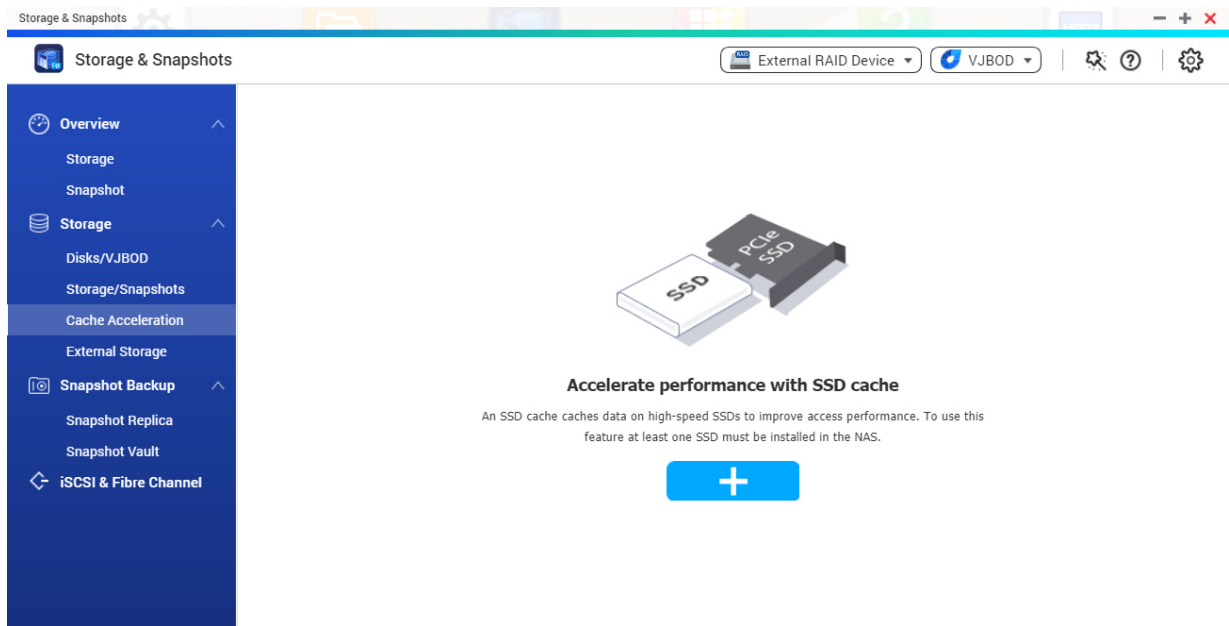
The time required to create the LUN depends on the amount of data stored on the LUN and the connection speed between the two NAS devices.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Snapshot Backup > Snapshot Vault**.
2. Select a storage pool.
3. On a vault, click .  
The **Snapshot Vault** window opens.
4. Select a snapshot.
5. Click **Clone**.  
The **Clone Snapshot** window opens.
6. Specify a LUN name.
7. Optional: Select an iSCSI target.  
QTS hero will map the LUN copy to the target.
8. Click **OK**.

QTS hero clones the LUN and then displays a confirmation message.

### Cache Acceleration

Cache Acceleration enables you to create an SSD cache to improve the read and write performance of the NAS.



## Cache Acceleration Requirements

- The NAS model must support Cache Acceleration.  
For information about NAS and drive bay compatibility, see <https://www.qnap.com/solution/ssd-cache>
- The NAS must have one or more free SSDs installed in a compatible drive bay.
- The NAS must have a suitable amount of installed memory.  
The amount of memory required depends on the size of the SSD cache.


SSD Cache Size	Required Memory
512GB	≧ 1GB
1TB	≧ 4GB
2TB	≧ 8GB
4TB	≧ 16GB

## Creating the SSD Cache



### Note

ZFS ensure that files are sequentially written to the cache, so SSD over-provisioning is not required.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Cache Acceleration** .
2. Click  .  
The **SSD Cache Introduction** window opens.
3. Click **Start**.  
The **Create SSD Cache** window opens.
4. Select one or more SSDs.



**Warning**

All data on the selected disks will be deleted.

5. Select a cache type.

Cache Type	Description
Read Cache	When data is read from a LUN or shared folder, QuTS hero copies the data to the SSD cache to speed up future read requests.
Read Cache and Write Log	QuTS hero creates a read cache for accelerating read speeds, and also an SSD write log (ZFS intent log on SSDs). The SSD write log is not a true write cache, but it can help accelerate random write performance.

6. Click **Next**.
7. Select which shared folders and LUNs can use the SSD cache.



**Tip**

This list can be modified later.

8. Click **Next**.
9. Review the summary information.
10. Click **Create**.  
A confirmation message appears.
11. Select **I understand** and then click **OK**.

## Configuring SSD Cache Disks

For details on compatible SSDs, see [www.qnap.com/compatibility](http://www.qnap.com/compatibility).

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Cache Acceleration**.
2. Click **Manage**, and then select **Configure Cache Disks**.  
The **Configure Cache Disks** window opens.
3. Select the SSDs to be included in the cache.



**Important**

If the cache type is set to `Read Cache and Write Log`, you must select an even number of disks.



**Warning**

All data except for system partition data will be deleted.

4. Click **Apply**.  
A confirmation message appears.

QuTS hero uses the selected drives as an SSD cache. If no SSDs are selected, QuTS hero disables the SSD cache.

## Configuring Cached Storage

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Cache Acceleration**.

2. Click **Manage**, and then select **Configure Cached Storage**.
3. Select the shared folders and LUNs that are allowed to use the SSD cache.

**Important**

Shared folders and LUNs created in an all-SSD storage pool cannot use the SSD cache.

4. Click **Apply**.

## Removing the SSD Cache

**Warning**

Removing an SSD from the SSD cache while write caching is enabled may cause data loss.

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Cache Acceleration**.
2. Click **Manage** and then select **Remove**.  
A confirmation message appears.
3. Click **OK**.

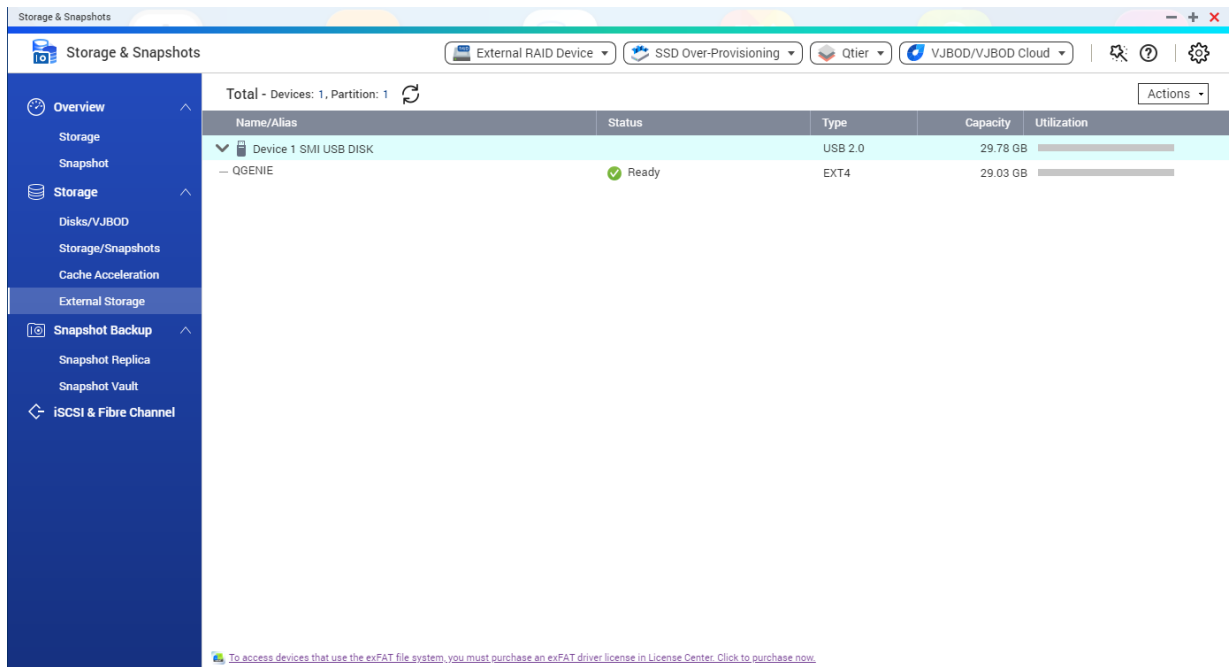
QTS hero flushes all data in the cache to disk, then deleted the RAID groups. This process may take a long time.

## External Storage

QTS hero supports external USB and eSATA storage devices, such as flash drives, portable hard drives, and storage enclosures. After connecting a USB or eSATA external storage device to the NAS, the device and all of its readable partitions will be displayed on this page. QTS hero will also create a shared folder for each readable partition on the device.

**Note**

To access partitions formatted using the exFAT file system, you must purchase an exFAT driver license in License Center.



### External Storage Device Actions

Action	Description
Erase	Delete all data and partitions on the device.
Eject	Safely unmount the external storage device from the NAS, so that you can disconnect it.

### External Storage Disk Actions

Action	Description
Full Disk Format	Format the disk. For details, see <a href="#">Formatting an External Storage Partition</a> .
Secure Erase	Permanently erase all data on a disk. For details, see <a href="#">Secure Erase</a> .



### External Storage Partition Actions

Action	Description
Storage Information	Displays details about the selected partition, including partition name, capacity, used space, and file system type.
Format	Formats the partition. For details, see <a href="#">Formatting an External Storage Partition</a> .
Encryption Management	Manages encryption on a previously encrypted device. You can lock or unlock the device, change the encryption password, or download the encryption key.

Action	Description
Eject	Unmounts the partition. The external storage device and any stored partitions will continue working.

## Formatting an External Storage Partition

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > External Storage** .
2. Select a storage partition.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Format**.  
The **Format Partition** window opens.
4. Select a file system.

File System	Recommended Operating Systems and Devices
NTFS	Windows
HTS+	macOS
FAT32	Windows, macOS, NAS devices, most cameras, mobile phones, video game consoles, tablets   <b>Important</b> The maximum file size is 4 GB.
exFAT	Windows, macOS, some cameras, mobile phones, video game consoles, tablets   <b>Important</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using exFAT on QuTS hero requires an exFAT driver license. You can purchase the license in License Center.</li> <li>• Verify that your device is compatible with exFAT before selecting this option.</li> </ul>
EXT3	Linux, NAS devices
EXT4	Linux, NAS devices

5. Specify a disk label.  
The label must consist of 1 to 16 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Special characters: Hyphen "-"
6. Optional: Enable encryption.
  - a. Select an encryption type.  
Select one of the following options:
    - AES 128 bits

- AES 192 bits
  - AES 256 bits
- b. Specify an encryption password.  
The password must consist of 8 to 16 characters from any of the following groups:
- Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - All special characters (excluding spaces)
- c. Confirm the encryption password.
- d. Optional: Select **Save encryption key**.  
Select this option to save a local copy of the encryption key on the NAS. This enables QuTS hero to automatically unlock and mount the encrypted volume when the NAS starts up. If the encryption key is not saved, you must specify the encryption password each time the NAS restarts.



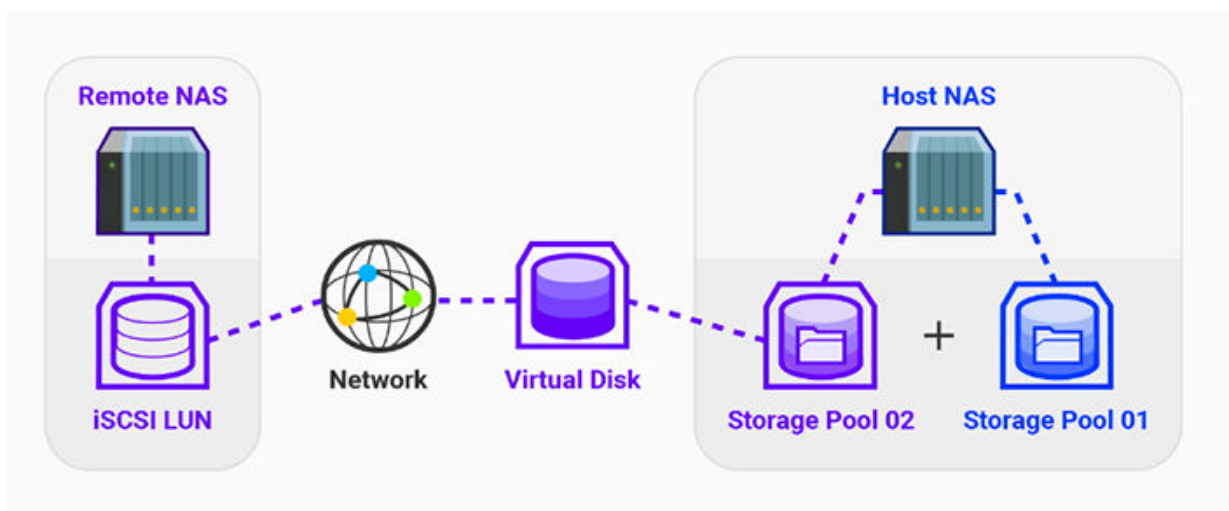
**Warning**

- Saving the encryption key on the NAS can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.
- If you forget the encryption password, the volume will become inaccessible and all data will be lost.

7. Click **Format**.  
A warning message appears.
8. Click **OK**.

**VJBOD (Virtual JBOD)**

VJBOD (Virtual JBOD) enables you to add storage space from other QNAP NAS devices to your NAS as local VJBOD disks, to create a virtual expansion enclosure. VJBOD disks can be used to create new local storage space, expanding local NAS storage capacity. VJBOD is based on iSCSI technology.



## VJBOD Requirements

Local NAS requirements:

- The NAS is running QTS 4.2.2 or later, or QuTS hero 4.5.0 or later.
- The NAS model supports VJBOD.  
For a list of supported series and models, see <https://www.qnap.com/solution/vjbod>.

Remote NAS requirements:

- The NAS is running QTS 4.2.1 or later, or QuTS hero.
- The NAS model supports iSCSI and storage pools.
- The NAS has a storage pool with at least 154 GB of free space, or an unused thick LUN with a capacity of 154 GB or more.



### Tip

For a stable VJBOD connection, ensure the following conditions:

- All NAS devices are on the same local network.
- All NAS devices are configured with static IP addresses.
- On a remote NAS, additional LUNs are not mapped to an iSCSI target that is being used by a VJBOD disk.

## VJBOD Limitations

- You can create a maximum of 8 VJBOD disks.
- You can only expand an existing storage pool using VJBOD disks if the pool consists of VJBOD disks from the same storage pool on the same remote NAS.
- VJBOD disks only support the RAID type Single.

## VJBOD Automatic Reconnection

If a remote NAS gets disconnected, QuTS hero automatically tries to reconnect to the NAS and recover the VJBOD disk every 30 seconds.



### Important

- To allow automatic reconnection, all NAS devices should be configured with static IP addresses.
- The following things may prevent VJBOD connection or reconnection:
  - Use of dynamic IP addresses
  - Host IQN binding
  - Firewalls of IP blocks
  - Incorrect CHAP credentials

## VJBOD Creation



## Creating a VJBOD Disk from a New LUN

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Click **Create**, and then select **Create Virtual JBOD**.  
The **Create Virtual JBOD Disk Wizard** opens.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Specify the IP address or hostname of the remote NAS.



### Important

The remote NAS must have at least one storage pool containing at least 153 GB of free space.



### Tip

Click **Detect** to view the IP addresses of all QNAP NAS devices on the local network. Click **Local Host** to use the IP of the local NAS.

5. Specify the admin password of the remote NAS.
6. Optional: Specify the system administration port of the remote NAS.



### Tip

The default port is 8080, or 443 if HTTPS is enabled.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Optional: Select the local interface that will be used by VJBOD.
9. Optional: Select the remote interface that will be used by VJBOD.
10. Optional: Enable **iSER**.  
Enabling iSER increases data transfer speeds and reduces CPU and memory load.
  - a. Ensure that selected local and remote network adapters are iSER-compatible and have **iSER** listed under **Supported Protocols**.
  - b. Select **Use iSER when available**.

11. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Create a new iSCSI LUN on the remote NAS**.
13. Optional: Select **Host Binding**.  
When selected, only the local NAS will be able to access the VJBOD disk.



### Tip

Enable this option if the VJBOD disk will be used to store sensitive information.

14. Click **Next**.
15. Select a storage pool.
16. Click **Next**.
17. Specify the capacity of the VJBOD disk.



**Important**

The size of the VJBOD disk cannot be changed after creation.

18. Optional: Configure advanced settings.

Setting	Description
SSD cache	The SSD cache will be used to improve VJBOD disk access performance.

19. Click **Next**.

QuTS hero starts creating a dedicated iSCSI target on the remote NAS for the VJBOD disk.

20. Optional: Enable CHAP authentication.

An initiator must authenticate with the target using the specified username and password. This provides security, as iSCSI initiators do not require a NAS username or password.

- Username
  - Length: 1 to 128 characters
  - Valid Characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z
- Password
  - Length: 12 to 16 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z

21. Optional: Enable CRC checksums.

Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.

Checksum Type	Description
Data Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.
Header Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.


22. Click **Next**.

23. Review the summary, and then click **Next**.

QuTS hero creates the iSCSI target and LUN on the remote NAS, and then creates a VJBOD disk using the LUN. The disk appears at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .

24. Select a follow-up action.

Action	Description
Create New Storage Pool	Creates a storage pool using the VJBOD disk

Action	Description
Do nothing	<p>Ends the creation process. You can configure the VJBOD disk later.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To create a storage pool on a VJBOD disk later, go through the normal steps of creating a storage pool. Then on the disk selection screen, under <b>Enclosure Unit</b> select <code>Virtual JBOD</code>.</p>

25. Click **Finish**.

### Creating a VJBOD Disk from an Existing LUN

1. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
2. Click **Create**, and then select **Create Virtual JBOD**.  
The **Create Virtual JBOD Disk Wizard** opens.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Specify the IP address or hostname of the remote NAS.



**Tip**

Click **Detect** to view the IP addresses of all QNAP NAS devices on the local network. Click **Local Host** to use the IP of the local NAS.

5. Specify the admin password of the remote NAS.
6. Optional: Specify the system administration port of the remote NAS.



**Tip**

The default port is 8080, or 443 if HTTPS is enabled.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Optional: Select the local interface that will be used by VJBOD.
9. Optional: Select the remote interface that will be used by VJBOD.
10. Optional: Enable iSER.  
Enabling iSER increases data transfer speeds and reduces CPU and memory load.
  - a. Ensure that selected local and remote network adapters are iSER-compatible and have `iSER` listed under **Supported Protocols**.
  - b. Select **Use iSER when available**.
11. Click **Next**.
12. Select **Choose an existing iSCSI LUN on the selected NAS**.
13. Click **Next**.
14. Select a LUN.



**Important**

The LUN must be thick and block-based, and must have a capacity of at least 154 GB. Mutual CHAP must be disabled.

15. Click **Next**.

16. Optional: Enable CHAP authentication.

An initiator must authenticate with the target using the specified username and password. This provides security, as iSCSI initiators do not require a NAS username or password.

- Username
  - Length: 1 to 128 characters
  - Valid Characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z
- Password
  - Length: 12 to 16 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z

17. Optional: Enable CRC checksums.

Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.


Checksum Type	Description
Data Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.
Header Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.

18. Click **Next**.

19. Review the summary, and then click **Next**.

QuTS hero creates a VJBOD disk using the LUN. The disk appears at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .

20. Select a follow-up action.

Action	Description
Create New Storage Pool	Creates a storage pool using the VJBOD disk
Recover Existing Data	Restores a storage pool that was previously created on the VJBOD disk
Do nothing	Ends the creation process. You can configure the VJBOD disk later. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b> To create a storage pool on a VJBOD disk later, go through the normal steps of creating a storage pool. Then on the disk selection screen, under <b>Enclosure Unit</b> select <code>Virtual JBOD</code>.</p> </div>

21. Click **Finish**.

## VJBOD Management

### Virtual JBOD Overview

To view an overview of all VJBOD disks including information on their source remote NAS devices, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** , click **VJBOD** , and then select **VJBOD Overview**.

Disk Name	Status	Total Size	Local Storage Pool	Local Volume/LUN	Remote NAS	Remote Storage Pool	Remote Disk Configuration	Remote LUN Name	Connection Type
VJBOD 1	Ready	154.00 GB	--	--	TW-TEST3 (172.17.48.52)	Warning Storage Pool 1 (4.88 GB Unallocated)	RAID Group 1 RAID 0 2 Disk(s)	RemoteVJBOD1_0 (E...)	TCP
Target IQN: iqn.2004-04.com.qnap:ts-v77:tw-test1 (Connected)									
VJBOD 2	Ready	154.00 GB	Ready Storage Pool 1 144.50 GB	--	TW-TEST3 (172.17.48.52)	Warning Storage Pool 1 (4.88 GB Unallocated)	RAID Group 1 RAID 0 2 Disk(s)	RemoteVJBOD3_0 (E...)	TCP
Target IQN: iqn.2004-04.com.qnap:ts-653b:local.remotevjbod3.off93e7 (Connected)									

### VJBOD Disk Actions

Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** , select a VJBOD disk, and then click **Action**.

Action	Disk Status	Description
NAS Detail	Any	Displays information about VJBOD disk's remote NAS
Remote Log	Any	Displays the event log on the VJBOD disk's remote NAS
Data Recovery	Free	Restores a storage pool that was previously created on the VJBOD disk
Edit Disk	Any	Edits the disk name, and configure whether this disk uses the SSD cache
Disconnect	Free	Disconnects the VJBOD from its remote NAS
Connect	Disconnected	Reconnects a disconnected VJBOD disk
Edit Target	Disconnected	Edits the following iSCSI target settings: port number, CHAP authentication, and CRC checksum settings
Detach	Data	Safely disconnects the VJBOD disk containing a storage pool. You can then connect the LUN to another NAS, create a new VJBOD disk, and recover the pool using <b>Action &gt; Data Recovery</b> .

Action	Disk Status	Description
Delete	Disconnected	Deletes a VJBOD from the local disk. The LUN and all data will remain on the remote NAS You can also choose to delete the iSCSI target and LUN on the remote NAS.

### Moving a VJBOD Disk to Another QNAP NAS

1. Note the details of the VJBOD disk's remote LUN.
  - a. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
  - b. Click **VJBOD**, and then select **VJBOD Overview**.  
The **VJBOD Overview** window opens.
  - c. Locate the VJBOD disk that you want to move, and then note the **Remote LUN Name** and the IP address under **Remote NAS**.
  
2. Detach the VJBOD disk's storage pool.
  - a. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Storage/Snapshots** .
  - b. Select the storage pool on the VJBOD disk.
  - c. Click **Manage**.  
The **Storage Pool Management** window opens.
  - d. Click **Action**, and then select **Safely Detach**.
  
3. Remove the VJBOD disk from the NAS.
  - a. Go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
  - b. Select the VJBOD disk.
  - c. Click **Action**, and then select **Disconnect**.  
The status of the VJBOD disk changes to *Disconnected*.
  - d. Click **Action**, and then select **Delete**.  
QuTS hero removes the VJBOD disk from the local NAS.
  
4. Add the VJBOD disk on another QNAP NAS.
  - a. On the other NAS, go to **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
  - b. Click **Create**, and then select **Create Virtual JBOD**.  
The **Create Virtual JBOD Disk Wizard** opens.
    - a. Click **Next**.
    - b. Specify the IP address or hostname of the remote NAS.
    - c. Specify the admin password of the remote NAS.
    - d. Optional: Specify the system administration port of the remote NAS.



**Tip**

The default port is 8080, or 443 if HTTPS is enabled.

- e. Click **Next**.
- f. Optional: Select the local interface that will be used by VJBOD.
- g. Optional: Select the remote interface that will be used by VJBOD.
- h. Optional: Select **Use iSER when available**.  
Enabling iSER increases data transfer speeds and reduces CPU and memory load.
- i. Click **Next**.
- j. Select **Choose an existing iSCSI LUN on the selected NAS**.
- k. Click **Next**.
- l. Select the LUN containing the VJBOD disk.
- m. Click **Next**.
- n. Optional: Enable CRC checksums.  
Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.

Checksum Type	Description
Data Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.
Header Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.

- o. Click **Next**.
- p. Review the summary, and then click **Next**.  
QuTS hero creates a VJBOD disk using the LUN. The disk appears at **Storage & Snapshots > Storage > Disks/VJBOD** .
- q. In the actions list, select **Recover Existing Data**.
- r. Click **Finish**.

QuTS hero scans for and restores any storage pools, shared folders, and LUNs on the VJBOD disk.



## 4. System Settings

### General Settings


Settings	Description
System Administration	This screen allows you to specify the server name and ports and configure secure connection settings.
Time	Time settings affect event logs and scheduled tasks. This screen allows you to specify the time zone and format and configure the system date and time.
Daylight Saving Time (DST)	Daylight saving time (DST) settings apply only to regions that use DST. This screen allows you to either automatically adjust the system clock or manually configure the settings.
Codepage	This screen allows you to select the language that the NAS uses to display file and directory information.
Region	This screen allows you to select a region for your NAS. System and application content and services are localized according to the selected region.
Login Screen	This screen allows you to customize the NAS login screen.

### Configuring System Administration Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > System Administration**.
2. Specify the following information.

Field	User Action
Server name	<p>Specify a name containing up to 14 characters from any of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> <li>• Dashes (-)</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The server name must contain one or more letters.</li> <li>• The server name cannot consist of numbers only.</li> <li>• The server name cannot start with a dash.</li> </ul>
System port	Specify the port used to access the web interface. The default port is 8080.
Enable HTTP compression	<p>Select this option to improve transfer speeds and bandwidth utilization. This setting is disabled by default.</p> <p> <b>Warning</b></p> <p>Enabling this option may lead to security risks.</p>



Field	User Action
Enable secure connection (HTTPS)	<p>Select this option to allow HTTPS connections.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Enable secure connection (HTTPS)</b>.</li> <li>Select a TLS version. The default TLS version is 1.2.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Warning</b> Selecting the latest TLS version may decrease compatibility for other clients in your system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify a port number.</li> <li>Optional: Select <b>Force secure connection (HTTPS) only</b> to require all users to connect to the NAS using only HTTPS.</li> </ol>
Do not allow QTS embedding in IFrames	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select this option to prevent websites from embedding QuTS hero using IFrames.</li> <li>Click <b>Allowed Websites</b> to allow a specific website to embed QuTS hero in IFrames.</li> <li>The <b>Allowed Websites</b> window appears.</li> <li>Optional: Click <b>Add</b> to add a website to the list.</li> <li>The <b>Add Host Name</b> window appears.</li> <li>Specify a host name.</li> <li>Click <b>Add</b>. The host name is added to the allowed websites list.</li> <li>Optional: Select a website, and then click <b>Delete</b> to delete a website from the list.</li> <li>Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>

3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Time Settings



### Important

You must configure the system time correctly to avoid the following issues.

- When using a web browser to connect to the NAS or save a file, the displayed time of the action is incorrect.
- Event logs do not reflect the exact time that events occurred.
- Scheduled tasks run at the wrong time.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > Time** .
2. Select a time zone.
3. Specify the date and time format.

4. Select the time setting.


Option	User Action
<b>Manual setting</b>	Specify the date and time.
<b>Synchronize with an Internet time server automatically</b>	Ensure that your NAS is connected to the Internet, and then specify the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Server:</b> Name of the Network Time Protocol (NTP) server Examples: time.nist.gov, time.windows.com</li> <li>• <b>Time interval:</b> Number of hours or days between each time synchronization task</li> </ul>
<b>Set the server time the same as your computer time</b>	Click <b>Update</b> .

5. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Daylight Saving Time

These settings are available for NAS users in regions that use Daylight Saving Time (DST). Users outside these regions can disregard these settings.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > Daylight Saving Time** .
2. Select **Adjust system clock automatically for daylight saving time**.
3. Optional: Select **Enable customized daylight saving time table**.
4. Optional: Perform any of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Add DST data	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Add Daylight Saving Time Data</b>. The <b>Add Daylight Saving Time Data</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Specify a time period and the number of minutes to offset.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>
Edit DST data	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select a DST schedule from the table.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Specify a time period and the number of minutes to offset.</li> <li>d. Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>
Delete DST data	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select a DST schedule from the table.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Delete</b>.</li> <li>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

5. Optional: Select a DST schedule from the table.

6. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Codepage Settings

All files and directories on the NAS use Unicode encoding. If your operating system or FTP client does not support Unicode, you must configure the following settings to properly view files and directories on the NAS.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > Codepage** .
2. Select the language of your operating system.
3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Region Settings



### Important

The NAS region settings affect device connectivity and the functionality, content, and validity of some applications, utilities, licenses, and certificates. Ensure that you select the correct region to avoid errors.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > Region** .
2. Select a region.

Region	Description
Global	Select this region if the NAS is located outside of China.
China	Select this region if the NAS is located in China.

3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring the Login Screen

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > General Settings > Login Screen** .
2. Configure the following settings.



Field	User Action
<b>Login screen template</b>	Select a template for the login screen.
<b>Show firmware version</b>	Select this option to display the QTS hero firmware version.
<b>Show the link bar</b>	Select this option to display links to myQNAPCloud, QNAP Utilities, and Feedback.
<b>Background</b>	Select a background image or fill color.
<b>Logo</b>	Select a logo.
<b>Message</b>	Specify a message that will appear on the login screen. You can enter a maximum of 120 ASCII characters. You can also select the font color and size.

3. Click **Preview** to view the changes.
4. Click **Apply**.

## Security

## Configuring the Allow/Deny List

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Allow/Deny List** .
2. Select an option.

Option	Description	User Action
Allow all connections	The NAS can connect to all IP addresses and network domains.	Select <b>Allow all connections</b> .
Use IP deny list	The NAS cannot connect to any IP address or network domains included the IP deny list.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select <b>Deny connections from the list</b>.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>. The IP configuration window appears.</li> <li>c. Specify an IP address, netmask, or IP range.</li> <li>d. Click <b>Create</b>.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Tip</b> To remove an IP address, netmask, or IP range, select an entry from the table, and then click <b>Remove</b>.</p>
Use IP allow list	The NAS can only connect to the IP addresses or network domains included on the IP allow list.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select <b>Allow connections from the list only</b>.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>. The IP configuration window appears.</li> <li>c. Specify an IP address, netmask, or IP range.</li> <li>d. Click <b>Create</b>.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Tip</b> To remove an IP address, netmask, or IP range, select an entry from the table, and then click <b>Remove</b>.</p>

3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring IP Access Protection

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > IP Access Protection** .
2. Select the connection methods you want to protect.

 **Note**  
**SSH, Telnet, and HTTP(S)** are enabled by default.

3. Optional: Specify the following information.

- Time period
- Maximum number of unsuccessful login attempts within the time period
- Amount of time the IP will be blocked

4. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Account Access Protection

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Account Access Protection** .
2. Specify the user type.
3. Select the connection methods you want to protect.
4. Optional: Specify the following information.
  - Time period
  - Maximum number of unsuccessful login attempts within the time period
5. Click **Apply**.

## Certificate & Private Key

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a protocol used for secure data transfers and encrypted communication between web servers and browsers. To avoid receiving alerts or error messages when accessing the web interface, upload an SSL certificate from a trusted provider.

### Replacing the SSL Certificate and Private Key




#### Warning

The NAS supports only X.509 PEM certificates and private keys. Uploading an invalid security certificate may prevent you from logging in to the NAS through SSL. To resolve the issue, you must restore the default security certificate and private key. For details, see [Restoring the Default SSL Certificate and Private Key](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Certificate & Private Key** .
2. Click **Replace Certificate**.  
The **Replace Certificate** window appears.
3. Select an option.

Option	Description
Import certificate	This option allows you to import an SSL certificate and private key from your computer.
Get from Let's Encrypt	This option uses the Let's Encrypt service to validate and issue a certificate for your specified domain.
Create self-signed certificate	This option allows you to create a self-signed certificate.

4. Click **Next**.  
A configuration window appears.
5. Perform any of the following actions.

Option	User Action
Import certificate	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Browse</b> to upload a valid certificate and private key.</li> <li>b. Optional: Click <b>Browse</b> to upload an intermediate certificate.</li> </ol>
Get from Let's Encrypt	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specify a domain name containing a maximum of 63 ASCII characters, without spaces.</li> <li>b. Specify a valid email address.</li> <li>c. Optional: Specify an alternative name.</li> </ol> <div style="border-left: 2px solid orange; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b> Use "," to separate multiple aliases. Example: 123.web.com, 789.web.com</p> </div>
Create self-signed certificate	<p>Configure the following information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Private key length</b></li> <li>• <b>Common name</b></li> <li>• <b>Email</b></li> <li>• <b>Country</b></li> <li>• <b>State/Province/Region</b></li> <li>• <b>City</b></li> <li>• <b>Organization</b></li> <li>• <b>Department</b></li> </ul>

6. Click **Apply**.

### Downloading the SSL Certificate and Private Key

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Certificate & Private Key** .
2. Click **Download Certificate**.  
A dialog box appears.
3. Select **Certificate, Private Key**, or both.
4. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero downloads the selected files to your computer.

### Restoring the Default SSL Certificate and Private Key

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Certificate & Private Key** .
2. Click **Restore to Default**.  
A confirmation message appears.
3. Click **OK**.

## Configuring the Password Policy



### Important

The following password policy is configured by default:

- English letters: No restrictions
- Digits: Enabled
- Minimum length: 8

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Security > Password Policy** .
2. Optional: Configure any of the following password criteria.

Criteria	Description
English letters	Passwords must contain at least one letter. Select <b>At least 1 uppercase and 1 lowercase</b> to require at least one uppercase and one lowercase letter.
Digits	Passwords must contain at least one number.
Special characters	Passwords must contain at least one special character.
Must not include characters repeated three or more times consecutively	Repeating characters are not allowed. For example, AAA.
Must not be the same as the associated username, or the username reversed.	The password must not be the same as the username or the reversed username. For example, username: <code>user1</code> and password: <code>1resu</code> .
Minimum length	The password length must be greater than or equal to the specified number. The maximum length of a password is 64 characters.

3. Optional: Require NAS users to periodically change their passwords.



### Important

Enabling this option disables **Disallow the user to change password** under user account settings.

- a. Select **Require users to change passwords periodically**.
  - b. Specify the maximum number of days that each user password is valid.
  - c. Optional: Select **Send a notification email to users a week in advance of their password expiring**.
4. Click **Apply**.

## Hardware

### Configuring General Hardware Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Hardware > General** .
2. Configure the following settings.

Settings	User Action
<b>Enable configuration reset switch</b>	Select this option to enable the reset button. For details on the reset button, see <a href="#">System Reset and Restore to Factory Default</a> .
<b>Enable disk standby mode</b>	Select this option to allow the NAS drives to enter standby mode if there is no disk access within the specified period. Disk status LED remains on during standby mode.
<b>Enable light signal alert</b>	Select this option to allow the status LED to flash when free space on the NAS is less than the set value.
<b>Enable Redundant Power Supply Mode</b>	Select this option to enable the redundant power supply.
<b>Run user-defined processes during startup</b>	Select this option to run user-defined processes during startup.

3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Audio Alert Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Hardware > Audio Alert**.
2. Configure any of the following settings.

Setting	Description
<b>System operations</b>	Select this option to trigger an audio alert every time the NAS starts, shuts down, or upgrades firmware.
<b>System events</b>	Select this option to trigger an audio alert when errors or warnings occur.

3. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring Smart Fan Settings


1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Hardware > Smart Fan**.
2. Select fan rotation speed settings.



### Note

Some NAS models allow users to separately adjust system and CPU smart fans.



Setting	User Action
<b>Automatically adjust fan speed (recommended)</b>	<p>Select from the two automatic fan speed adjustment options.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. QTS hero monitors the temperatures of the system, disks, and CPU and automatically adjusts the fan speed.</li> <li>b. QTS hero adjusts the fan speed according to user-specified temperatures.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Note</b> Modes are only available for system fans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Quiet mode:</b> Fans run on low speed to decrease noise.</li> <li>• <b>Normal mode:</b> Fans run on normal speed. This is the default setting.</li> <li>• <b>Performance mode:</b> Fans run on high speed to lower the system temperature. This mode is suitable for high loading systems.</li> </ul>
<b>Manually set fan speed</b>	Move the slider to set the fan speed.

3. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Expansion Cards Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Hardware > Expansion Cards** .  
QTS hero lists the available expansion cards.
2. Identify the expansion cards you want to configure.
3. Under **Resource Use**, select an OS or an application.



**Note**  
Some functions are only applicable for certain models and expansion cards.

OS or Application	Description
QTS hero	<p>QTS hero applications share expansion card resources for transcoding.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Hardware Transcoding</b> to allow QTS hero software to use expansion card resources to speed up transcoding tasks. Only one card can be assigned to hardware transcoding.</li> <li>• Select <b>Output</b> to use expansion card resources for video output of HD Station or Linux Station. Only one card can be assigned to output.</li> </ul>
Virtualization Station	Virtualization Station has exclusive use of all expansion card resources.
Container Station	Container Station has exclusive use of all expansion card resources.

4. Click **Apply**.

## Power

You can configure Wake-on-LAN (WOL), select a NAS behavior after power outage, and specify power schedules.

### Wake-on-LAN (WOL)

You can power on the NAS remotely using the Wake-on-LAN (WOL) protocol in Qfinder. This feature is enabled by default.



#### Important

If the power cable is disconnected when the NAS is powered off, WOL will not work until the NAS has been manually powered on.

### Enabling or Disabling Wake-on-LAN (WOL)

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Power > Wake-on-LAN (WOL)** .
2. Select **Enable** or **Disable**.
3. Click **Apply**.

### Power Recovery

This feature allows you to configure the power on and off status of the NAS after a power outage.

### Configuring the Power Recovery Settings



1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Power > Power Recovery** .
2. Select a power recovery setting.
  - Restore the previous NAS power state.
  - Turn on the NAS automatically.
  - Keep the NAS turned off.
3. Click **Apply**.

### Power Schedule

This feature allows you to schedule automatic system power on, power off, and restarts at specified times.

### Configuring the Power Schedule

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Power > Power Schedule** .
2. Select **Enable schedule**.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Add a scheduled action.	 <p><b>Note</b> One schedule is shown by default.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>b. Select the following.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Action</b>: Select whether you want to shut down, restart, or turn on the NAS.</li> <li>• <b>Schedule Type</b>: Select the frequency of the action.</li> <li>• <b>Hour and Minute</b>: Select the time of day to perform the action.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Remove a scheduled action.	<p>Click <b>Remove</b>.</p>  <p><b>Note</b> Schedules are removed starting from the bottom.</p>

4. Optional: Select **Postpone scheduled restart/shutdown when a replication job is in progress**.
5. Click **Apply**.

## Firmware Update

QNAP recommends keeping your QTS hero version up to date. This ensures that your NAS can benefit from new features, enhancements, and bug fixes.

### Checking for Live Updates

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Firmware Update > Live Update**.
2. Click **Check for Update**.  
QTS hero checks for available firmware updates. You can choose to update QTS hero if there is an available update.
3. Optional: Select **Auto Update**.  
The **Auto Update Settings** window appears.
4. Enable **Auto Update**.
5. Specify the auto update frequency.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Optional: Select one or more of the following options.
  - Automatically check if a newer version is available when logging into the NAS web administration interface.
  - Join the QTS hero Beta program to receive beta update notifications.



**Note**

Joining the QTS hero Beta program allows you to use the latest QTS hero features and applications before they are officially released.

8. Click **Apply**.

## Updating the Firmware Manually



### Important

- QNAP recommends backing up all data on the NAS before updating QuTS hero.
- The update may require several minutes or longer, depending on your hardware configuration and network connection. Do not power off the NAS during the update.

1. Download the NAS firmware.
  - a. Go to <http://www.qnap.com/download>.
  - b. Select the number of drive bays on your NAS model.
  - c. Select your NAS model.
  - d. Read the release notes and confirm the following:
    - The NAS model matches the firmware version.
    - Updating the firmware is necessary.
  - e. Ensure that the product model and firmware version are correct.
  - f. Download the firmware package.
  - g. Extract the firmware image file.
2. Go to **Control Panel > System > Firmware Update > Firmware Update** .
3. Click **Browse** and then select the extracted firmware image file.
4. Click **Update System**.

## Updating the Firmware Using Qfinder Pro



### Important

- QNAP recommends backing up all data on the NAS before updating QuTS hero.
- The update may require several minutes or longer, depending on your hardware configuration and network connection. Do not power off the NAS during the update.

1. Download the NAS firmware.
  - a. Go to <http://www.qnap.com/download>.
  - b. Select the number of drive bays on your NAS model.
  - c. Select your NAS model.
  - d. Read the release notes and confirm the following:
    - The NAS model matches the firmware version.
    - Updating the firmware is necessary.

- e. Ensure that the product model and firmware version are correct.
  - f. Download the firmware package.
  - g. Extract the firmware image file.
2. Open Qfinder Pro.  
Qfinder Pro displays a list of NAS devices on your network.
  3. Select a NAS model from the device list.
  4. Go to **Tools > Update Firmware** .



**Tip**

You can also right-click the NAS model on the list and then select **Update Firmware**.

The **Firmware Update** window appears.

5. Specify your QuTS hero username and password.  
To update the firmware, you must be the administrator of the selected NAS.  
Qfinder Pro displays the **Update Firmware** screen.
6. Click **Browse** and then select a firmware image file.
7. Perform one of the following actions:

Action	Steps
Update a single NAS device	Select the NAS that you want to update.
Update multiple NAS devices of the same model	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select a NAS model from the list.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Update all the devices with the same model number within the network</b>.</li> <li>c. Select the NAS devices that you want to update.</li> </ol>

8. Click **Start**.

## Backup/Restore

QuTS hero provides system backup and restore features to help protect your data in the event of data loss or system failure.

### Backing Up System Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Backup/Restore > Backup/Restore Settings** .
2. Click **Backup**.

QuTS hero exports the system settings as a BIN file and downloads the file to your computer.

### Restoring System Settings



**Warning**

If the selected backup file contains user or user group information that already exists on the NAS, QuTS hero will overwrite the duplicate information.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > Backup/Restore > Backup/Restore Settings** .

2. Click **Browse**.
3. Select a valid BIN file that contains the QTS hero system settings.
4. Click **Restore**.


## System Reset and Restore to Factory Default


QTS hero provides several options for resetting or restoring the NAS to its default state.



**Important**

QNAP recommends backing up your data before performing this task.

Option	Description	Steps
Basic system reset	<p>This resets the following settings to the default values without deleting the user data stored on the disks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrator password: MAC address of adapter 1 without special characters (all letters must be uppercase). For example, if the MAC address of adapter 1 is 11:22:33:AA:BB:CC, then the default admin password will be 112233AABBCC.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can find the MAC address of adapter 1 using Qfinder Pro. It is also printed on a sticker on the device as "MAC1".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TCP/IP configuration:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Obtain IP address settings automatically via DHCP</li> <li>• Disable jumbo frames</li> </ul> </li> <li>• System port: 8080 (system service port)</li> <li>• Security level: Low (Allow all connections)</li> <li>• LCD panel password: (blank)</li> <li>• VLAN: Disabled</li> <li>• Service binding: All NAS services can run on all available network interfaces.</li> </ul>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Power on the NAS.</li> <li>2. Press and hold the reset button for 3 seconds.</li> </ol>

Option	Description	Steps
Advanced system reset	<p>This performs a basic system reset and then restores the QuTS hero default settings, deleting all users, user groups, and shared folders previously created. The user data stored on the disks is retained.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> To retrieve old data after an advanced system reset, re-create the previous folder structure on the NAS.</p>	<p>Perform an advanced system reset using one of the following methods.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Using QuTS hero:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Backup/Restore &gt; Restore to Factory Default</b> .</li> <li>b. Click <b>Reset Settings</b>.</li> <li>c. Choose to restart or shut down the NAS after the system is reset.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol> </li> <li>• Using the reset button:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Power on the NAS.</li> <li>b. Press and hold the reset button for 10 seconds.</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
Reinitialize the NAS	This deletes all data on the disks and reinstalls QuTS hero.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Backup/Restore &gt; Restore to Factory Default</b> .</li> <li>2. Click <b>Reinitialize NAS</b>.</li> <li>3. Choose to restart or shut down the NAS after the NAS is reinitialized.</li> <li>4. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

## External Device

### USB Printer

The NAS supports using and sharing up to three network printers on your network in Windows, macOS, and Linux (Ubuntu) environments.

### Configuring USB Printer Settings

Ensure that the printers are connected to the NAS via USB before performing this task.




**Warning**

Restarting the NAS or updating QuTS hero while print jobs are still in progress cancels all the queued print jobs.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > External Device > USB Printer** .  
QuTS hero displays the detected USB printers on your network.
2. Select a USB printer and then perform one or more of the following tasks.

Task	Action
------	--------

View printer information	Click <b>Printer Info</b> . This displays the details of the selected printer.
View printer log	Click <b>Printer Log</b> . This displays the current and completed print jobs on the selected printer.   <b>Tip</b> You can stop, resume, or cancel ongoing or pending print jobs. You can also delete completed or pending print jobs. Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the history.
Clean up spool space	Click <b>Clean Up Spool Space</b> . This deletes the data stored in the printer spool.
Configure printer settings	Click <b>Settings</b> . This enables you to configure the following settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stop printer sharing and clear print spool:</b> Select this option to disable printing and delete all stored data on the selected printer.</li> <li>• <b>Bonjour printer support:</b> Select this option to introduce the printing service to the macOS users on your network.</li> </ul>

3. Click **Enable USB printer**.
4. Optional: Specify the maximum number of print jobs allowed on each printer.  
One printer can support processing up to 1000 print jobs. The oldest print jobs are automatically overwritten if the printer reaches the maximum number of print jobs.
5. Click **Apply**.

### Creating a USB Printer Access List

You can create an access list to allow or deny user access to USB printers.

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > External Device > USB Printer** .  
QTuS hero displays the detected USB printers on your network.
2. Click **Enable USB printer**.
3. Specify access rights.
  - a. Beside **Access right**, select **Allow printing** or **Deny printing**.
  - b. Specify the IP addresses or domain names that you want to allow or deny.



**Tip**

You can specify multiple IP addresses or domain names and separate them using commas. You can also use wildcard characters (such as an asterisk or a question mark) in an IP address or a domain name.

4. Click **Apply**.



## Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

The NAS supports connecting to uninterruptible power supply (UPS) devices to protect the NAS from abnormal system shutdowns caused by power disruptions.

### NAS Behavior During a Power Outage



The following table describes the possible scenarios during a power outage and the corresponding NAS behavior.

Phase	Scenario	NAS Behavior
Phase 1: From the start of the power outage until the end of the specified waiting time	The power outage occurs.	The NAS detects the remaining UPS power.
	The UPS power is greater than 15%.	Depending on your UPS settings, the NAS powers off or switches to auto-protection mode after the specified waiting time elapses.
	The UPS power is less than 15%.	After 30 seconds, the NAS automatically powers off or switches to auto-protection mode regardless of the specified waiting time.
	The power is restored.	The NAS remains functional.
Phase 2: From the end of the specified waiting time until the UPS runs out of power	The power is not restored, and the NAS is in auto-protection mode.	The NAS stops all running services. All shared folders and iSCSI LUNs become inaccessible.
	The power is not restored, and the NAS is powered off.	The NAS remains powered off.
	The power is restored, and the NAS is in auto-protection mode.	The NAS restarts and resumes its previous state.
	The power is restored, and the NAS is powered off.	The NAS remains powered off.
Phase 3: From the moment the UPS runs out power until the power is restored	The power is not restored, and the NAS is in auto-protection mode.	The NAS powers off.
	The power is not restored, and the NAS is powered off.	The NAS remains powered off.
	The power is restored.	The NAS applies the specified power recovery settings.

### Configuring the UPS Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > System > External Device > UPS** .
2. Select one of the following options and configure the settings.

Mode	Steps
USB connection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Connect the UPS to the NAS using a USB cable.</li> <li>b. Select <b>USB connection</b>.</li> <li>c. Choose one of the following options.</li> </ol>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power off the server after the power fails for a specified time period</li> <li>• Allow the NAS to enter auto-protection mode after the power fails for a specified time period</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b> In auto-protection mode, the NAS stops all services and unmounts all volumes to protect your data. After the power is restored, the NAS restarts and resumes normal operation.</p> <p>d. (Optional) Select <b>Enable network UPS master</b> and then specify the IP addresses to which QuTS hero sends notifications in the event of power failure.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> This option can only be selected when the UPS is connected to the NAS via USB.</p>
SNMP connection	<p>a. Connect the UPS to the same network as the NAS.</p> <p>b. Select <b>SNMP connection</b>.</p> <p>c. Specify the IP address of the UPS.</p> <p>d. Choose one of the following options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power off the server after the power fails for a specified time period</li> <li>• Allow the NAS to enter auto-protection mode after the power fails for a specified time period</li> </ul>
Network UPS slave	<p>a. Connect the UPS to the same network as the NAS.</p> <p>b. Select <b>Network UPS slave</b>.</p> <p>c. Specify the IP address of the UPS server.</p> <p>d. Choose one of the following options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power off the server after the power fails for a specified time period</li> <li>• Allow the NAS to enter auto-protection mode after the power fails for a specified time period</li> </ul>

3. Click **Apply**.

## System Status

You can check the status of your NAS in **Control Panel > System > System Status** .



Section	Description
<b>System Information</b>	This screen displays basic system information, such as model name, CPU, memory, firmware version, and system up time.
<b>Network Status</b>	This screen displays the current network settings of each network interface.
<b>System Service</b>	This screen displays the current status of system services, such as antivirus, domain controllers, multimedia management, and VPN servers.
<b>Hardware Information</b>	This screen displays NAS hardware information, such as CPU usage, memory, disk temperature, and system fan speed.

## System Logs

You can view and manage system logs in **Control Panel > System > System Logs** .

### System Event Logs

QuTS hero keeps a maximum of 10,000 event log entries, including warnings, errors, and information messages. You can perform the following actions for System Event Logs.


Action	Steps
Display a certain event type	Select an event type from the drop-down list.
Perform a basic search	Specify keywords in the search box.
Perform an advanced search	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  beside the search box.</li> <li>2. Specify the detailed information.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol>
Delete a log entry	Right-click a log entry and then select <b>Delete this record</b> .
Copy one or more log entries	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select one or multiple log entries.</li> <li>2. Right-click the selected log entries.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Copy</b>.</li> </ol> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip</b>                      You can press Ctrl or Shift to select multiple log entries.                 </div>
Delete all event log entries	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Clear All</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Export system event logs	Click <b>Save</b> . QuTS hero exports system event logs as a CSV file and downloads the file to your computer.

### System Connection Logs

QuTS hero can log the following events for connection sessions.

Protocol	Events
HTTP/HTTPS, FTP, Telnet, SMB, iSCSI, RADIUS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Logging on and off</li> <li>Accessing, creating, deleting, moving, and renaming files and folders</li> </ul>
AFP and SSH	Logging on and off

You can perform the following actions for System Connection Logs.

Action	Steps
Start logging connection sessions	Click <b>Start Logging</b> .
Configure log settings	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Options</b>.</li> <li>Select which connection types to log.</li> <li>(Optional) Choose to archive the connection logs to a specified location when the number of log entries reaches 10,000.</li> <li>Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>
Display a certain event type	Select an event type from the drop-down list.
Perform a basic search	Specify keywords in the search box.
Perform an advanced search	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click  beside the search box.</li> <li>Specify the detailed information.</li> <li>Click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol>
Delete a log entry	Right-click a connection log entry and then select <b>Delete this record</b> .
Block a connection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Right-click a connection log entry.</li> <li>Hover the mouse pointer over <b>Add to the block list</b>.</li> <li>Select a time period for which the connection will be blocked.</li> </ol>
Delete all connection log entries	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Clear All</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Export system event logs	Click <b>Save</b> . QTS hero exports and downloads the system connection logs as a CSV file.

## Online Users

This section shows the users that are currently connected to the NAS via various network services. You can perform the following actions.

Action	Step
Disconnect a connection	Right-click a user connection and select <b>Disconnect this connection</b> .

Action	Step
Block a connection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Right-click a user connection and select <b>Add to the block list</b>.</li> <li>2. Specify how long the connection should be blocked.</li> </ol>
Disconnect and block a connection	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Right-click a user connection and select <b>Disconnect this connection and block the IP</b>.</li> <li>2. Specify how long the connection should be blocked.</li> </ol>
Perform a basic search	Specify keywords in the search box.
Perform an advanced search	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <input type="checkbox"/> beside the search box.</li> <li>2. Specify the detailed information.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Search</b>.</li> </ol>

## Syslog Client Management

Syslog is a standard for forwarding log messages on a network. You must enable this service to store event and connection logs on a remote syslog server. You can select the types of logs to record.

When connection logs are converted to a CSV file, connection types and actions are encoded in numbers.

### Connection Type Codes

Code	Connection Type
0	UNKNOWN
1	SAMBA
2	FTP
3	HTTP
4	NFS
5	AFP
6	TELNET
7	SSH
8	ISCSI

### Action Codes



Code	Action
0	UNKNOWN
1	DEL
2	READ
3	WRITE
4	OPEN
5	MKDIR
6	NFSMOUNT_SUCC
7	NFSMOUNT_FAIL


Code	Action
8	RENAME
9	LOGIN_FAIL
10	LOGIN_SUCC
11	LOGOUT
12	NFSUMOUNT
13	COPY
14	MOVE
15	ADD
16	AUTH_FAIL
17	AUTH_OK
18	TRASH_RECOVERY
19	ADD_TRANSCODE
20	DEL_TRANSCODE
21	UPDATE_TRANSCODE
22	WATERMARK
23	ROTATE
24	ADD_THUMBNAIL
25	ADD_FILING
26	UPDATE_FILING
27	DELETE_FILING
28	PAUSE_FLING
29	STOP_FILING
30	EJECT

## Resource Monitor

You can monitor the status of your NAS in **Control Panel > System > Resource Monitor** .

Resource Monitor displays information and statistics about hardware usage and system resources.

Section	Description
<b>Overview</b>	This screen provides a general summary of CPU usage, memory usage, network usage, and ongoing processes on the NAS.
<b>System Resource</b>	<p>This screen uses line charts to display CPU usage, memory usage, network usage, and graphics card usage (if supported and installed) over time. You can hover the mouse pointer over a line chart to view the hardware usage at a specific point in time.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #FFC000; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b></p> <p>You can click <b>More</b> (  ) and then select <b>Settings</b> to specify the time interval on the line charts.</p> </div>

Section	Description
<b>Storage Resource</b>	<p>This screen uses line charts to display the activities of volumes, LUNs, storage pools, RAID groups, and disks on the NAS over time. This screen also summarizes the storage usage of each volume. You can hover the mouse pointer over a line chart to view the storage activity at a specific point in time.</p>
<b>Processes</b>	<p>This screen displays all ongoing background processes and provides information about each process, such as its current status, CPU usage, and memory usage.</p> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">  </div> <p><b>Tip</b>            You can enable <b>Group by Applications</b> to group related processes together (for example, all the processes related to an application or a system feature).</p>

## 5. Privilege Settings

Go to **Control Panel > Privilege** to configure privilege settings, disk quotas, and domain security on the NAS.


### Users

#### Default User Accounts



User Account	Description
admin	This account can configure settings, create users, and install applications. You cannot delete this account.

#### Creating a Local User

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Create a User** .  
The **Create a User** window appears.
3. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Profile photo</b>	Optional: Upload a profile photo for the user.
<b>User Description (optional)</b>	Specify a user description that contains a maximum of 50 characters.
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username that contains 1 to 32 characters from any of the following groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> <li>• Multi-byte characters: Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Russian</li> <li>• Special characters: . - _ ~ ! @ # \$ % ^ &amp; ( ) { }</li> </ul>
<b>Password</b>	Specify a password that contains a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.
<b>Phone number (optional)</b>	Specify a phone number that will receive SMS notifications from QuTS hero. For details, see <a href="#">SMS Notifications</a> . <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Note</b> Other NAS users might be able to see this information. If you do not want to share this information, leave the field blank.</p> </div>



Field	Description
<b>Email (optional)</b>	<p>Specify an email address that will receive notifications from QTS hero. For details, see <a href="#">Email Notifications</a>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Other NAS users might be able to see this information. If you do not want to share this information, leave the field blank.</p>
<b>Send a notification mail to the newly created user (optional)</b>	<p>When selected, QTS hero sends a message that contains the following information to the specified email address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Username and password</li> <li>• URLs for connecting to the NAS</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> Users have the option to edit the notification message. To edit the notification message, follow these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Edit Message</b>. The <b>Edit Message</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Specify a subject and message.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>d. Optional: To use the default message, click <b>Restore to Defaults</b>.</li> </ol>

4. Optional: Add the user to one or more user groups.
  - a. Under **User Group**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select one or more user groups.
5. Optional: Specify shared folder permissions for the user.
  - a. Under **Shared Folder Permission**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select the shared folder permissions for the user.  
For details, see [Conflicts in Shared Folder Permissions](#).
  - c. Optional: Select **Apply changes to subfolders**.
6. Optional: Specify application privileges for the user.
  - a. Under **Edit Application Privilege**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select application permissions for the user.



**Tip**

QNAP recommends denying access to applications and network services that the user does not require.

By default, administrator accounts have access to all applications.

7. Optional: Set a quota for the user.



**Note**

This option is only available when quotas are enabled.  
For details, see [Enabling Quotas](#).

- a. Under **Quota**, click **Edit**.
- b. Set the quota.
  - **No Limit:** Quota settings do not apply to the user.
  - **Limit disk space to:** Specify a quota for the user.
  - **Use group quotas:** Group quota settings apply to the user.



**Important**

Individual quotas may override group quotas.  
For details, see [Quota Conflicts](#).

8. Click **Create**.

### Creating Multiple Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Create Multiple Users** .  
The **Multiple Users Creation Wizard** appears.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>User Name Prefix</b>	<p>Specify a username that contains a maximum of 23 ASCII characters and that does not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contain a space</li> <li>• Begin with the following characters: - # @</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: @ " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ' `</li> </ul> <p>This prefix will be included before all usernames. Example: <code>test</code></p>
<b>User Name Start No</b>	<p>Specify a start number with a maximum of 8 digits. Example: 1</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> QTS hero removes leading zeros in starting numbers. For example, 001 becomes 1.</p> </div>
<b>Number of Users</b>	<p>Specify the number of users (1–4095). Example: 5</p>
<b>Password</b>	<p>Specify a password that contains a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.</p>



**Note**

The username format is [username prefix][user number]. The specified start number and number of users determine the user number. Using the examples, the users created will have the following usernames: test1, test2, test3, test4, and test5.

5. Click **Next**.  
QuTS hero creates the user accounts and adds them to the displayed user list.
6. Click **Finish**.

## User Account Lists

The NAS supports importing user accounts from TXT, CSV, and BIN files. The files contain user account information including usernames, passwords, user groups, and quota settings.

File Format	Description
TXT	Create user account lists using a text editor. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a TXT User File</a> .
CSV	Create user account lists using a spreadsheet editor. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a CSV User File</a> .
BIN	QNAP NAS devices can export user account information, including quota settings, to BIN files. For details, see <a href="#">Exporting Users</a> .

### Creating a TXT User File

1. Create a new file in a text editor.
2. Specify user information in the following format.  
Username,Password,Quota (MB),Group Name



#### Important

- Separate values using commas.
- Specify a quota between 100 MB and 2048 GB (2048000 MB).



#### Note

The system only accepts quotas in MB. GB values must be expressed in MB.

- Specify information for only one user on each line.

Example:

```
John,s8fk4b,100,Sales
Jane,9fjwbx,150,Marketing
Mary,f9xn3ns,390,RD
```

3. Save the list as a TXT file.



#### Important

If the list contains multi-byte characters, save the file with UTF-8 encoding.

### Creating a CSV User File

1. Create a new workbook in a spreadsheet editor.
2. Specify user information in the following format.

- column A: Username
- column B: Password
- column C: Quota (MB)
- column D: Group name



**Important**

- Specify a quota between 100 MB and 2048 GB (2048000 MB).



**Note**

The system only accepts quotas in MB. GB values must be expressed in MB.

- Specify information for only one user in each row.  
Example:

	A	B	C	D
1	John	s8fk4b	100	Sales
2	Jane	9fjwbx	150	Marketing
3	Mary	f9xn3ns	390	R&D

3. Save the workbook as a CSV file.



**Important**

If the list contains multi-byte characters, open the file using a text editor and then save with UTF-8 encoding.

## Importing Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Import/Export Users** .  
The **Import/Export Users** window appears.
3. Select **Import user and user group settings**.
4. Optional: Select any of the following options.

Field	Description
<b>Send a notification mail to the newly created user</b>	<p>When selected, QuTS hero sends a message that contains the following information to the specified email address of the user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Username and password</li> <li>• URLs for connecting to the NAS</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b> To send email notifications, ensure that you have configured an SMTP server. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring an Email Notification Server</a>.</p>
<b>Overwrite duplicate users</b>	<p>When selected, QuTS hero overwrites existing user accounts that have duplicates on the imported user account list.</p>

- Click **Browse**, and then select the file that contains the user account list.




**Important**

Ensure that you are importing a valid QTS hero user account list file to avoid parsing errors.

For details, see [User Account Lists](#).

- Click **Next**.

File Type	User Action
TXT or CSV	The <b>Import User Preview</b> screen appears. Check the status of the user account list.   <b>Important</b> The <b>Status</b> indicates whether any information is invalid. If any information is invalid, the user account list will not be imported successfully.
BIN	The following screen describes the <b>Overwrite duplicate users</b> feature.

- Click **Next**.  
QTS hero imports the user account list.

- Click **Finish**.

## Exporting Users

- Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
- Click **Create > Import/Export Users** .  
The **Import/Export Users** window appears.
- Select **Export user and user group settings**.
- Click **Next**.  
QTS hero exports the user account list to your computer as a BIN file.











**Tip**

You can use this file to import users to another NAS running QTS hero.

## Modifying User Account Information

- Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
- Locate a user.
- Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Change password	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Change Password</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Specify a password that contains a maximum of 64 ASCII characters.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Verify the password.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p>
Edit account profile	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Account Profile</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the settings. The <b>Edit Account Profile</b> window provides the following settings not included in the <b>Create a User</b> window:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Description (optional):</b> Specify a user description that contains a maximum of 50 characters.</li> <li>• <b>Disallow the user to change password:</b> When selected, QuTS hero prevents the user from changing the password.</li> <li>• <b>Disable this account:</b> Select this option to disable the user account. You can either select to disable the account <b>Now</b> or specify an <b>Expiry Date</b>.</li> </ul> <p><b>c.</b> Modify the quota for the user.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> This option is only available when quotas are enabled. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling Quotas</a>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No Limit:</b> Quota settings do not apply to the user.</li> <li>• <b>Limit disk space to:</b> Specify a quota for the user.</li> <li>• <b>Use group quotas:</b> Group quota settings apply to the user.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b> Individual quotas may override group quotas. For details, see <a href="#">Quota Conflicts</a>.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Edit user group membership	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit User's Groups</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select or deselect user groups. For details, see <a href="#">User Groups</a>.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p>

Task	User Action
Edit shared folder permissions	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Shared Folder Permission</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user's permissions for each shared folder. For details, see <a href="#">Shared Folder Permissions</a>.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Optional: Select <b>Apply changes to subfolders</b>.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p>
Edit application privileges	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Application Privileges</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select the applications that the user is allowed to access.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> QNAP recommends denying access to applications and network services that the user does not require. By default, administrator accounts have access to all applications.</p>

## Deleting Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
2. Select the users to delete.



### Note

Default user accounts cannot be deleted.

3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.
4. Optional: Select **Also delete the selected user(s)' home folders and data**.
5. Click **Yes**.

## Home Folders

Enabling home folders creates a personal folder for each local and domain user on the NAS. When a home folder is created, the user's home folder appears as a shared folder called `home`. Users can access their home folder through Microsoft networking, FTP, and File Station.

All user home folders are located in the `homes` shared folder. By default, only the administrator can access this folder. If home folders are disabled, home folders become inaccessible to users. However, the folders and files they contain are not deleted from the NAS. The administrator can still access the `homes` folder and each user's home folder.

## Enabling Home Folders

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Users** .
2. Click **Home Folder**.

The **Home Folder** window appears.

3. Select **Enable home folder for all users**.
4. Select a storage pool.  
Home folders are stored on the selected storage pool.
5. Click **Apply**.

## User Groups

A user group is a collection of users with the same access rights to files or folders. Administrators can create user groups to manage folder permissions for multiple users.

### Default User Groups

User Group	Description
administrators	Users in this group can configure settings, create users, and install applications. You cannot delete this group.
everyone	Users in this group can only view and modify files. This group contains all local user accounts and can be used to grant shared folder permissions to all local user accounts. You cannot delete this group.

### Creating a User Group

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > User Groups** .
2. Click **Create**.  
The **Create a User Group** window appears.
3. Specify the **User group name**.  
The user group name can contain 1 to 128 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Multi-byte characters: Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Russian
  - Dashes (-)
4. Optional: Specify a description that contains a maximum of 128 characters.
5. Optional: Add users to the user group.
  - a. Under **Assign users to this group**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select one or more users.
6. Optional: Specify shared folder permissions for the user group.
  - a. Under **Edit shared folder permissions**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select the permissions for each shared folder.  
For details, see [Conflicts in Shared Folder Permissions](#).
7. Optional: Set a quota for the user group.





**Note**

This option is only available when quotas are enabled.  
For details, see [Enabling Quotas](#).

- a. Under **Quota**, click **Edit**.
- b. Set the quota.
  - **No Limit:** Quota settings do not apply to the user group.
  - **Limit disk space to:** Specify a quota for the user group.



**Important**

Individual quotas may override group quotas.  
For details, see [Quota Conflicts](#).







8. Click **Create**.  
A dialog box appears.
9. Choose whether group quotas will be applied to users in the group.

Option	Description
<b>Yes</b>	Applies group quota settings to each user in the group.
<b>No</b>	Retains individual quota settings for users in the group.

For details on group quota settings, see [Quota Conflicts](#).

## Modifying User Group Information

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > User Groups** .
2. Locate a user group.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Edit user group details	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>View Group Details</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Modify the description.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Modify the quota.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot modify the quota in the default user group.</li> <li>This option is only available when quotas are enabled. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling Quotas</a>.</li> <li><b>No Limit:</b> Quota settings do not apply to the user group.</li> <li><b>Limit disk space to:</b> Specify a quota for the user group.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b> Individual quotas may override group quotas. For details, see <a href="#">Quota Conflicts</a>.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Edit user group members	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit User Group</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select or deselect users.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p>
Edit shared folder permissions	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Shared Folder Permissions</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user group's permissions for each shared folder. For details, see <a href="#">Shared Folder Permissions</a>.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Apply</b>.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> Group-level permissions may override user-level permissions. For details, see <a href="#">Conflicts in Shared Folder Permissions</a>.</p>

## Deleting User Groups

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > User Groups** .
2. Select the user groups to delete.



**Note**

Default user groups cannot be deleted.

3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.

4. Click **OK**.

## Shared Folders

Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders** to configure settings and permissions for shared folders.

### Default Shared Folders

QTS hero automatically creates the following shared folders to help you organize data on your NAS.



#### Important

Default shared folders cannot be deleted and certain properties cannot be changed.

Folder	Description
Download	This is the default folder for Download Station and is the default path when downloading content in QTS hero. You can assign a different path for downloads in Download Station.
Multimedia	This is the default folder for multimedia apps and stores multimedia content such as photos, videos, and music. You can manage this folder in the Multimedia Console utility in <b>Control Panel &gt; Applications</b> .
Public	This folder can be used by any user account. By default, the shared folder permission for this folder is set to Read Only. For details, see <a href="#">Shared Folder Permissions</a> .
Web	This folder stores content from the Web Server utility, which you can manage in <b>Control Panel &gt; Applications</b> .

### Restoring Default Shared Folders

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Click **Restore Default Shared Folders**.  
A warning message appears.
3. Click **OK**.


QTS hero restores the default shared folders.

### Creating a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Click **Create**, and then select **Shared Folder**.  
The **Create Shared Folder Wizard** opens.
3. Specify the following information:

Field	Description
<b>Folder Name</b>	Specify a folder name that contains 1 to 64 characters and that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin or end with a space</li> <li>• Contain consecutive spaces</li> <li>• End with "."</li> <li>• Begin with "_sn_" or "_sn_bk"</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ` ' .</li> </ul>
<b>Comment (optional)</b>	Specify a comment that contains 1 to 128 ASCII characters. The information is for your reference and is not used by QuTS hero.
<b>Storage Pool</b>	Specify the storage pool where the shared folder will be created.
<b>Space Allocation</b>	Select one of the following space allocation options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Thick provisioning</b></li> <li>• <b>Thin provisioning</b></li> </ul>
<b>Allocate folder quota</b>	Specify the maximum size of the shared folder.

4. Configure storage settings.

Field	Description
<b>Data reduction</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Compression</b></li> <li>• <b>Deduplication</b></li> </ul>
<b>Performance</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SSD cache</b></li> </ul> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-left: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      You must create and enable SSD cache to select this option                 </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Fast clone:</b> This option allows you do copy data faster within individual shared folders and LUNs.</li> </ul>
<b>Synchronous I/O</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b></li> <li>• <b>All</b></li> <li>• <b>None</b></li> </ul>
<b>Performance profile (block size)</b>	Select the block size for I/O acceleration.

5. Optional: Configure user access permissions.



- a. Under **Configure access privileges for users**, click **Edit**.
- b. Specify the access permissions for users.  
For details, see [Shared Folder Permissions](#).

6. Optional: Enable folder encryption.

- a. Under **Folder Encryption**, click **Edit**.
- b. Select **Encryption**.

Folder encryption protects folder content against unauthorized data access when the drives are physically stolen.

c. Specify the following information.

Field/Option	Description
<b>Input Password</b>	Specify a password that contains 8 to 32 characters except the following: " \$ : = \ This field does not support multibyte characters.
<b>Verify Password</b>	The password must match the previously specified password.
<b>Save encryption key</b>	<p>When enabled, QTS hero automatically unlocks the shared folder after the NAS restarts. When disabled, the administrator must unlock the folder after the NAS restarts. For details, see <a href="#">Unlocking a Shared Folder</a>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> QNAP strongly recommends exporting and saving the encryption key. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Encryption Settings</a>.</p> <p> <b>Warning</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saving the encryption key on the NAS can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.</li> <li>• If you forget the encryption password, the shared folder will become inaccessible and all data will be lost.</li> </ul>

7. Configure WORM settings.



**Note**

- When Write Once Read Many (WORM) is enabled, data stored in the shared folder cannot be modified or deleted.
- WORM cannot be disabled or modified after folder creation.

a. Under **WORM Settings**, click **Edit**.


b. Select **WORM**.

c. Select one of the following options:

- **Enterprise**: You can write data to the shared folder, but you cannot modify, delete, or restore data in it. You are allowed to remove the shared folder.
- **Compliance**: You can write data to the shared folder, but you cannot modify, delete, or restore data in it. You are not allowed to remove the shared folder. To delete data in the folder, you must remove the folder's parent storage pool.


d. Optional: Specify a data retention period.


8. Optional: Configure advanced settings.


Option	Description
<b>Guest Access Right</b>	Select the permission level assigned to users without a NAS account.
<b>Hide network drive</b>	Selecting this option hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Lock File (Oplocks)</b>	Opportunistic lock (Oplocks) is a Windows file locking mechanism that facilitates caching and access control to improve performance. This feature is enabled by default and should only be disabled in networks where multiple users simultaneously access the same files.
<b>SMB Encryption</b>	This option is available only when SMB3 is enabled. Selecting this option encrypts all Microsoft network communication using the SMB3 protocol.
<b>Enable Windows Previous Versions</b>	When enabled, the Previous Versions feature in Windows can be used with the shared folder.
<b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b>	Selecting this option creates a Recycle Bin for this shared folder.
<b>Restrict the access of Recycle Bin to administrators only for now</b>	<p>Selecting this option prevents non-administrator users from recovering or deleting files in the Recycle Bin.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Note</b> This option is available only when <b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b> is selected.</p> </div>
<b>Enable sync on this shared folder</b>	Selecting this option allows this shared folder to be used with Qsync. This option is only available if Qsync Central is installed on the NAS.
<b>Enable access-based share enumeration (ABSE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the shared folders that they have permission to mount and access. Guest account users must enter a username and password to view shared folders.
<b>Enable access-based enumeration (ABE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the files and folders that they have permission to access.

9. Click **Create**.

## Editing Shared Folder Properties

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Locate a shared folder.
3. Under **Action**, click  .  
The **Edit Properties** window appears.
4. Modify any of the following settings.

Option	Description
<b>Folder Name</b>	Specify a folder name that contains 1 to 64 characters and that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin or end with a space</li> <li>• Contain consecutive spaces</li> <li>• End with "."</li> <li>• Begin with "_sn_" or "_sn_bk"</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ' .</li> </ul>
<b>Comment (optional)</b>	Specify a comment that contains 1 to 128 ASCII characters. The information is for your reference and is not used by QuTS hero.
<b>Path</b>	Modify the folder path.
<b>Hide network drive</b>	Selecting this option hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Lock File (Oplocks)</b>	Opportunistic lock (Oplocks) is a Windows file locking mechanism that facilitates caching and access control to improve performance. This feature is enabled by default and should only be disabled in networks where multiple users simultaneously access the same files.
<b>SMB Encryption</b>	This option is available only when SMB3 is enabled. Selecting this option encrypts all Microsoft network communication using the SMB3 protocol.
<b>Enable Windows Previous Versions</b>	When enabled, the Previous Versions feature in Windows can be used with the shared folder.
<b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b>	Selecting this option creates a Recycle Bin for this shared folder.
<b>Restrict the access of Recycle Bin to administrators only for now</b>	Selecting this option prevents non-administrator users from recovering or deleting files in the Recycle Bin. <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Note</b> This option is available only when <b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b> is selected.</p> </div>
<b>Enable write-only access on FTP connection</b>	When enabled, only the admin has read and write access to the shared folder. Other users will only be able to write to the folder.
<b>Only allows applications to access files using the long file name format</b>	When selected, applications can only use the long file name (LFN) format to access files in the shared folder.
<b>Enable sync on this shared folder</b>	Selecting this option allows this shared folder to be used with Qsync. This option is only available if Qsync Central is installed on the NAS.
<b>Only allows applications to access files using the long file name format</b>	When selected, applications can only use the long file name (LFN) format to access files in the shared folder.
<b>Enable sync on this shared folder</b>	Selecting this option allows this shared folder to be used with Qsync. This option is only available if Qsync Central is installed on the NAS.
<b>Enable access-based share enumeration (ABSE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the shared folders that they have permission to mount and access. Guest account users must enter a username and password to view shared folders.
<b>Enable access-based enumeration (ABE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the files and folders that they have permission to access.

Option	Description
<p><b>Set this folder as the Time Machine backup folder (macOS)</b></p>	<p>When enabled, the shared folder becomes the destination folder for Time Machine in macOS.</p> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If space in the folder is insufficient when starting a new Time Machine backup, QuTS hero automatically deletes the oldest Time Machine backup in the folder to free up space.</li> <li>• You should disable <b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b> when <b>Set this folder as the Time Machine backup folder (macOS)</b> is selected, to prevent automatically deleted Time Machine backups from filling the recycle bin.</li> </ul>

5. Click **OK**.

### Refreshing a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Locate a shared folder.
3. Under **Action**, click  .

### Removing Shared Folders

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Select the shared folders to remove.



**Note**

Default shared folders cannot be removed.

3. Click **Remove**.  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.

### ISO Shared Folders


Users can mount ISO image files on the NAS as ISO shared folders and access them without having to burn discs. By default, most NAS models support up to 256 ISO shared folders.

#### Mounting an ISO File as a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
2. Click **Create**, and then select **Create an ISO Share**.  
The **Create an ISO Share** window opens.
3. Select the source ISO image file to be mounted.
4. Click **Next**.



5. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Folder Name</b>	<p>Specify a folder name that contains 1 to 64 characters and that does not:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• End with a space</li> <li>• Contain consecutive spaces</li> <li>• End with "."</li> <li>• Begin with "_sn_" or "_sn_bk"</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ` ' "</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b> For ARM-based NAS models, ISO shared subfolder names do not support Cyrillic characters. If a subfolder name includes Cyrillic characters, it will not be displayed correctly on the NAS. Shared folders on macOS that include the character "#" in their names cannot be mounted.</p>
<b>Hidden Folder</b>	Selecting <b>Yes</b> hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a description that contains a maximum of 128 ASCII characters.

6. Click **Next**.

7. Configure user access permissions and guest access rights to the ISO shared folder.

Type	Option	Description	User Action
User access permissions	<b>Grant read-only access right for administrators only</b>	Selecting this option grants administrator accounts read-only access to the ISO shared folder.	<p>a. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>b. Review the settings.</p>
	<b>By User</b>	Selecting this option allows you to configure access permissions to the ISO shared folder at the user level.	<p>a. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>b. Configure the user account access rights for the ISO shared folder.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>d. Review the settings.</p>
	<b>By User Group</b>	Selecting this option allows you to configure access permissions to the ISO shared folder at the user group level.	<p>a. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>b. Configure the user group access rights for the ISO shared folder.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p>d. Review the settings.</p>

Type	Option	Description	User Action
Guest access rights	<b>Deny Access</b>	Selecting this option denies access to guest accounts.	N/A
	<b>Read only</b>	Selecting this option grants read-only access to guest accounts.	

For details, see [Shared Folder Permissions](#).

- Click **Next**.  
QTuS hero mounts the ISO file as a shared folder and then adds it to the **Shared Folder** screen.
- Click **Finish**.

### Shared Folder Permissions

Permission	Description
Read Only (RO)	The user or user group can read files in the shared folder, but not write them.
Read/Write (RW)	The user or user group can read and write files in the shared folder.
Deny	The user or user group cannot read or write files in the shared folder.





**Note**

You can configure shared folder permissions for users and user groups. For details, see the following topics:

- [Modifying User Account Information](#)
- [Modifying User Group Information](#)

### Editing Shared Folder Permissions

- Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .
- Locate a shared folder.
- Under **Action**, click  .  
The **Edit Shared Folder Permission** window appears.
- Click on any of the following tabs:
  - **Users and groups permission**
  - **NFS host access**
  - **Microsoft Networking host access**
- Perform any of the following tasks.

Permission Type	Description	User Action
<p><b>Users and groups permission</b></p>	<p>Edit user and user group permissions for shared folders that can be accessed through Windows, macOS, FTP, and File Station.</p>	<p><b>a.</b> Optional: Select <b>Individual Setting</b>. When selected, you can apply protocol-specific settings.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Specify permissions for each user and user group.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Optional: Add a user to the list of users with permissions for the shared folder.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1.</b> Click <b>Add</b>. The <b>Add Users</b> window appears.</li> <li><b>2.</b> Select the type of user or user group from the drop-down menu in the upper left.</li> <li><b>3.</b> Select one or more users or user groups.</li> <li><b>4.</b> Specify the permissions for the users you want to add.</li> <li><b>5.</b> Click <b>OK</b>. QTS hero adds the users and their corresponding permissions to the list.</li> </ol> <p><b>d.</b> Optional: Remove a user from the list of users with permissions for the shared folder.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1.</b> Locate the user you want to remove.</li> <li><b>2.</b> Click . QTS hero removes the user from the list.</li> </ol>
<p><b>NFS host access</b></p>	<p>Edit NFS host access rights for shared folders.</p>	<p><b>a.</b> Select <b>Access right</b> to enable NFS access rights.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Optional: Select any of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>sync</b> Select a sync option for this setting.</li> <li>• <b>secure</b></li> </ul> <p><b>c.</b> Under <b>Host / IP / Network</b>, enter an IP address or domain name.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Optional: Add an NFS host. Under <b>Allowed IP Address or Domain Name</b>, click <b>Add</b>. QTS hero adds an entry to the list.</p> <p><b>e.</b> Optional: Delete an NFS host.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1.</b> Select an NFS host from the list.</li> <li><b>2.</b> Click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>

Permission Type	Description	User Action
<b>Microsoft Networking host access</b>	Specify which computers can access shared folders through Microsoft Networking.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Add a Microsoft Networking host.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Add</b>. QuTS hero adds an entry to the list.</li> <li>2. Under <b>Host / IP / Network</b>, enter an IP address or domain name.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Optional: Delete a Microsoft Networking host.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select a Microsoft Networking host from the list.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>

6. Click **Apply**.

### Conflicts in Shared Folder Permissions

When a user is assigned different permissions for a shared folder, QuTS hero uses the following hierarchy to resolve conflicts.

1. No Access/Deny
2. Read/Write (RW)
3. Read Only (RO)

User Permission	User Group Permission	Actual Permission
No Access	No Access	No Access
Read Only		No Access
Read/Write		No Access
Not Specified		No Access
No Access	Read Only	No Access
Read Only		Read Only
Read/Write		Read/Write
Not Specified		Read Only
No Access	Read/Write	No Access
Read Only		Read/Write
Read/Write		Read/Write
Not Specified		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shared folders through Samba/AFP: Read/Write</li> <li>• Shared folders through NFS: Read Only</li> </ul>
No Access	Not Specified	Read/Write
Read Only		No Access
Read/Write		Read Only
Not Specified		Read/Write
No Access	Not Specified	No Access
Read Only		Read Only
Read/Write		Read/Write
Not Specified		No Access

## Folder Aggregation

Users can aggregate shared folders on a Windows network and link them to a portal folder accessible on the NAS. You can link up to 10 folders to a single portal folder.

Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation** to enable folder aggregation.



### Note

- Folder aggregation is supported in Samba networks only. QNAP recommends folder aggregation for a Windows Active Directory (AD) environment.
- If access permissions are assigned to portal folders, the NAS and remote servers must be joined to the same AD domain.

## Creating a Portal Folder



### Note

Ensure that folder aggregation is enabled before performing the following steps. For details, see [Folder Aggregation](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation** .
2. Under **Folder Aggregation List**, click **Create a Portal Folder**.  
The **Create a Portal Folder** window appears.
3. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Folder Name</b>	Specify a folder name that contains 1 to 64 characters and that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin or end with a space</li> <li>• Contain consecutive spaces</li> <li>• End with "."</li> <li>• Begin with "_sn_" or "_sn_bk"</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` `</li> </ul>
<b>Hidden Folder</b>	Selecting <b>Yes</b> hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Comment</b>	Specify a comment between 1 and 128 ASCII characters.
<b>Users must login before accessing the portal folder.</b>	When selected, users must log in to the NAS with their username and password before accessing the portal folder. This prevents guest accounts from accessing the portal folder and other user permission issues.

4. Click **Apply**.



## Modifying Portal Folder Information



### Note

Ensure that folder aggregation is enabled before performing the following steps. For details, see [Folder Aggregation](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation** .
2. Locate a portal folder.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Edit portal folder properties	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Action</b>, click  . The <b>Edit Portal Folder</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Edit the folder properties. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a Portal Folder</a>.</li> </ol>
Configure the remote folder link	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Action</b>, click  . The <b>Remote Folder Link</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Specify the <b>Name</b>, <b>Host Name</b>, and <b>Remote Shared Folder</b> for any remote folder link.</li> </ol>

4. Click **Apply**.

### Deleting Portal Folders



**Note**

Ensure that folder aggregation is enabled before performing the following steps. For details, see [Folder Aggregation](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation** .
2. Select the portal folders that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.

### Importing Folder Trees



**Note**

Ensure that folder aggregation is enabled before performing the following steps. For details, see [Folder Aggregation](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation** .
2. Click **Import/Export Folder Tree**.  
The **Import/Export Folder Tree** window appears.
3. Under **Import Folder Tree**, click **Browse**.
4. Select the file that contains the folder tree.



**Important**

Ensure that you are importing a valid QuTS hero folder tree file to avoid parsing errors.

5. Click **Import**.  
A warning message appears.

6. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero imports the folder tree.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Click **Finish**.

## Exporting Folder Trees



### Note

Ensure that folder aggregation is enabled before performing the following steps. For details, see [Folder Aggregation](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Folder Aggregation**.
2. Click **Import/Export Folder Tree**.  
The **Import/Export Folder Tree** window appears.
3. Under **Export Folder Tree**, click **Export**.  
QuTS hero exports the folder tree to your computer as a BIN file.



### Tip

You can use this file to import folder trees to another NAS running QuTS hero.


4. Click **Finish**.


## Shared Folder Encryption

Shared folders on the NAS can be encrypted with 256-bit AES encryption to protect data. Encrypted shared folders can be mounted with normal read/write permissions but can only be accessed using the authorized password. Encrypting shared folders protects sensitive data from unauthorized access if the drives are physically stolen.

You can only encrypt shared folders when creating them. For details, see [Creating a Shared Folder](#).

## Unlocking a Shared Folder

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder**.
2. Locate a locked shared folder.
3. Under **Action**, click .  
The **Unlock Folder** window appears.
4. Select one of the following options.

Option	User Action
<b>Input Encryption Password</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enter the encryption password.</li> <li>b. Optional: Select <b>Save encryption key</b>. When enabled, QuTS hero automatically unlocks the shared folder after the NAS restarts.</li> </ol> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      This option is selected by default.                 </div>

Option	User Action
Upload Encryption Key File	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Browse</b>.</li> <li>b. Select the encryption key file.</li> </ol>

5. Click **OK**.

### Configuring Encryption Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Shared Folder** .

2. Locate an encrypted shared folder.

3. Under **Action**, click  .  
The **Encryption Management** window appears.





**Note**

If the encrypted folder is locked, you must unlock it before configuring encryption settings. For details, see [Unlocking a Shared Folder](#).

4. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Download the encryption key file	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Go to <b>Download</b>.</li> <li>b. Enter the encryption password.</li> <li>c. Click <b>OK</b>. QTS hero exports the encryption key file to your computer as a TXT.</li> </ol>
Save the encryption key	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Go to <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Mount automatically on start up</b>. When enabled, QTS hero automatically unlocks the shared folder after the NAS restarts.</li> <li>c. Enter the encryption password.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>. QTS hero saves the encryption key.</li> </ol>



Task	User Action
Lock the shared folder	<p>a. Go to <b>Lock</b>.</p> <p>b. Optional: Select <b>Forget the saved key</b>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> When selected, users must unlock the folder after restarting the NAS. This setting is only available if <b>Save encryption key</b> was enabled when the folder was encrypted or <b>Mount automatically on start up</b> was enabled after the folder was encrypted.</p> <p>c. Click <b>OK</b>. QuTS hero locks the folder.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Locked folders do not appear in File Station. A folder will only reappear after it is unlocked.</li> <li>• Users cannot edit the properties or permissions of a locked shared folder.</li> </ul>

## Shared Folder Access

You can map or mount a NAS shared folder as a network drive, allowing you to easily access and manage files from your Windows, Mac, or Linux computer.

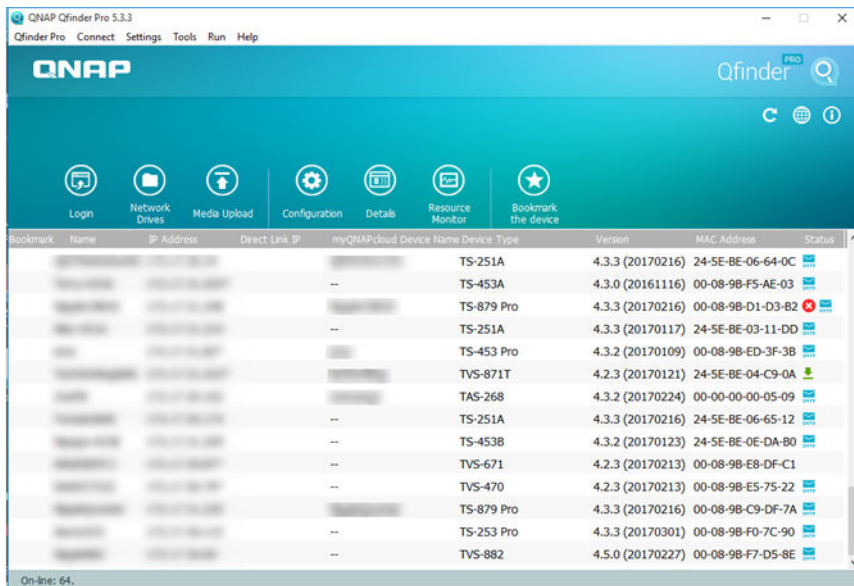
For Windows and Mac, you can use Qfinder Pro to map or mount your NAS shared folders. Qfinder Pro is a desktop utility that enables you to locate and access the QNAP NAS devices in your local area network.

To download Qfinder Pro, go to <https://www.qnap.com/utilities>.

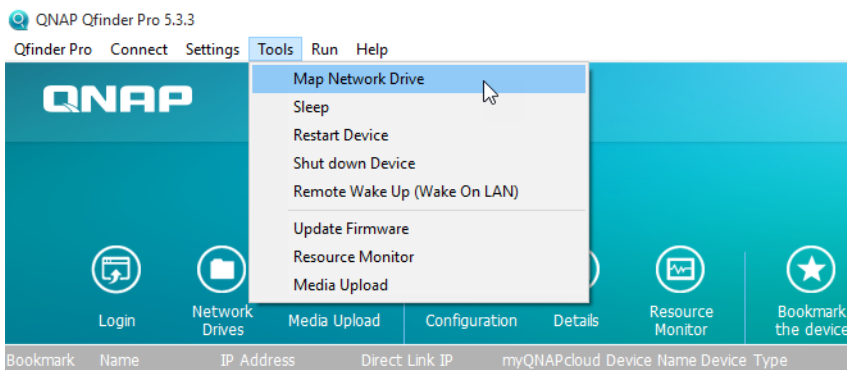
### Mapping a Shared Folder on a Windows Computer

Before mapping a shared folder, ensure that you have Qfinder Pro installed on your Windows computer.

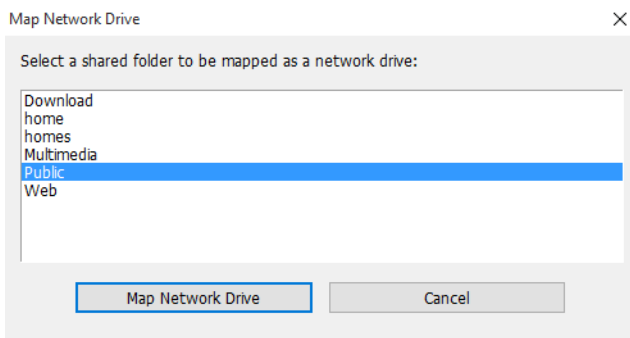
1. Power on the NAS.
2. Connect the NAS to your local area network.
3. Open **Qfinder Pro**.  
Qfinder Pro displays all QNAP NAS devices in your local area network.



4. Select the NAS where the shared folder is located.
5. Click **Tools > Map Network Drive**.

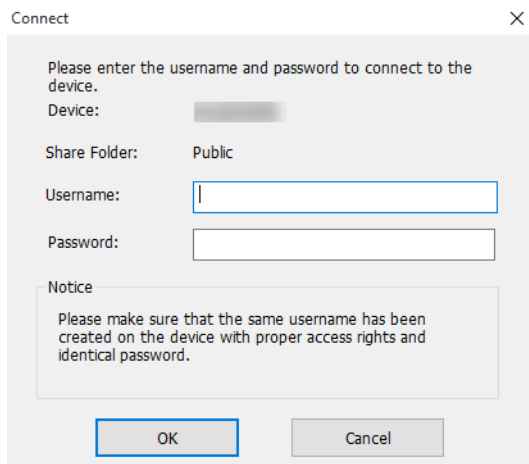


6. Select a shared folder.
7. Click **Map Network Drive**.

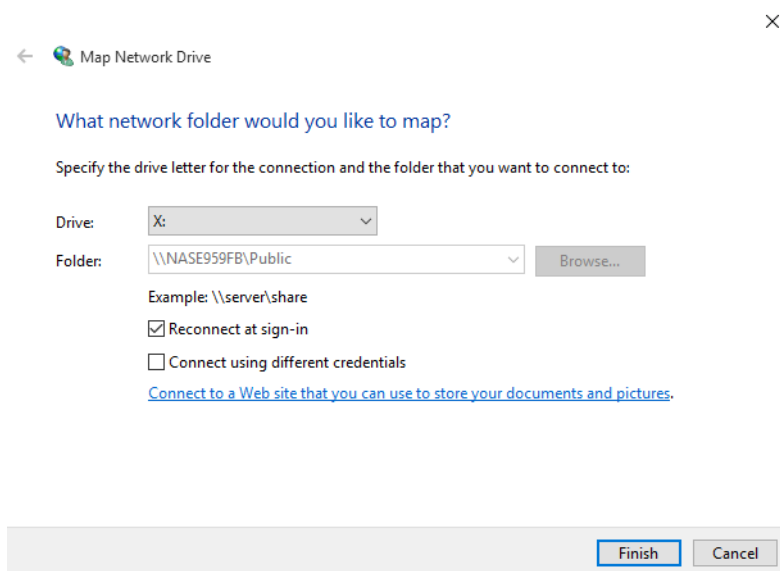


8. Specify your QuTS hero username and password.

9. Click **OK**.



10. Specify the following information.



Field	Description
<b>Drive</b>	Specify the drive letter for the shared folder.
<b>Folder</b>	This field is uneditable because you have already selected the shared folder. This is for your reference.
<b>Reconnect at sign-in</b>	When selected, the shared folder will automatically be connected the next time the user signs in.
<b>Connect using different credentials</b>	When selected, the user will have the option to sign into the NAS with a different account after mapping the shared folder.
<b>Connect to a Web site that you can use to store your documents and pictures.</b>	When clicked, the <b>Add Network Location Wizard</b> appears. You can use this wizard to create a shortcut to your mapped shared folder.

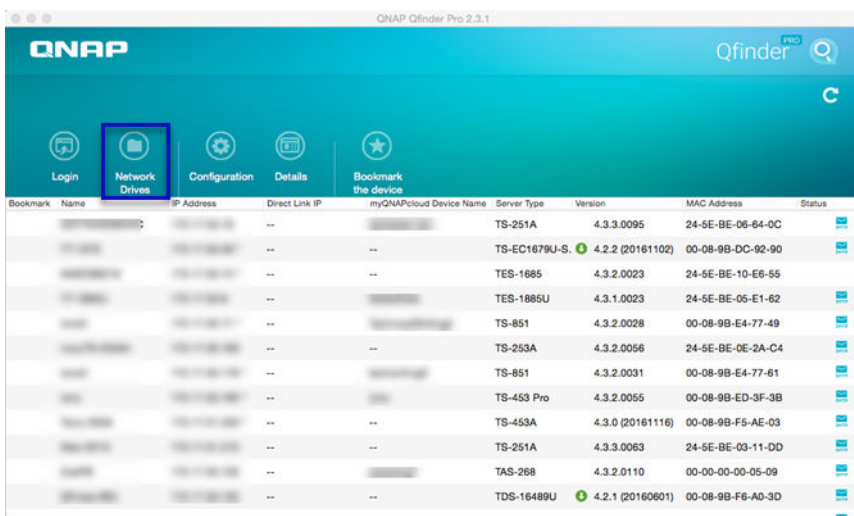
11. Click **Finish**.

The shared folder is mapped as a network drive and can be accessed using Windows Explorer.

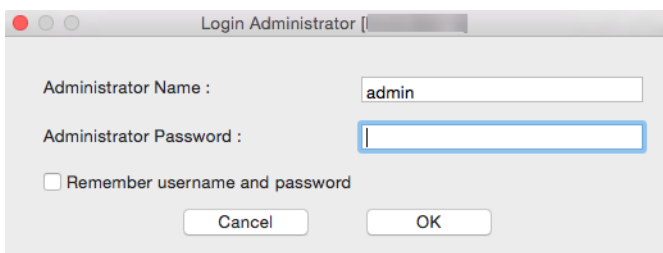
### Mounting a Shared Folder on a Mac Computer

Before mounting a shared folder, ensure that you have Qfinder Pro installed on your Mac computer.

1. Power on the NAS.
2. Connect the NAS to your local area network.
3. Open **Qfinder Pro**.  
Qfinder Pro displays all QNAP NAS devices in your local area network.
4. Select the NAS where the shared folder is located.
5. Click **Network Drives**.

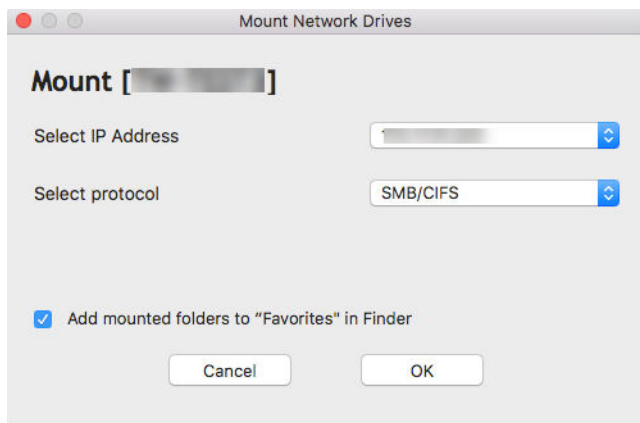


6. Specify your QuTS hero username and password.
7. Click **OK**.



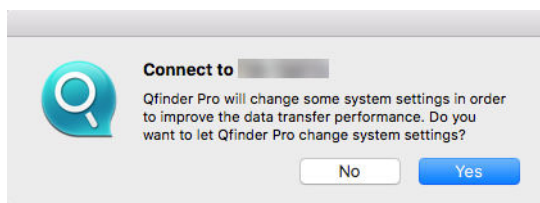
The **Mount Network Drives** window opens.

8. Select **Add mounted folders to "Favorites" in Finder**.
9. Click **OK**.

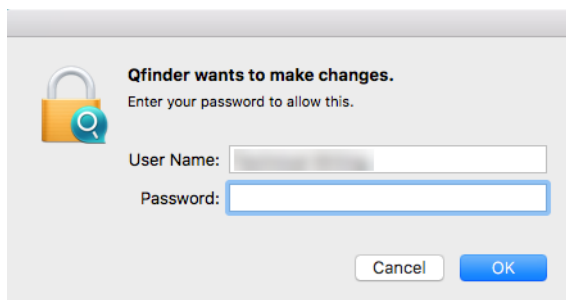


A confirmation message appears.

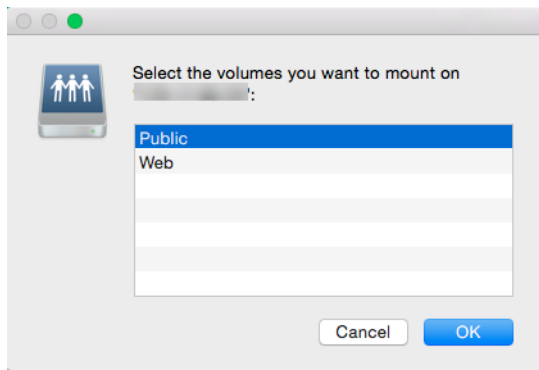
10. Click **Yes**.



11. Specify your Mac username and password.
12. Click **OK**.



13. Select the shared folder.
14. Click **OK**.



The shared folder is mounted as a network drive and can be accessed using Qfinder Pro.

### Mounting a Shared Folder on a Linux Computer

1. Open a terminal with root privileges.
2. Run the following command:

```
mount <NAS Ethernet Interface IP>:/share/<Shared Folder Name> <Directory to Mount>
```



**Tip**

If the NAS ethernet interface IP address is 192.168.0.42 and you want to connect to a shared folder "public" under the /mnt/pub directory, run the following command:

```
mount -t nfs 192.168.0.42:/share/public/mnt/pub
```

3. Specify your NAS username and password.

You can connect to the shared folder using the mounted directory.

### Quota

You can enable quotas (in MB or GB) for users and user groups to help manage storage space. When quotas are enabled, QuTS hero prevents users from saving data to the NAS after the quota is reached. By default, quotas are not enabled for users.

QuTS hero provides three types of quota settings.

Type	Description
Individual	Set quotas for individual users. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; Users</b> to edit user quotas. For details, see <a href="#">Modifying User Account Information</a> .
Group	Set quotas at the group level. Setting a group quota applies the quota to each user in the group. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; User Groups</b> to edit group quotas. For details, see <a href="#">Modifying User Group Information</a> .
All users	When enabled, the quota is applied to both new and existing users. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; Quota</b> to enable quotas. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling Quotas</a> .



**Note**

Quotas are applied per shared folder and are not shared across shared folders.



**Important**

Individual quotas may override group quotas.  
For details, see [Quota Conflicts](#).



**Tip**

You can export quota settings to a CSV file to use as a reference.  
For details, see [Exporting Quota Settings](#).

## Enabling Quotas

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Quota** .
2. Select **Enable quota for all users**.
3. Specify the all users quota.



**Note**

The all users quota must be between 100 MB and 2048 GB (2048000 MB).

4. Click **Apply**.  
QTuS hero displays the quota settings for Local Users.

## Editing Quota Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Quota** .
2. Select the type of user or group.
  - **Local Users**
  - **Domain Users**
  - **Local Groups**
  - **Domain Groups**



**Tip**

By default, the **Quota** screen displays Local Users.

3. Select a user or group.
4. Click **Edit**.  
The **Quota** window appears.
5. Set a quota for the user or group.
  - **No Limit:** Quota settings do not apply to the user or group.
  - **Limit disk space to:** Specify a quota for the user or group.
  - **Use group quotas:** Group quota settings apply to the user.



**Important**

Individual quotas may override group quotas.

For details, see [Quota Conflicts](#).

6. Click **OK**.

## Exporting Quota Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Quota**.
2. Click **Generate**.
3. Click **Download**.

QTuS hero exports the quota settings as a CSV file.

## Quota Conflicts

QTuS hero uses the following hierarchy to resolve quota conflicts.

1. Individual quota
2. Group quota
3. All users quota

The following table describes the possible scenarios for different combinations of user quotas and group quotas.

- The **User Quota** column shows the quota setting that is applied to the user individually.
- The **Group Quota** column shows whether the user belongs to any groups.
- The **Actual Quota** column shows the actual quota setting that is applied to the user.

User Quota	Group Quota	Actual Quota
No limit	Yes	No limit
	No	No limit
Individual	Yes	Individual quota
	No	Individual quota
Use group quotas	Yes	Group quota
	No	All users quota



### Note

If a user belongs to multiple groups with group quotas, the highest group quota applies to the user.

## Domain Security

The NAS supports user authentication through local access rights management, the Microsoft Active Directory (AD), and the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory.

Joining the NAS to an AD domain or an LDAP directory allows AD or LDAP users to access the NAS using their own accounts without having to configure user accounts on the NAS.



### Note



QTuS hero supports AD running on Windows Server 2003, 2008, 2008 R2, 2012, 2012 R2, and 2016.

Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Security** to configure domain security settings.

Option	Description
<b>No domain security (Local users only)</b>	Only local users can access the NAS.
<b>Active Directory authentication (Domain member)</b>	Users can join the NAS to an AD, allowing domain users to be authenticated by the NAS. Local and AD users can access the NAS using Samba, AFP, FTP, and File Station. For details, see <a href="#">Active Directory (AD) Authentication</a> .
<b>LDAP authentication</b>	Users can connect the NAS to an LDAP directory, allowing LDAP users to be authenticated by the NAS. Local and LDAP users can access the NAS using Samba, AFP, FTP, and File Station. For details, see <a href="#">LDAP Authentication</a> .
<b>Set this NAS as a domain controller</b>	Clicking this directs the user to the <b>Domain Controller</b> screen. For details, see <a href="#">Domain Controller</a> .

## Active Directory (AD) Authentication

Active Directory (AD) is a Microsoft directory service that stores information for users, user groups, and computers for authenticating and managing domain access. Windows environments use AD to store, share, and manage a network's information and resources.

When a NAS is joined to an AD domain, the NAS automatically imports all of the user accounts on the AD server. AD users can then use the same login details to access the NAS.

### Configuring AD Authentication Using the Quick Configuration Wizard

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Security** .
2. Select **Active Directory authentication (Domain member)**.
3. Click **Quick Configuration Wizard**.  
The **Active Directory Wizard** appears.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the AD DNS server.  
QTuS hero automatically generates the **NetBIOS domain name**.
6. Specify the IP address of the AD DNS server.
7. Optional: Select **Obtain DNS server address automatically by DHCP server**.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Select a domain controller.
10. Select the server signature rule for the domain.

Option	Description
<b>Auto</b>	SMB signing is offered but not enforced. Clients can choose whether to use SMB signing or not.

Option	Description
<b>Mandatory</b>	SMB signing is required.
<b>Disabled</b>	SMB signing is disabled for SMB 1. For SMB 2 and above, this option behaves the same as <b>Auto</b> .

11. Specify the domain administrator username and password.
12. Click **Join**.  
The NAS joins the domain.
13. Click **Finish**.

## Configuring AD Authentication Manually

Verify the following before starting this task:

- The time settings of the NAS and the AD server are identical. The maximum time disparity tolerated is 5 minutes.
- The AD server is configured as the primary DNS server. If you use an external DNS server, you will not be able to join the domain. For details, see [Network & Virtual Switch](#).
- You have specified the IP address of the WINS server that you use for name resolution. For details, see [Configuring Microsoft Networking](#).

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Security**.
2. Select **Active Directory authentication (Domain member)**.
3. Click **Manual Configuration**.  
The **Active Directory** window appears.
4. Specify the following information.
  - **Domain NetBIOS Name**
  - **AD Server Name**
  - **Domain**
  - **Domain Administrator Username**



### Note

The specified user must have administrator access rights to the AD domain.

- **Domain Administrator Password**
- **Organizational Unit (Optional)**
- **Server description (Optional)**



### Note

The NAS Samba service replicates this in the server's **Comment** field. This description appears when connecting to a NAS Samba shared folder using the command line interface.

5. Select the server signature rule for the domain.

Option	Description
<b>Auto</b>	SMB signing is offered but not enforced. Clients can choose whether to use SMB signing or not.
<b>Mandatory</b>	SMB signing is required.
<b>Disabled</b>	SMB signing is disabled for SMB 1. For SMB 2 and above, this option behaves the same as <b>Auto</b> .


6. Click **Join**.

### AD Server and Domain Names

After joining the NAS to the AD domain, you can use the following username formats to log in to the NAS and access shared folders:

- Local users: `NASname\NASusername`
- AD users: `Domain\DomainUsername`

The location of AD server and domain names depends on the version of Windows Server.

Windows Server Version	Location
2003	Go to <b>System Properties</b> in Windows. Example: If the computer name is "node1.qnap-test.com", the AD server name is "node1" and the domain name is "qnap-test.com".
2008	Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; System</b> in Windows. The AD server name will appear as the computer name, and the domain name can be found in the domain field.
2012, 2016	Right-click  , and then click <b>System</b> . The AD server name will appear as the computer name, and the domain name can be found in the domain field.

### Enabling Trusted Domain Authentication

A trusted domain is a domain that AD trusts to authenticate users. If you join the NAS to an AD domain, all users from trusted domains can log in and access shared folders.

Trusted domains are configured in AD. You can only enable trusted domains on the NAS. By default, this feature is disabled in QUTS hero.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Win/Mac/NFS > Microsoft Networking**.
2. Click **Advanced Options**.  
The **Advanced Options** window appears.
3. Select **Enable trusted domains**.



**Note**

This setting is only available if the NAS is joined to a domain.

4. Click **Apply**.  
The **Advanced Options** window closes.
5. Click **Apply**.

## LDAP Authentication

A Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory contains user and user group information stored on an LDAP server. Administrators can use LDAP to manage users in the LDAP directory and connect to multiple NAS devices with the same login details. This feature requires a running LDAP server and knowledge of Linux servers, LDAP servers, and Samba.

### Configuring LDAP Authentication

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Security** .
2. Select **LDAP authentication**.
3. Select the type of LDAP server.
4. Specify the following information.

LDAP Server Type	Fields	User Action
Remote LDAP server	LDAP Server Host	Specify the host name or IP address of the LDAP server.
	LDAP Security	Select the method that the NAS uses to communicate with the LDAP server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Idap://</b>: Use a standard LDAP connection. The default port is 389.</li> <li>• <b>Idap:// (Idap + TLS)</b>: Use an encrypted connection with TLS. The default port is 389. Newer versions of LDAP servers normally use this port.</li> <li>• <b>Idap:// (Idap + SSL)</b>: Use an encrypted connection with SSL. The default port is 686. Older versions of LDAP servers normally use this port.</li> </ul>
	Base DN	Specify the LDAP domain. Example: <code>dc=mydomain,dc=local</code>
	Root DN	Specify the LDAP root user. Example: <code>cn=admin, dc=mydomain,dc=local</code>
	Password	Specify the root user password.
	Users Base DN	Specify the Organizational unit (OU) where users are stored. Example: <code>ou=people,dc=mydomain,dc=local</code>
	Group Base DN	Specify the OU where groups are stored. Example: <code>ou=group,dc=mydomain,dc=local</code>
	Current Samba ID	N/A
LDAP server of the remote NAS	IP address or NAS name	Specify the server IP address or the name of the NAS.
	LDAP domain	Specify the LDAP domain name.
	Password	Specify the NAS administrator password.
LDAP server of the local NAS	N/A	N/A

LDAP Server Type	Fields	User Action
IBM Lotus Domino	This server type includes the same fields as <b>Remote LDAP server</b> , in addition to the following:	
	<b>uidNumber</b>	Specify the uid number. Select <b>HASH</b> .
	<b>gidNumber</b>	Specify the gid number. Select <b>HASH</b> .

- Click **Apply**.  
The **LDAP authentication options** window appears.
- Select which users are allowed to access the NAS.



**Note**  
**LDAP authentication options** vary depending on when Microsoft Networking is enabled. For details, see [LDAP Authentication Options](#).

- Click **Finish**.

### LDAP Authentication Options

The **LDAP authentication options** vary depending on when Microsoft Networking is enabled.

For details, see [Microsoft Networking](#).






Scenario	Options
Microsoft Networking is enabled before LDAP settings are applied.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Local users only:</b> Only local users can access the NAS using Microsoft Networking.</li> <li>• <b>LDAP users only:</b> Only LDAP users can access the NAS using Microsoft Networking.</li> </ul>
Microsoft Networking is enabled after the NAS is connected to the LDAP server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Standalone Server:</b> Only local users can access the NAS using Microsoft Networking.</li> <li>• <b>LDAP Domain Authentication:</b> Only LDAP users can access the NAS using Microsoft Networking.</li> </ul>

### AD and LDAP Management

The administrator can modify domain user accounts and user groups when the NAS joins an AD domain or connects to an LDAP server.


#### Managing AD and LDAP Users

- Go to **Privilege > Users** .
- Select **Domain Users**.  
QuTS hero displays the list of domain users.
- Locate a user.
- Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Edit an account profile	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Account Profile</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user quota.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> User quotas must be enabled for this option to appear. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling Quotas</a>.</p>
Edit shared folder permissions	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Shared Folder Permission</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user's permissions for each shared folder. For details, see <a href="#">Shared Folder Permissions</a>.</p>
Edit application privileges	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Application Privileges</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select the applications that the user is allowed to access.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> QNAP recommends denying access to applications and network services that the user does not require. By default, administrator accounts have access to all applications.</p>





**Tip**

Click  to display newly created users on the AD or LDAP server. Permission settings are automatically synchronized with the domain controller.

5. Click **Apply**.


### Managing AD and LDAP User Groups

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > User Groups** .
2. Select **Domain Groups**.  
QuTS hero displays the list of domain user groups.
3. Locate a user group.
4. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
View group details	<p>Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>View Group Details</b> window appears. QuTS hero displays the group name and group users.</p>
Edit shared folder permissions	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit Shared Folder Permission</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user group's permissions for each shared folder. For details, see <a href="#">Shared Folder Permissions</a>.</p>



**Tip**

Click  to display newly created groups on the AD or LDAP server. Permission settings are automatically synchronized with the domain controller.

5. Click **Apply**.

## Domain Controller

You can configure your QNAP NAS as a domain controller for Microsoft Windows environments. By configuring the NAS as a domain controller, you can store user account information, manage user authentication, and enforce security for a Windows domain.

### Enabling a Domain Controller



**Important**

When the NAS is configured as a domain controller, only domain users can access shared folders through CIFS/SMB (Microsoft Networking). All local NAS users are denied access.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller**.
2. Select **Enable Domain Controller**.



**Important**

The domain controller cannot be enabled if an LDAP server is already running on the NAS.

3. Select the domain controller mode.

Mode	Description
<b>Domain Controller</b>	Only a domain controller can create a domain. The first NAS that creates the domain must be a domain controller. In this mode, the NAS can create and authenticate users.
<b>Additional Domain Controller</b>	If more than one domain controller is needed, you can add additional domain controllers. When the NAS is set as an additional domain controller, it can create and authenticate users.
<b>Read-Only Domain Controller</b>	This configures the NAS as a read-only domain controller to accelerate the user authentication process for specified websites. Read-only domain controllers can authenticate users, but not create domain user accounts.

4. Specify the following information.

Domain Controller Mode	Field	Description
Domain Controller	Domain	Specify the domain.
	Administrator Password	Specify an administrator password between 8 and 127 characters that contains at least one of each of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uppercase characters (A through Z)</li> <li>• Lowercase characters (a through z)</li> <li>• Base 10 digits (0 through 9)</li> <li>• Nonalphanumeric characters: ~!@#\$%^&amp;* _-+=` \(){}[]:;'"&lt;&gt;.,?/</li> </ul>
	Verify Password	Verify the administrator password.
• Additional Domain Controller	Domain	Specify the domain.
	Domain DNS IP	Specify the domain DNS IP.
• Read-Only Domain Controller	Administrator Account	Specify the administrator account name.
	Administrator Password	Specify the administrator password.

5. Select the server signature rule for the domain.

Option	Description
Auto	SMB signing is offered but not enforced. Clients can choose whether to use SMB signing or not.
Mandatory	SMB signing is required.
Disabled	SMB signing is disabled for SMB 1. For SMB 2 and above, this option behaves the same as <b>Auto</b> .

6. Click **Apply**.

## Resetting a Domain Controller

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller** .
2. Click **Reset**.  
A dialog box appears.
3. Enter the administrator password.
4. Click **OK**.

## Default Domain User Accounts

Domain User Account	Description
Administrator	This account is used to configure settings, create users, and manage the domain. This account cannot be deleted.
Guest	Users without dedicated accounts can use this account to view and modify files.
krbtgt	This is the Key Distribution Center (KDC) service account. The KDC is a domain service that uses the Active Directory (AD) as the account database and the Global Catalog for directing referrals to KDCs in other domains.



## Creating a Domain User

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Create a User** .  
The **Create a User** wizard appears.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username between 1 and 20 characters that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin with a space</li> <li>• Begin with the following characters: - # @</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ` '</li> </ul>
<b>Password</b>	Specify a password between 8 and 127 characters that contains at least three of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uppercase characters (A through Z)</li> <li>• Lowercase characters (a through z)</li> <li>• Base 10 digits (0 through 9)</li> <li>• Nonalphanumeric characters: ~!@#\$%^&amp;* _-+=` \(){} []:;'"&lt;&gt; ,. ?/</li> </ul>
<b>Description (optional)</b>	Specify a user description that contains a maximum of 1024 ASCII characters.
<b>Email (optional)</b>	Specify an email address that will receive notifications from QuTS hero. For details, see <a href="#">Email Notifications</a> .


5. Click **Next**.
6. Specify the following information.

Setting	Description
<b>User must change the password at first logon</b>	The user must change the password after logging in for the first time.
<b>Account expiration</b>	Set an expiration date for the account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Now:</b> The account expires upon creation.</li> <li>• <b>Expiry date:</b> Specify an expiration date for the account.</li> </ul>

7. Click **Next**.
8. Assign the account to existing Windows user groups.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Review the summary, and then click **Finish**.

## Creating Multiple Domain Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Create Multiple Users** .  
The **Create Multiple Users** wizard appears.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>User Name Prefix</b>	Specify a username prefix between 1 and 16 ASCII characters that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin with a space</li> <li>• Begin with the following characters: - # @</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` `</li> </ul> This prefix will be included before all usernames.
<b>User Name Start No</b>	Specify a starting number up to 8 digits in length. <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-left: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                          QuTS hero removes leading zeros in starting numbers. For example, 001 becomes 1.                     </div>
<b>Number of Users</b>	Specify a number between 1 and 4095. This number signifies the number of accounts that will be created.
<b>Password</b>	Specify a password between 8 and 127 characters that contains at least three of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uppercase characters (A through Z)</li> <li>• Lowercase characters (a through z)</li> <li>• Base 10 digits (0 through 9)</li> <li>• Nonalphanumeric characters: ~!@#%&amp;*_+=` ()\} []:;'"&lt;&gt;,.?/</li> </ul>
<b>User must change the password at first logon</b>	The user must change the password after logging in for the first time.
<b>Account expiration</b>	Set an expiration date for the account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Now:</b> The account expires upon creation.</li> <li>• <b>Expiry date:</b> Specify an expiration date for the account.</li> </ul>

5. Click **Create**.  
QuTS hero creates the accounts and adds them to the list of domain users.
6. Click **Finish**.

## Domain User Account Lists

User accounts can also be imported directly from TXT or CSV files. The files contain user account information including usernames, passwords, descriptions, and email addresses.

File Format	Description
TXT	Create domain user account lists using a text editor. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a TXT Domain User File</a> .
CSV	Create domain user account lists using a spreadsheet editor. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a CSV Domain User File</a> .

### Creating a TXT Domain User File

1. Create a new file in a text editor.
2. Specify domain user information in the following format.

```
Username,Password,Description,Email
```



#### Important

- Separate values using commas.
- Ensure that the password meets the requirements for domain user accounts. For details, see [Creating a Domain User](#).

- Specify information for only one user on each line.

Example:

```
John,s8fK4br*,John's account,john@qnap.com
```

```
Jane,9fjwbXy#,Jane's account,jane@qnap.com
```

```
Mary,f9xn3nS%,Mary's account,mary@qnap.com
```

3. Save the list as a TXT file.



#### Important

If the list contains multi-byte characters, save the file with UTF-8 encoding.

### Creating a CSV Domain User File

1. Create a new workbook in a spreadsheet editor.
2. Specify domain user information in the following format.

- column A: Username
- column B: Password
- column C: Description
- column D: Email



#### Important

- Ensure that the password meets the requirements for domain user accounts. For details, see [Creating a Domain User](#).
- Specify information for only one user in each row.

Example:

	A	B	C	D
1	John	s8fK4b*	John's account	john@qnap.com
2	Jane	9fjwbX#	Jane's account	jane@qnap.com
3	Mary	f9xn3nS%	Mary's account	mary@qnap.com

3. Save the workbook as a CSV file.



**Important**

If the list contains multi-byte characters, open the file using a text editor and then save with UTF-8 encoding.

### Batch Importing Domain Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Users** .
2. Click **Create > Batch Import Users** .  
The **Batch Import Users** wizard appears.
3. Optional: Select **Overwrite existing users**.



**Important**

When selected, QuTS hero overwrites existing domain user accounts that have duplicates on the imported domain user account list.

4. Click **Browse**, and then select the file that contains the domain user account list.



**Important**

Ensure that you are importing a valid QuTS hero domain user account list file to avoid parsing errors.

For details, see [Domain User Account Lists](#).

5. Click **Next**.  
The **File content preview** screen appears.







**Important**

Ensure that the file contents are valid. If any information is invalid, the domain user account list cannot be imported.

6. Click **Import**.  
QuTS hero imports the domain user account list.
7. Click **Finish**.

### Modifying Domain User Account Information

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Users** .
2. Locate a user.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Change password	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Change Password</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Specify a password that meets the requirements.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Verify the password.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Click <b>Change</b>.</p>
Edit user properties	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit User Properties</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Edit the user properties. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a Domain User</a>.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Finish</b>.</p>
Edit user group membership	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit User Groups</b> wizard appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select or deselect user groups. For details, see <a href="#">Domain User Groups</a>.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Next</b>.</p> <p><b>d.</b> Review the summary, and then click <b>Finish</b>.</p>
Edit user profile	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Action</b>, click . The <b>Edit User Profile</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Specify the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Profile path</b> Specify the shared folder where the roaming profiles are stored.</li> <li>• <b>Login script</b> Specify the login script that executes when a domain user logs in from a computer member of the domain. To directly specify the script filename, connect to <b>\NAS\netlogon</b> using the domain administrator account and copy the script to the <b>/sysvol</b> shared folder in the <b>\scripts</b> folder of your domain.</li> <li>• <b>Home Folder</b> Specify the drive and shared folder that is mapped to the drive when the domain user logs in to the domain.</li> </ul> <p>• Click <b>Finish</b>.</p>



**Tip**

You can also edit quota settings for domain users. For details, see [Editing Quota Settings](#).

### Deleting Domain Users

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Users** .
2. Select the domain users to delete.

**Note**

The administrator account cannot be deleted.

3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.

## Domain User Groups

A domain user group is a collection of domain users with the same access rights to files and folders. Domain administrators can create domain user groups to improve security for domain users.

### Default Domain User Groups


- Allowed RODC Password Replication Group
- Certificate Service DCOM Access
- Denied RODC Password Replication Group
- Enterprise Read-Only Domain Controllers
- Incoming Forest Trust Builders
- Network Configuration Operators
- Pre-Windows 2000 Compatible Access
- Read-Only Domain Controllers
- Terminal Server License Servers
- Windows Authorization Access Group

### Creating a Domain User Group

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Groups** .
2. Click **Create a User Group**.  
The **Create a User Group** wizard appears.
3. Specify a user group name between 1 and 128 ASCII characters that does not begin with:
  - Spaces
  - The following characters: - # @
4. Click **Next**.
5. Optional: Add users to the group.
  - a. Select **Yes**.
  - b. Click **Next**.
  - c. Select the users you want to add to the group.
  - d. Click **Next**.

6. Review the summary, and then click **Finish**.

## Editing Domain User Groups

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Groups** .
2. Locate a domain user group.
3. Under **Action**, click  .  
The **Edit Group Users** wizard appears.
4. Select or deselect user groups.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Review the summary, and then click **Finish**.

## Deleting Domain User Groups

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Groups** .
2. Select the user groups to delete.



### Note

Some default user groups cannot be deleted.



### Important

Do not delete the default group of the domain.

3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.

## Computers

The **Computers** screen displays the computer accounts for computers or NAS devices that have joined the domain. Computer accounts are created automatically when a computer or NAS joins the domain.

### Creating a Computer Account



1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Computers** .
2. Click **Create a Computer**.  
The **Create a Computer** wizard appears.
3. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Computer name</b>	Specify a computer name between 1 and 15 ASCII characters that include any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uppercase characters (A through Z)</li> <li>• Lowercase characters (a through z)</li> <li>• Base 10 digits (0 through 9)</li> <li>• Dashes (-)</li> </ul>
<b>Description</b>	Specify a user description that contains a maximum of 1024 ASCII characters.
<b>Location</b>	Specify the location of the computer using a maximum of 1024 ASCII characters.

4. Click **Next**.
5. Assign the account to existing Windows user groups.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Review the summary, and then click **Create**.


### Modifying Computer Account Information

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Computers** .
2. Locate a computer account.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Edit computer properties	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Action</b>, click  . The <b>Edit computer properties</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Edit the <b>Description</b> or <b>Location</b>. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a Computer Account</a>.</li> </ol>
Edit user group membership	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Action</b>, click  . The <b>Edit User Groups</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Select or deselect user groups. For details, see <a href="#">Domain User Groups</a>.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Next</b>.</li> </ol>

4. Click **Finish**.

### Editing Computer Account Shared Folder Permissions

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Computers** .
2. Locate a computer account.
3. Under **Action**, click  .



The **Edit Shared Folder Permission** window appears.

4. Edit the computer account's permissions for each shared folder.  
For details, see [Shared Folder Permissions](#).
5. Click **Apply**.

### Deleting Computer Accounts

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Computers** .
2. Select the accounts to delete.



**Note**

The host computer account cannot be deleted.

3. Click **Delete**.  
A warning message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.

### DNS

The Domain Name System (DNS) helps the domain controller locate services and devices within the domain using service and resource records. Two DNS zones are created by default: the domain created when setting up the NAS as a domain controller, and a zone called "\_msdcs". System administrators can modify DNS settings and add or delete domains and records.

### Modifying DNS Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > DNS** .
2. Log in under the domain administrator account.



**Note**

This is the account created when enabling the domain controller.

- a. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Account</b>	Enter administrator.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password specified when the account was created.





- b. Click **Login**.

3. Under **DNS Settings**, select a domain.  
A list of records appears.
4. Select a record.  
The properties panel appears.
5. Modify any of the following.

Field	Description
<b>Name</b>	Edit the name of the record.

Field	Description
Type	Select the type of record.

6. Modify the values.

Task	User Action
Add a value	<p>a. Specify a value.</p> <p>b. Click . The value is added to the list.</p>
Move a value up	<p>a. Select a value from the list.</p> <p>b. Click . The value moves up in the list.</p>
Move a value down	<p>a. Select a value from the list.</p> <p>b. Click . The value moves down in the list.</p>
Remove a value	<p>a. Select a value from the list.</p> <p>b. Click . The value is removed from the list.</p>

7. Click **Apply**.

### Adding Domains

- Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > DNS** .
- Log in under the domain administrator account.



**Note**

This is the account created when enabling the domain controller.

- Specify the following information.

Field	Description
Account	Enter administrator.
Password	Enter the password specified when the account was created.

- Click **Login**.

- Click **Action > Add Domain** . The **Add New Domain** window appears.
- Enter the domain name.
- Click **Create**.

## Adding Records

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > DNS** .
2. Log in under the domain administrator account.



**Note**

This is the account created when enabling the domain controller.

- a. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Account</b>	Enter administrator.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password specified when the account was created.

- b. Click **Login**.

3. Select a domain or record.
4. Click **Action > Add Record** .  
The **Add New Record** window appears.
5. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Record Name</b>	Specify the name of the record.
<b>Type</b>	Select the type of record.
<b>Value</b>	Specify the value.

6. Click **Create**.

## Deleting Domains or Records

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > DNS** .
2. Log in under the domain administrator account.



**Note**

This is the account created when enabling the domain controller.

- a. Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Account</b>	Enter administrator.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password specified when the account was created.

- b. Click **Login**.

3. Select a domain or record to delete.
4. Click **Action > Delete** .  
A warning message appears.

5. Click **Yes**.

## Back Up/Restore

Users can back up or restore domain controller settings. Only the primary domain controller needs to be backed up; backing up the primary domain controller also backs up any additional or read-only domain controllers. When restoring a domain controller, there are some restrictions and limitations if the domain controller is in an AD environment with more than one domain controller. For details, see [Restoring Domain Controllers](#).

### Backing Up Domain Controllers

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Backup/Restore** .
2. Under **Back up ADDC Database**, select **Back up Database**.
3. Specify the following information.

Option	Description
<b>Backup frequency</b>	Select how often the Active Directory Domain Controller (ADDC) database is backed up.
<b>Start Time</b>	Select when the backup will begin.
<b>Destination folder</b>	Select the NAS folder where the backup will be stored.
<b>Backup Options</b>	Select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Overwrite existing backup file (dc_backup.exp)</b></li> <li>• <b>Create a new file for each backup and append the date to the filename (dc_backupyyyy_mm_dd_exp)</b></li> </ul>

4. Click **Apply**.

### Restoring Domain Controllers



**Important**

Restoring a domain controller overwrites all user, user group, and domain controller settings. Any changes made after the backup file was created will be lost.



**Warning**

Restoring a domain controller in a multiple-controller environment from a backup file will corrupt the domain controller database. Instead, re-add the NAS as a domain controller, and it will synchronize with the existing controller.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Domain Controller > Backup/Restore** .
2. Under **Restore ADDC Database**, click **Browse**.
3. Locate a domain controller backup file.
4. Click **Import**.

## 6. Network & File Services

### Network Access

#### Service Binding

NAS services run on all available network interfaces by default. Service binding enables you to bind services to specific network interfaces to increase security. You can bind services to one or more specific wired or wireless network interfaces.



#### Important

Configuring service binding does not affect users currently connected to the NAS. When users reconnect they will only be able to access the configured services using the specified network interfaces.

#### Configuring Service Binding

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network Access > Service Binding** .
2. Select **Enable Service Binding**.  
A list of available services and interfaces is displayed.
3. Bind services to interfaces.



#### Important

- By default, QUTS hero services are available on all network interfaces.
- Services must be bound to at least one interface.



#### Tip

Click **Use Default Value** to bind all services.

- a. Identify a service.
  - b. Deselect interfaces not bound to the service.
4. Click **Apply**.

### Proxy

A proxy server acts as an intermediary between the NAS and the internet. When enabled, QUTS hero will route internet requests through the specified proxy server.

#### Configuring the Proxy Server Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network Access > Proxy** .
2. Select **Use a proxy server**.
3. Specify the proxy server URL or IP address.
4. Specify a port number.
5. Optional: Configure proxy authentication.

- a. Select **Authentication**.
  - b. Specify a username.
  - c. Specify a password.
6. Click **Apply**.

## Win/Mac/NFS

### Microsoft Networking

Microsoft Networking refers to Samba, a network protocol that allows data to be accessed over a computer network and provides file and print services to Windows clients.

### Configuring Microsoft Networking



1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Win/Mac/NFS > Microsoft Networking** .
2. Select **Enable file service for Microsoft networking**.
3. Configure Microsoft networking settings.







Setting	User Action
<b>Server description (Optional)</b>	Specify a description that contains a maximum of 256 characters. The description must enable users to easily identify the NAS on a Microsoft network.
<b>Workgroup</b>	Specify a workgroup name that contains 1 to 15 characters from any of the following groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> <li>• Multi-byte characters: Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Russian</li> <li>• Special characters: ~ ! @ # \$ ^ &amp; ( ) - _ { } . ' .</li> </ul>

4. Select an authentication method.

Option	Description
<b>Standalone server</b>	QuTS hero uses the local user account information for authentication.
<b>AD domain member</b>	QuTS hero uses Microsoft Active Directory (AD) for authentication.
<b>LDAP domain authentication</b>	QuTS hero uses an LDAP directory for authentication.

5. Configure the advanced settings.
  - a. Click **Advanced Options**.  
The **Advanced Options** window opens.
  - b. Configure the advanced settings.

Option	User Action
<b>Enable WINS server</b>	Select this option to run a WINS server on the NAS.
<b>Use the specified WINS server</b>	Select this option to specify a WINS server IP address that QTS hero will use for name resolution. Do not select this option if you are unsure about the settings.
<b>Local master browser</b>	<p>Select this option to use the NAS as a local master browser. A local master browser is responsible for maintaining the list of devices in a specific workgroup on a Microsoft network. When deselected, another device on the network maintains the device list.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Important</b> To use the NAS as local master browser, specify the workgroup name when configuring Microsoft networking. The default workgroup in Windows is "workgroup".</p> </div>
<b>Allow only NTLMSSP authentication</b>	Select this option to authenticate clients using only NT LAN Manager Security Support Provider. When this option is deselected, QTS hero uses NT LAN Manager (NTLM).
<b>Name resolve priority</b>	Select a name service to use for name resolution. The default service is <b>DNS only</b> . If a WINS server is specified, <b>Try WINS then DNS</b> is selected by default.
<b>Login Style</b>	Select this option to change how usernames are structured when accessing FTP, AFP, or File Station services. After selecting this option, users can access NAS services using Domain\Username, instead of Domain+Username.
<b>Automatically register in DNS</b>	Select this option to register the NAS on the DNS server. If the NAS IP address changes, the NAS automatically updates the IP address on the DNS server. This option is only available if AD authentication is enabled.
<b>Enable trusted domains</b>	Select this option to join users from trusted AD domains. This option is only available if AD authentication is enabled.
<b>Enable Asynchronous I/O</b>	<p>Select this option to improve the Samba performance using asynchronous I/O. Asynchronous I/O refers to the I/O behavior on the CIFS protocol layer. This is different from the synchronous I/O feature found in the shared folder settings, which only applies to specific shared folders on the file system level.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid yellow; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <p><b>Tip</b> To prevent power interruption, use a UPS when asynchronous I/O is enabled.</p> </div>
<b>Enable WS-Discovery</b>	Select this option to enable Web Services Dynamic Discovery (WS-Discovery). WS-Discovery makes the NAS visible in File Explorer on Windows 10 computers.

Option	User Action
<p><b>Highest SMB version</b></p>	<p>Select the highest SMB protocol version used in your networking operation. Use the default SMB version if you are unsure about this setting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Selecting SMB3 will also include SMB3.1 and SMB3.1.1.</p>
<p><b>Lowest SMB version</b></p>	<p>Select the lowest SMB protocol version used in your networking operation. Use the default SMB version if you are unsure about this setting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> Selecting SMB3 will also include SMB3.1 and SMB3.1.1.</p>
<p><b>Allow Symbolic links within a shared folder</b></p>	<p>Select this option to allow symbolic links within shared folders.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> You must enable this setting in order to restore files from snapshots on Windows using Windows Previous Versions. For details, see <a href="#">Snapshot Data Recovery</a>.</p>
<p><b>Allow Symbolic links between different shared folders</b></p>	<p>Select this option to allow symbolic links between shared folders.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> This setting requires <b>Allow Symbolic links within a shared folder</b> to be selected first.</p>
<p><b>Restrict anonymous users from accessing SMB shared folders</b></p>	<p>Select this option to require users to log in before accessing SMB shared folders.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> This setting will be locked to <b>Enabled (strict)</b> if ABSE is enabled on any shared folder.</p>
<p><b>Veto files</b></p>	<p>This option enables you to hide files from users accessing the NAS via SMB. Files are hidden if their filename matches a pattern in the veto criteria file.</p>
<p><b>Veto criteria</b></p>	<p>Specify filename criteria for hiding files from SMB NAS users.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> This option is only available when <b>Veto files</b> is selected.</p>

- c. Click **Apply**.  
The **Advanced Options** window closes.

- 6. Click **Apply**.

## Apple Networking

The Apple Filing Protocol (AFP) is a file service protocol that allows data to be accessed from a macOS device.



## Configuring Apple Networking

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Win/Mac/NFS > Apple Networking** .
2. Select **Enable AFP (Apple Filing Protocol)**.
3. Optional: Select **DHX2 authentication support**.
4. Click **Apply**.

## NFS Service

Network File System (NFS) is a file system protocol that allows data to be accessed over a computer network. Enabling the NFS service allows Linux and FreeBSD users to connect to the NAS.

### Enabling the NFS Service

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Win/Mac/NFS > NFS Service** .
2. Enable NFS Service.
  - a. Optional: Click **Enable NFS v2/v3 Service**.
  - b. Optional: Click **Enable NFS v4 Service**.
3. Click **Apply**.

## Telnet/SSH

Telnet is a network protocol used to provide a command line interface for communicating with the NAS.

Secure Shell (SSH) is a network protocol used for securely accessing network services over an unsecured network. Enabling SSH allows users to connect to the NAS using an SSH-encrypted connection or a SSH client such as PuTTY.

SSH File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) is a secure network protocol that works with SSH connections to transfer files and navigate through the QuTS hero filesystem. SFTP can be enabled after allowing SSH connections on the NAS.

## Configuring Telnet Connections



### Important

Only administrator accounts can access the NAS through Telnet.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Telnet/SSH** .
2. Select **Allow Telnet connection**.
3. Specify a port number.  
Port numbers range from 1 to 65535.



### Tip

The default Telnet port is 13131.

4. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring SSH Connections



### Important

Only administrator accounts can access the NAS through SSH.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Telnet/SSH** .
2. Select **Allow SSH connection**.
3. Specify a port number.  
Port numbers range from 1 to 65535.



### Tip

The default SSH port is 22.

4. Optional: Select **Enable SFTP**.
5. Click **Apply**.

## Editing SSH Access Permissions

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Telnet/SSH** .
2. Click **Edit Access Permission**.  
The **Edit Access Permission** window opens.
3. Select user accounts to give access permissions.



### Important

Only administrator accounts can log in using an SSH connection.

4. Click **Apply**.

## SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used to collect and organize information about managed devices on a network. Enabling the QTS hero SNMP service allows for the immediate reporting of NAS events, such as warnings or errors, to a Network Management Station (NMS).

## Configuring SNMP Settings



1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > SNMP** .
2. Select **Enable SNMP Service**.
3. Configure the SNMP settings.

Setting	User Action
Port number	Specify the port that the Network Management Station (NMS) will use to connect to QTS hero.

Setting	User Action
<b>SNMP Trap Level</b>	<p>Select the type of alert messages that the NAS will send to the NMS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Information:</b> QTS hero sends information regarding ongoing or scheduled NAS operations.</li> <li>• <b>Warning:</b> QTS hero sends alerts when NAS resources are critically low or the hardware behaves abnormally.</li> <li>• <b>Error:</b> QTS hero sends alerts failing to enable or update NAS features or applications.</li> </ul>
<b>Trap Address</b>	<p>Specify the IP addresses of the NMS. You can specify a maximum of 3 trap addresses.</p>

4. Select the SNMP version that the NMS uses.

Option	User Action
<b>SNMP V1/V2</b>	<p>Specify an SNMP community name that contains 1 to 64 characters from any of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> </ul> <p>The SNMP community string functions as a password that is used to authenticate messages sent between the NMS and the NAS. Every packet that is transmitted between the NMS and the SNMP agent includes the community string.</p>

Option	User Action
<p><b>SNMP V3</b></p>	<p>Specify the username, authentication protocol and password, and privacy protocol and password.</p> <p>a. Specify a username.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> The username should contain 1 to 32 characters from any of the following groups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> <li>• Multi-byte characters: Chinese, Japanese, Korean, and Russian</li> <li>• Special characters: All except " ' / \</li> </ul> <p>b. Optional: Select <b>Use Authentication</b>.</p> <p>1. Specify the authentication protocol.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can select either <b>HMAC-MD5</b> or <b>HMAC-SHA</b>. If you are unsure about this setting, QNAP recommends selecting <b>HMAC-SHA</b>.</p> <p>2. Specify an authentication password that contains 8 to 64 ASCII characters.</p> <p>c. Optional: Select <b>Use Privacy</b>.</p> <p>1. Specify a privacy password that contains 8 to 64 ASCII characters.</p>

5. Click **Apply**.

## SNMP Management Information Base (MIB)

The Management Information Base (MIB) is a type of database in ASCII text format that is used to manage the NAS in the SNMP network. The SNMP manager uses the MIB to determine the NAS status or understand the messages that the NAS sends within the network. You can download the MIB and then view the contents using any word processor or text editor.



### Important

MIBs describe the structure of the management data of a device subsystem. They use a hierarchical namespace containing object identifiers (OID). Each OID identifies a variable that you can read or set using SNMP. You must assign the correct OID to retrieve the NAS information. The default OID for QNAP NAS devices is 1.3.6.1.4.1.24681.2.

## Downloading the SNMP MIB

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > SNMP** .

2. Under **SNMP MIB**, click **Download**.  
QuTS hero downloads the NAS.mib file on your computer.

## Service Discovery

### UPnP Discovery Service

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a networking technology that enables the discovery of networked devices connected to the same network. After enabling this service, devices supporting UPnP can discover the NAS.

#### Enabling the UPnP Discovery Service

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Service Discovery > UPnP Discovery Service** .
2. Select **Enable UPnP Discovery Service**.
3. Click **Apply**.

### Bonjour

Bonjour is a networking technology developed by Apple that enable devices on the same local area network to discover and communicate with each other.

#### Enabling Bonjour

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Service Discovery > Bonjour** .
2. Select **Enable Bonjour Service**.
3. Select the services to be advertised by Bonjour.



#### Important

You must enable the services in QuTS hero before advertising them with Bonjour.



4. Click **Apply**.

### Network Recycle Bin

The Network Recycle Bin contains files deleted from the NAS through File Station, QuFTP, or by clients connected using Microsoft networking.

#### Configuring the Network Recycle Bin

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network Recycle Bin** .
2. Select **Enable Network Recycle Bin**.
3. Optional: Configure the Network Recycle Bin settings.


Setting	Description
<b>File retention time</b>	<p>Specify the number of days files are retained. The <b>Daily check time</b> controls when recycled files are checked against the retention time.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Tip</b></p> <p>This field supports a maximum of 9999 days. The default is 180 days.</p> </div> </div>
<b>Exclude these file extensions</b>	<p>Specify which file extensions are excluded from the Network Recycle Bin.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>File types are case insensitive and must be separated by a comma.</p> </div> </div>

4. Click **Apply**.

### Deleting All Files in the Network Recycle Bin

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network Recycle Bin** .
2. Click **Empty All Network Recycle Bin**.  
A warning message appears.
3. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero deletes all files from the Network Recycle Bin.

### Restricting Access to the Network Recycle Bin

1. Go to **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders** .
2. Identify a shared folder.
3. Under **Actions**, click  .  
The **Edit Properties** window appears.
4. Select **Enable Network Recycle Bin**.
5. Select **Restrict the access to Recycle Bin to administrators only for now**.
6. Click **OK**.

## 7. File Station

### Overview

#### About File Station

File Station is a QuTS hero file management application that allows you to access files on the NAS. You can quickly locate files and folders, manage access permissions, play media files, and share data with other users.

#### System Requirements

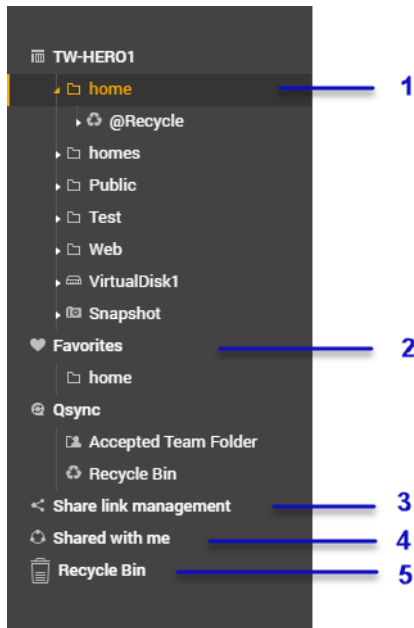
Category	Detail
Web browser	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Microsoft Internet Explorer 9 or later</li> <li>• Microsoft Edge</li> <li>• Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later</li> <li>• Apple Safari 5 or later</li> <li>• Google Chrome</li> </ul>
Java program	Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 7 or later
Flash player	Adobe Flash Player 9 or later is required for viewing media files.

#### Supported File Formats

Category	File Extension
Image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BMP</li> <li>• JPG</li> <li>• JPE</li> <li>• PNG</li> <li>• TGA</li> <li>• GIF</li> </ul>
Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MP3</li> <li>• FLAC</li> <li>• OGG</li> <li>• WAV</li> <li>• AIF</li> <li>• AIFF</li> </ul>
Video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AVI</li> <li>• MP4</li> </ul>

## Parts of the User Interface

### Left Panel



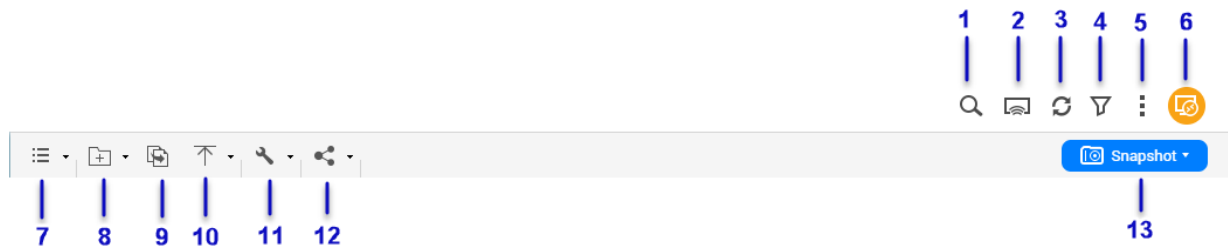
Label	UI Element	Description
1	Shared folders	Displays all shared folders on the NAS. Default shared folders vary depending on the NAS model.
2	Favorites	Displays bookmarked folders.
3	Share link management	Displays links to NAS files shared by the current user account.  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div> <p><b>Note</b> Administrators see links shared by all NAS users.</p> </div> </div>
4	Shared with me	Displays files and folders shared with the current user account.
5	Recycle Bin	Displays deleted files and folders.





Depending on your setup, the following folders may also appear on the list.

Folder	Description
Snapshot	Displays the saved snapshots.
Local folders	Displays the local folders on a Windows computer.  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div> <p><b>Important</b> To view local folders from File Station, you must first install Java Runtime Environment.</p> </div> </div>
Qsync	Displays files, folders, and team folders from Qsync.




## Toolbar



Label	Item	Description
1	Search	Search files and folders by their name or type.   <b>Tip</b> You can select <b>Advanced Search</b> to specify more criteria.
2	Network Media Player	Stream videos, photos, and music to compatible devices on your network.
3	Refresh	Refresh the current page.
4	Smart Filter	Filter files and folders based on the specified criteria.
5	More Settings	Configure File Station settings, open the Help guide, or view application information.
6	Remote Mount	Manage files across local, external, remote, and cloud storage resources on a single interface. To use this feature, install HybridMount from App Center. For more information on HybridMount, go to the QNAP website.
7	Browsing Mode	Select a browsing mode.
8	Create folder	Create a folder, shared folder, or share a space with another NAS user.
9	Copy	Copy the selected files and folders.   <b>Note</b> This button only appears when a file or folder is selected.
10	Upload	Upload files or folders to the selected shared folder.
11	More Actions	Perform different tasks.   <b>Note</b> Some task options only appear when you select certain types of files.
12	Share	Share the selected files and folders.   <b>Note</b> This button only appears when a file or folder is selected.
13	Snapshot	Open Snapshot Manager or view the Snapshot Manager quick tutorial.

## Settings


## Modifying General Settings

1. Click  on the top-right corner.
2. Select **Settings**.  
The **Options** window appears.
3. Select **General**.
4. Modify the following settings.

Option	Description
<b>Show hidden files on NAS</b>	File Station displays files and folders.
<b>Allow all users to create shared links</b>	All users can share data from the NAS using shared links.
<b>Show Network Recycle Bin(s)</b>	File Station displays the @Recycle folder in all user folders.
<b>Only allow the admin and administrators group to use "Share to NAS user"</b>	File Station prevents non-administrators from sharing files with other NAS users.
<b>Only allow the admin and administrators group to permanently delete files</b>	File Station prevents non-administrators from permanently deleting files.
<b>Only allow the admin and administrators group to use on-the-fly transcode</b>	File Station prevents non-administrators from using on-the-fly transcoding.
<b>Track file and folder access</b>	File Station allows users to track file or folder access and view and information in System Connection Logs.

5. Click **Close**.

## Modifying File Transfer Settings

1. Click  on the top-right corner.
2. Select **Settings**.  
The **Options** window appears.
3. Select **File Transfer**.
4. Under **Duplicate File Name Policy**, specify policies for handling duplicate files.

Scenario	Policy
<b>When uploading files</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Always ask me</b></li> <li>• <b>Rename duplicate files</b></li> <li>• <b>Skip duplicate files</b></li> <li>• <b>Overwrite duplicate files</b></li> </ul>


Scenario	Policy
When copying or moving files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Always ask me</b></li> <li>• <b>Rename duplicate files</b></li> <li>• <b>Skip duplicate files</b></li> <li>• <b>Overwrite duplicate files</b></li> </ul>

- Optional: Select **Always merge all file transfer processes into one task**.
- Under **Google Drive File Transfer Policy**, specify policies for handling Google Drive files.

Scenario	Policy
When downloading or moving Google Drive files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always ask me</li> <li>• Download as Microsoft Office file formats (.docx, .pptx, .xlsx)</li> <li>• Keep Google Drive file formats</li> </ul>
When downloading a single Google Drive file to my PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always ask me</li> <li>• Download as Microsoft Office file formats (.docx, .pptx, .xlsx)</li> <li>• Keep Google Drive file formats</li> </ul>

- Click **Apply**.
- Click **Close**.


### Modifying Multimedia Settings

- Open File Station.
- Click  on the toolbar.
- Select **Settings**.  
The **Options** window appears.
- Select **Multimedia**.
- Modify the following settings.

Option	Description
<b>Support multimedia playback and thumbnail display</b>	File Station allows multimedia playback and displays thumbnails for media files.
<b>Always display the 360° panoramic view button on the viewer</b>	File Station permanently displays the 360° panoramic view button without checking the file metadata.

- Click **Close**.

## Modifying Document Settings


1. Click  on the top-right corner.
2. Select **Settings**.  
The **Options** window appears.
3. Select **Documents**.
4. Under **Microsoft Office File Policy**, specify policies for handling Microsoft Office files.

File Format	Policy
For .doc, .ppt, .xls files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always ask me</li> <li>• View in Google docs</li> <li>• Open with Chrome Extension</li> <li>• Open with web browser</li> </ul>
For .docx, .pptx, .xlsx files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always ask me</li> <li>• Edit with Office Online</li> <li>• View in Google docs</li> <li>• Open with Chrome Extension</li> <li>• Open with web browser</li> </ul>

5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click **Close**.

## Modifying Third-party Service Settings

You can convert Apple iWork file formats to Microsoft Office file formats using CloudConvert. The converted files will be stored in the same folder with source files.

1. Click  on the top-right corner.
2. Select **Settings**.  
The **Options** window appears.
3. Select **Third-party Service**.
4. Acquire your CloudConvert API key.



**Tip**

For details, see the tutorial: <https://www.qnap.com/en/how-to/faq/article/how-to-get-an-api-key-from-cloudconvert>

5. Paste your CloudConvert API key.
6. Click **Apply**.

## File Operations


File Station enables you to perform the following tasks.

Operation	Task
Store	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Uploading a File</a></li> </ul>
Access	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Downloading a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Opening a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Opening Microsoft Word, Excel, and PowerPoint Files Using the Chrome Extension</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Opening a Text File Using Text Editor</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing a File in Google Docs</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing a File in Microsoft Office Online</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Opening Image Files Using Image2PDF</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing File Properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Modifying File Permissions</a></li> </ul>
Organize	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Sorting Files</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Copying a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Moving a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Renaming a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Deleting a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Restoring a Deleted File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Mounting an ISO File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Unmounting an ISO File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Compressing a File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Extracting Compressed Files or Folders</a></li> </ul>
Share	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder by Email</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder on a Social Network</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder Using Share Links</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder with a NAS User</a></li> </ul>

Operation	Task
Play	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Playing an Audio File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Playing a Video File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Playing a Video File Using a Third-Party Player</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Opening a 360-degree Image or Video File</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Streaming to a Network Media Player</a></li> </ul>
Transcode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Adding a File to the Transcoding Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Canceling or Deleting Transcoding</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Transcode Information</a></li> </ul>

## Uploading a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click  and then select <b>File</b>. The <b>File Upload</b> window opens.</li> <li>b. Select the file and then click <b>Open</b>.</li> </ol>
Use drag and drop	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Locate the file on your computer.</li> <li>b. Drag and drop the file to the File Station window.</li> </ol>

A confirmation message appears.

3. Select one of the following policies for handling duplicate files.

Option	Description
<b>Rename duplicate files</b>	Upload and rename a file if another file with the same name and extension already exists in the destination folder.
<b>Skip duplicate files</b>	Do not upload a file if another file with the same file name and extension already exists in the destination folder.
<b>Overwrite duplicate files</b>	Upload the file and then overwrite an existing file with the same name and extension in the destination folder.




### Tip

You can set the selected option as the default policy. File Station will not ask again after remembering the setting. You can still change the policy in **File Station > More Settings > Settings > File Transfer** .

4. Click **OK**.  
File Station uploads the file.

## Downloading a File


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Download</b>.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click the file and then click <b>Download</b> .

Depending on your browser, a confirmation message appears before the file is downloaded to your computer.

## Opening a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Open</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click and then select <b>Open</b> .


Action	Steps
Open the file directly	<p>Double-click the file.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #00a0e3; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• File Station performs various actions depending on the type of the selected file.</li> <li>• For document files, you can choose an action from the following options.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Edit with Office Online</b></li> <li>• <b>View in Google Docs</b></li> <li>• <b>Open with Chrome Extension</b></li> <li>• <b>Open with web browser</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div>

File Station opens the selected file.

### Opening Microsoft Word, Excel, and PowerPoint Files Using the Chrome Extension

This task requires that you use the Google Chrome browser and install the Office Editing for Docs, Sheets & Slides extension.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Open with Chrome Extension</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click the file and then select <b>Open with Chrome Extension</b> .

File Station opens an editable file on Google Docs, Sheets, or Slides.


### Opening a Text File Using Text Editor

This task requires that you install Text Editor from the App Center.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	a. Select the file.



	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Open with Text Editor</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Open with Text Editor</b>.</li> </ol>


File Station opens the selected text file using Text Editor.

### Viewing a File in Google Docs

This task requires that you use the Google Chrome browser and enable myQNAPcloud Link.

You can open and view files in Google Docs. To use this feature, your web browser must allow pop-up windows.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>View in Google docs</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click and then select <b>View in Google docs</b> .

File Station opens a preview of the file in Google Docs.

### Viewing a File in Microsoft Office Online

This task requires that you enable myQNAPcloud Link.


You can open and edit Microsoft Word, Excel, and Powerpoint files using Office Online. To use this feature, your web browser must allow pop-up windows.



**Note**

Editing a file in Microsoft Office Online overwrites the file saved on the NAS.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Edit with Office Online</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click the file and then select <b>Edit with Office Online</b> .

File Station opens the file in Microsoft Office Online.

## Opening Image Files Using Image2PDF

You must to install Image2PDF from the App Center before starting this task.

1. Opening File Station
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following methods.


Method	Steps
Use the menu bar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Open with Image2PDF</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	Right-click and then select <b>Open with Image2PDF</b> .

File Station opens the selected image file with the Image2PDF wizard.


Follow the wizard's on-screen instructions to convert the image file into a PDF file.

## Viewing File Properties

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Properties** window opens and displays the following information.


Field	Description
<b>Type</b>	Displays the file type.
<b>Size</b>	Displays the file size.
<b>File Path</b>	Displays the folder location.
<b>Modified Date</b>	Displays the date that the file was last modified.
<b>Owner</b>	Displays name of the NAS user who uploaded the file.
<b>Group</b>	Displays the name of the NAS group that can access the file.
<b>Storage Pool</b>	Displays the name of the storage pool on which the file is located.
<b>View Access Logs</b>	Keeps track of access to the file.  <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>Tip</b> To enable this feature, click <b>Start Logging</b> in <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; System Logs &gt; System Connection Logs</b> .</p> </div> </div>

4. Click **Close**.


### Modifying File Permissions

This task requires that you enable advanced folder permissions in **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Advanced Permissions** .

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click  .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Properties** window opens.


4. Click  .
5. Enable or disable the following permissions for the owner, group, or other users on the list.

Permission	Description
Read Only	Allows a user to view the file.
Read/Write	Allows a user to view and make changes to the file.
Deny	Denies any access to the file.




**Tip**

You can click + to add users to the list and click - to remove users from the list.


6. Optional: Select the access rights for guest users.
7. Optional: Specify the ownership of the file.
  - a. Click .
  - b. Select a user.
  - c. Click **Set**.
8. Click **Apply**.

**Sorting Files**

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Click .
4. Select **List**.  
File Station displays files in a list view.
5. Click a column title.  
File Station sorts files in an ascending or descending order based on the selected column.

**Copying a File**

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.




Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Copy to/Move to</b> and then select <b>Copy to</b>.</li> <li>d. Select the destination folder.</li> <li>e. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Copy</b>.</li> <li>c. Go to the destination folder.</li> <li>d. Click <b>Paste</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Select <b>Copy</b>.</li> <li>c. Go to the destination folder.</li> <li>d. Right-click inside the folder and then select <b>Paste</b>.</li> </ol>
Use keyboard shortcuts	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Press <b>CTRL + C</b> or <b>Command-C</b>.</li> <li>c. Go to the destination folder.</li> <li>d. Press <b>CTRL + V</b> or <b>Command-V</b>.</li> </ol>
Use drag and drop	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Drag and drop to the destination folder. Step result: A context menu appears.</li> <li>c. Select one of the following actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Copy and skip</li> <li>• Copy and overwrite</li> <li>• Copy and rename automatically</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

File Station creates a copy of the selected file.

## Moving a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Copy to/Move to</b> and then select <b>Move to</b>.</li> <li>d. Select the destination folder.</li> <li>e. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Cut</b>.</li> <li>d. Select the destination folder.</li> <li>e. Click .</li> </ol>

	<p><b>f. Select <b>Paste</b>.</b></p>
Use the context menu	<p><b>a. Right-click the file and then select <b>Copy to/Move to</b> and <b>Move to</b>.</b></p> <p><b>b. Select the destination folder.</b></p> <p><b>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</b></p>
	<p><b>a. Right-click the file and then select <b>Cut</b>.</b></p> <p><b>b. Select the destination folder.</b></p> <p><b>c. Right-click inside the folder and then select <b>Paste</b>.</b></p>
Use keyboard shortcuts	<p><b>a. Select the file.</b></p> <p><b>b. Press <b>CTRL + X</b> or <b>Command-X</b>.</b></p> <p><b>c. Go to the destination folder.</b></p> <p><b>d. Press <b>CTRL + V</b> or <b>Command-V</b>.</b></p>
Use drag and drop	<p><b>a. Select the file.</b></p> <p><b>b. Drag and drop to the destination folder.</b></p> <p><b>c. Step result: A context menu appears.</b></p> <p><b>d. Select one of the following actions.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move and skip</li> <li>• Move and overwrite</li> <li>• Move (and rename if a file exists with the same name)</li> </ul>

File Station moves the selected file to the specified folder.

## Renaming a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<p><b>a. Select the file.</b></p> <p><b>b. Click .</b></p> <p><b>c. Select <b>Rename</b>.</b></p>
Use the context menu	<p><b>a. Right-click the file.</b></p> <p><b>b. Select <b>Rename</b>.</b></p>
Use a keyboard shortcut.	Press <b>F2</b> .

4. Specify the file name and then click **OK**.

File Station renames the file.

## Deleting a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the keyboard	Press <b>Delete</b> .

A confirmation message appears.

4. Specify how to delete the file.
  - Move to Network Recycle Bin
  - Delete permanently
5. Click **OK**.  
File Station either moves the selected file to the Recycle Bin or deletes it permanently.

## Restoring a Deleted File

1. Open File Station.
2. Go to **Recycle Bin**.
3. Locate the file.
4. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Recover</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Recover</b>.</li> </ol>

A confirmation message appears.

5. Click **Yes**.  
File Station restores the selected file.

## Mounting an ISO File

1. Open File Station.
2. Upload an ISO file.  
For details, see [Uploading a File](#).
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Mount ISO</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Mount ISO</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Mount ISO** window appears.


4. Specify the shared folder name.
5. Click **OK**.  
File Station mounts the ISO file as a shared folder.

## Unmounting an ISO File

1. Open File Station.
2. On the left panel, locate the mounted ISO file.
3. Right-click the file and then select **Unmount**.  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.  
File Station unmounts the ISO file and displays a confirmation message.
5. Click **OK**.

## Compressing a File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file or folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> </ol>



	<b>c. Select <b>Compress(Zip)</b>.</b>
Use the context menu	<b>a. Right-click the file or folder.</b> <b>b. Select <b>Compress(Zip)</b>.</b>

4. Configure the file compression settings.


Option	Task
Archive name	Specify a name for the compressed file.
Compression level	Select the type of compression method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal - Standard compression</li> <li>• Maximum compression - Prioritizes compression quality</li> <li>• Fast compression - Prioritizes compression speed</li> </ul>
Archive format	Select the format of file compression. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• zip</li> <li>• 7z</li> </ul>
Update mode	Specify how the files should be updated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add and replace files - Add and replace the specified files.</li> <li>• Update and add files - Update old files and add new files.</li> <li>• Update existing files - Update older versions of existing files.</li> <li>• Synchronize files - Update old files, add new files, and remove files that are no longer in the folder.</li> </ul>

5. Optional: Specify a password to encrypt the file.

6. Click **OK**.

File Station compresses the selected file and creates a archive file.

## Sharing a File or Folder by Email

Before starting this task, you must configure the QuTS hero email settings in **Desktop** >  > **E-mail Account** .

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file or folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<b>a. Select the file or folder</b> <b>b. Click <b>Share</b>.</b> <b>c. Select <b>Via Email</b>.</b>
Use the context menu	<b>a. Right-click the file or folder.</b> <b>b. Select <b>Share</b>.</b>

	<b>c. Select Via Email.</b>
--	-----------------------------

The **Share** window appears.

**4. Configure the following settings.**

Field	Description
Send from	Select the email delivery method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use NAS to mail the link(s).</li> <li>Use local computer to mail the link(s).</li> </ul>
Sender	Select an email account.
To	Specify the email address of the recipient. <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Tip</b>                      You can select a recipient from your contact list if Qcontactz is installed on the NAS.                 </div>
Subject	Specify the email subject.
Message	Enter a new message or use the default message.

**5. Optional: Click **More settings** and configure additional settings.**

Field	Task
Link Name	Enter a name for the link or use the current name of the file or folder.
Domain name/IP	Select the domain name or IP address.
Show SSL in URL	Use an HTTPS URL.
On-the-fly transcoding	Allow users to transcode videos on the fly. <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting only appears when you share video files.</li> <li>To use on-the-fly transcoding, you must install and enable Video Station 5.2.0 (or later).</li> </ul> </div>
File upload	Allow users to upload files to this folder. <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Note</b>                      This setting only appears when you share a folder.                 </div>
Expire in	Specify the expiration date. <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Note</b>                      You cannot access the shared file or folder after the expiration date.                 </div>
Password	Require a password to access the link. <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <b>Tip</b>                      You can choose to include the password in the email.                 </div>

**6. Click **Share Now**.**

File Station sends an email to the recipient.

## Sharing a File or Folder on a Social Network

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file or folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.




Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Share</b>.</li> <li>c. Select <b>To Social Network</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Share</b> and then select <b>To Social Network</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Share** window appears.

4. Configure the following settings.

Field	Description
Social Network	Select the social network website.
Message	Enter a new message or use the default message.

5. Optional: Click **More settings** and configure additional settings.

Field	Task
Link Name	Type a name for the link or use the current file or folder name.
Domain name/IP	Select the domain name or IP address.
Show SSL in URL	Use an HTTPS URL.
On-the-fly transcoding	<p>Allow users to transcode videos on the fly.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This setting only appears when you share video files.</li> <li>• To use on-the-fly transcoding, you must install and enable Video Station 5.2.0 (or later).</li> </ul> </div>
File upload	<p>Allow users to upload files to this folder</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This setting only appears when you share a folder.</p> </div>
Expire in	<p>Specify the expiration date.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>You cannot access the shared file or folder after the expiration date.</p> </div>
Password	Require a password to access the link.

6. Click **Share Now**.  
File Station connects to the specified social network website.




## Sharing a File or Folder Using Share Links

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file or folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Share</b>.</li> <li>c. Select <b>Create share link only</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Share</b> and then select <b>Create share link only</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Share** window appears.

4. Configure the following settings.

Field	Task
Link Name	Type a name for the link or use the current file or folder name.
Domain name/IP	Select the domain name or IP address.
Show SSL in URL	Use an HTTPS URL.
On-the-fly transcoding	<p>Allow users to transcode videos on the fly.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This setting only appears when you share video files.</li> <li>• To use on-the-fly transcoding, you must install and enable Video Station 5.2.0 (or later).</li> </ul> </div>
File upload	<p>Allow users to upload files to this folder</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This setting only appears when you share a folder.</p> </div>
Expire in	<p>Specify the expiration date.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This setting only appears when you share a folder.</p> </div>
Password	Require a password to access the link.

5. Click **Create Now**.  
File Station generates a link.

## Sharing a File or Folder with a NAS User


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file or folder.

3. Perform one of the following actions.




Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Share</b>.</li> <li>c. Select <b>To NAS user</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file or folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Share</b> and then select <b>To NAS user</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Share** window appears.

4. Select the user to share the file or folder with.

Option	Description
Existing user	<p>Select a user from the list. Optional: Select <b>Send a notification email to the user</b> and then specify the email subject and message. Only users who have provided email information will receive notifications.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      You can specify the email information of each user in <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; Users</b> .                 </div>
New user	Create a new user account.

5. Optional: Click **More settings** and configure additional settings.


Field	Task
Link Name	Type a name for the link or use the current file or folder name.
Domain name/IP	Select the domain name or IP address.
Show SSL in URL	Use an HTTPS URL.
On-the-fly transcoding	<p>Allow users to transcode videos on the fly.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting only appears when you share video files.</li> <li>To use on-the-fly transcoding, you must install and enable Video Station 5.2.0 (or later).</li> </ul> </div>
File upload	<p>Allow users to upload files to this folder</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      This setting only appears when you share a folder.                 </div>
Expire in	<p>Specify the expiration date.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      You cannot access the shared file or folder after the expiration date.                 </div>
Password	Require a password to access the link.

6. Click **Share Now**.

File Station shares the file with the specified user.

## Playing an Audio File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> </ol>

File Station plays the selected audio file using Media Viewer.

## Playing a Video File

You must install Video Station from App Center to play certain video formats.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> <li>d. Select a resolution.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> <li>c. Select a resolution.</li> </ol>


File Station plays the selected file using Media Viewer.

## Playing a Video File Using a Third-Party Player

You can play video files using third-party players for better compatibility and extra features.

1. Open File Station.

2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.


Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Hover the mouse pointer over <b>Play with third-party players</b>.</li> <li>d. Select a resolution.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Hover the mouse pointer over <b>Play with third-party players</b>.</li> <li>c. Select a resolution.</li> </ol>

The **Play with third-party players** window appears.


4. Download and install QVHelper.
5. Select a third-party player.
6. Download and install the third-party player.
7. Choose whether to play the video with subtitles.
8. Click **Play**.

### Opening a 360-degree Image or Video File

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Play</b>.</li> </ol>



4. Optional: Select the resolution.

File Station opens the selected file using the Media Viewer. You can click **360 Panorama Mode** () on Media Viewer to view the photo or video in Panorama Mode.

## Streaming to a Network Media Player

This task requires that you install Media Streaming Add-on from App Center.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click  on the toolbar.</li> <li>c. Select a media player. The <b>Media Viewer</b> window appears.</li> <li>d. Select <b>Play the selected item on this player</b>.</li> <li>e. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Hover the mouse pointer over <b>Streaming to</b>.</li> <li>d. Under <b>Network Media Player</b>, select a media player.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Hover the mouse pointer over <b>Streaming to</b>.</li> <li>c. Under <b>Network Media Player</b>, select a media player.</li> </ol>

File Station plays the selected file using the specified network media player.


## Adding a File to the Transcoding Folder



### Important

Video files cannot be converted to a resolution higher than the original. If a higher resolution is selected, File Station automatically transcodes the file in its original resolution.

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Add to Transcode</b>.</li> </ol>





Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Add to Transcode</b>.</li> </ol>
----------------------	--

The **Add to Transcode** window opens.

4. Select the transcoding video resolution.

- 240p
- 360p
- 480p SD
- 720p HD
- 1080p FULL HD
- Original resolution
- Only audio

5. Optional: Rotate the video.


- Click  to rotate the video clockwise.
- Click  to rotate the video counterclockwise.

6. Click **OK**.

File Station adds the transcoded file to the @Transcode folder.

### Canceling or Deleting Transcoding

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Cancel/Delete Transcoding</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Cancel/Delete Transcoding</b>.</li> </ol>


A confirmation message appears.

4. Click **OK**.

File Station removes the selected file from the Transcode folder and cancels the transcoding process.

## Viewing Transcode Information


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Transcode Information</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Transcode Information</b>.</li> </ol>

Multimedia Console opens. You can view transcoding tasks and configure related settings.

## Extracting Compressed Files or Folders

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the compressed archive file.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the file.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Extract</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Extract</b>.</li> </ol>

4. Select one of the following extraction options.

Option	Description
Extract files	Select specific files to extract.
Extract here	Extract all files in the current folder.
Extract to /<new folder>/	Extract all files in a new folder. The new folder uses the file name of the compressed file.

File Station extracts the compressed files to the specified folder.

## Folder Operations

File Station enables you to perform the following tasks.


Operation	Task
Store	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Uploading a Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Uploading a Folder Using Drag and Drop</a></li> </ul>
Access	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Folder Properties</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Storage Information</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Modifying Folder Permissions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Qsync Folders</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Managing Share Links</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Viewing Files and Folders Shared with Me</a></li> </ul>
Organize	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Creating a Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Copying a Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Creating a Desktop Shortcut</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Adding a Folder to Favorites</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Removing a Folder from Favorites</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Compressing a Folder</a></li> </ul>
Share	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Creating a Shared Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing Space with a New User</a></li> </ul>
Transcoding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Adding a Folder to the Transcoding Folder</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Canceling or Deleting Transcoding</a></li> </ul>

## Uploading a Folder



### Note

This feature is only available on Google Chrome browsers.

1. Open File Station.
2. Open the destination folder.
3. Click  and then select **Folder**.  
The **Browse for Folder** window opens.
4. Select the folder to upload.  
A confirmation message appears.
5. Select one of the following policies for handling duplicate files.

Option	Description
<b>Rename duplicate files</b>	Upload and rename a file if another file with the same name and extension already exists in the destination folder.
<b>Skip duplicate files</b>	Do not upload a file if another file with the same file name and extension already exists in the destination folder.

<b>Overwrite duplicate files</b>	Upload the file and then overwrite an existing file with the same name and extension in the destination folder.
----------------------------------	---



**Tip**

You can set the selected option as the default policy. File Station will not ask again after remembering the setting. You can change the policy later in **File Station > More Settings > Settings > File Transfer** .

6. Click **OK**.  
File Station uploads the selected folder.

## Uploading a Folder Using Drag and Drop



**Note**

This feature is only available on Google Chrome browsers.


1. Open File Station.
2. Drag and drop the local folder to File Station.
3. Select one of the following policies for handling duplicate files.

Option	Description
<b>Rename duplicate files</b>	Upload and rename a file if another file with the same name and extension already exists in the destination folder.
<b>Skip duplicate files</b>	Do not upload a file if another file with the same file name and extension already exists in the destination folder.
<b>Overwrite duplicate files</b>	Upload the file and then overwrite an existing file with the same name and extension in the destination folder.

4. Click **OK**.  
File Station uploads the selected folder.



## Viewing Folder Properties

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position the mouse pointer inside the folder.</li> <li>b. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>c. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>

Action	Steps
Use the left panel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>


The **Properties** window opens and displays the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Type</b>	Displays the folder type.
<b>Size</b>	Click  to display the folder size and total file count.
<b>File Path</b>	Displays the folder location.
<b>Modified Date</b>	Displays the date that the folder was last modified.
<b>Owner</b>	Displays name of the NAS user who uploaded the folder.
<b>Group</b>	Displays the name of the NAS group that can access the folder.
<b>Storage Pool</b>	Displays the name of the storage pool on which the folder is stored.
<b>WORM</b>	Indicates whether the Write Once Read Many (WORM) feature is enabled for this shared folder.
<b>Compression</b>	Indicates whether compression is enabled for this shared folder.
<b>Deduplication</b>	Indicates whether deduplication is enabled for this shared folder.
<b>SSD cache</b>	Indicates whether SSD cache is enabled for this shared folder.
<b>Fast clone</b>	Indicates whether fast clone is enabled for this shared folder.
<b>View Access Logs</b>	<p>Keeps track of access to the folder.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid orange; padding-left: 10px; margin-left: 20px;">  <b>Tip</b>                      To enable this feature, click <b>Start Logging</b> in <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; System Logs &gt; System Connection Logs</b> .                 </div>
<b>Multimedia Console</b>	Opens Multimedia Console. This allows you to manage multimedia content sources.
<b>Shared Folder</b>	Edits folder properties.
<b>Storage Settings</b>	Opens Storage & Snapshots. This allows you configure storage settings for this shared folder.

4. Click **Close**.

## Viewing Storage Information

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Storage Info</b>.</li> </ol>

Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Storage Info</b>.</li> </ol>
----------------------	--

The **Storage Info** window opens and displays the following information.


Information	Description
Shared folder	Displays the names of shared folders.
Used size	Displays the total storage size currently in use.
Capacity	Displays the total storage capacity of the shared folder.
Free size	Displays the total available storage space in the shared folder.

4. Click **Close**.


## Modifying Folder Permissions

This task requires that you enable advanced folder permissions in **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders > Advanced Permissions** .

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Properties</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Properties** window opens.


4. Click .
5. Enable or disable the following permissions for the owner, group, and other users on the list.

Permission	Description
Read Only	Allows a user to view the folder.
Read/Write	Allows a user to view and make changes to the folder.
Deny	Denies a user any access to the folder



### Tip

You can click + to add users to the list and - to remove users from the list.




6. Optional: Select the access right for guest users.
7. Optional: Specify the ownership of the folder.
  - a. Click .
  - b. Select a user.
  - c. Click **Set**.
8. Optional: Enable one or more of the following settings.
  - Only the owner can delete the contents
  - Only admin can create files and folders
  - Apply changes to files and subfolders
  - Apply and replace all existing permissions
9. Click **Apply**.

### Viewing Qsync Folders

1. Open File Station.
2. On the left panel, click **Qsync**.  
File Station displays the list of team folders shared by other NAS users.

### Managing Share Links

1. Open File Station.
2. On the left panel, click **Share link management**.  
File Station displays the list of shared files and folders.
3. Select an item from the list and then perform one of the following tasks.

Task	Steps
Re-share	Click  and then select one of the following share methods. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder by Email</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder on a Social Network</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder Using Share Links</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Sharing a File or Folder with a NAS User</a></li> </ul>
Stop sharing	Click  .
Copy the link to the clipboard	Click  .

File Station performs the specified task.


## Viewing Files and Folders Shared with Me

1. Open File Station.
2. On the left panel, click **Shared with me**.

File Station lists the files and folders shared with the current account. You can copy, open, or download a selected file or folder.

## Creating a Folder


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the destination folder.
3. Perform one of the following tasks.

Task	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click </li> <li>b. Select <b>Folder</b>. The <b>Create folder</b> window opens.</li> <li>c. Specify the folder name.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click inside the folder and then select <b>Create folder</b>.</li> <li>b. Specify the folder name.</li> <li>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

File Station creates a new folder.

## Copying a Folder

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Copy to/Move to</b> and then select <b>Copy to</b>.</li> <li>d. Select the destination folder.</li> <li>e. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> </ol>





	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Select <b>Copy</b>.</li> <li>c. Go to the destination folder.</li> <li>d. Right-click inside the folder and then select <b>Paste</b>.</li> </ol>
--	--

File Station creates a copy of the selected folder.

## Creating a Desktop Shortcut

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b.  Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Create Shortcut to Desktop</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Create Shortcut to Desktop</b>.</li> </ol>
Drag and Drop	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Drag and drop the folder to the desktop.</li> </ol>

File Station creates a desktop shortcut for the selected folder.





### Tip

Hovering the mouse pointer over a desktop shortcut displays the path of the original folder.

## Adding a Folder to Favorites

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.



Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b.  Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Add to Favorites</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Add to Favorites</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the Favorites button	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> </ol>

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Click  .</li> </ol>
--	--

File Station adds the selected folder to the Favorites folder.

## Removing a Folder from Favorites


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click  .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Remove from Favorites</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Remove from Favorites</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the Favorites button	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click  .</li> </ol>

File Station removes the selected folder from the Favorites folder.

## Compressing a Folder

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click  .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Compress(Zip)</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Compress(Zip)</b>.</li> </ol>

4. Configure the folder compression settings.


Option	Task
Archive name	Specify a name for the compressed file.
Compression level	Select the type of compression method.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal - Standard compression</li> <li>• Maximum compression - Prioritizes compression quality</li> <li>• Fast compression - Prioritizes compression speed</li> </ul>
Archive format	<p>Select the format of file compression.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• zip</li> <li>• 7z</li> </ul>
Update mode	<p>Specify how the files should be updated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add and replace files - Add and replace the specified files.</li> <li>• Update and add files - Update old files and add new files.</li> <li>• Update existing files - Update older versions of existing files.</li> <li>• Synchronize files - Update old files, add new files, and remove files that are no longer in the folder.</li> </ul>

5. Optional: Specify a password to encrypt the file.
6. Click **OK**.  
File Station compresses the selected folder and creates an archive file.

## Deleting a Folder


1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the keyboard	Press <b>Delete</b> .

A confirmation message appears.

4. Specify how to delete the folder.
  - Move to Network Recycle Bin
  - Delete permanently
5. Click **OK**.  
File Station either moves the selected folder to the Recycle Bin or deletes it permanently.

## Creating a Shared Folder

1. Open File Station.
2. On the menu bar, click .
3. Select **Shared Folder**.  
The **Create Shared Folder Wizard** windows opens.
4. Configure the folder settings.


Field	Description
<b>Folder Name</b>	Specify a folder name that contains 1 to 64 characters and that does not: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begin or end with a space</li> <li>• Contain consecutive spaces</li> <li>• End with "."</li> <li>• Begin with "_sn_" or "_sn_bk"</li> <li>• Contain the following characters: " + = / \ :   * ? &lt; &gt; ; [ ] % ` ` ' .</li> </ul>
<b>Comment (optional)</b>	Specify a comment that contains 1 to 128 ASCII characters.
<b>Storage Pool</b>	Specify the storage pool where the shared folder will be created.
<b>Space Allocation</b>	Select one of the following space allocation options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Thick provisioning</b></li> <li>• <b>Thin provisioning</b></li> </ul>
<b>Allocate folder quota</b>	You can allocate a folder quota for the snapshot shared folder.

5. Configure storage settings.

Field	Description
<b>Data reduction</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Compression</b></li> <li>• <b>Deduplication</b></li> </ul>
<b>Performance</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SSD cache</b></li> </ul> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b> You must create and enable SSD cache to select this option</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Fast clone:</b> This option allows you do copy data faster within individual shared folders and LUNs.</li> </ul>
<b>Synchronous I/O</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b></li> <li>• <b>All</b></li> <li>• <b>None</b></li> </ul>
<b>Performance profile (block size)</b>	Select the block size for I/O acceleration.


6. Optional: Configure user access permissions.

- a. Under **Configure access privileges for users**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Specify access permissions for each user.
7. Optional: Enable folder encryption.
- a. Under **Folder Encryption**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select **Encryption**.
  - c. Specify the following information.

Field/Option	Description
<b>Input Password</b>	Specify a password that contains 8 to 32 characters except the following: " \$ : = \
<b>Verify Password</b>	The password must match the previously specified password.
<b>Save encryption key</b>	<p>When enabled, QTS hero automatically unlocks the shared folder after the NAS restarts. When disabled, the administrator must unlock the folder after the NAS restarts.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px;"> <p> <b>Warning</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Saving the encryption key on the NAS can result in unauthorized data access if unauthorized personnel are able to physically access the NAS.</li> <li>If you forget the encryption password, all data will become inaccessible.</li> </ul> </div>


8. Configure WORM settings.
- a. Under **WORM Settings**, click **Edit**.
  - b. Select **WORM**.
  - c. Select one of the following options:
    - Enterprise:** You can write data to the shared folder, but you cannot modify, delete, or restore data in it. You are allowed to remove the shared folder.
    - Compliance:** You can write data to the shared folder, but you cannot modify, delete, or restore data in it. You are not allowed to remove the shared folder. To delete data in the folder, you must remove the folder's parent storage pool.
- When Write Once Read Many (WORM) is enabled, data stored in the shared folder cannot be modified or deleted.
  - WORM cannot be disabled or modified after folder creation.
9. Optional: Configure advanced settings.
- a. Under **Advanced Settings**, click **Edit**.

b. Configure the following settings.


Option	Description
<b>Guest Access Right</b>	Select the permission level assigned to users without a NAS account.
<b>Hide network drive</b>	Selecting this option hides the folder in Windows networks. Users who know the specific path can still access the folder.
<b>Lock File (Oplocks)</b>	Opportunistic lock (Oplocks) is a Windows file locking mechanism that facilitates caching and access control to improve performance. This feature is enabled by default and should only be disabled in networks where multiple users simultaneously access the same files.
<b>SMB Encryption</b>	This option is available only when SMB3 is enabled. Selecting this option encrypts all Microsoft network communication using the SMB3 protocol.
<b>Enable Windows Previous Versions</b>	When enabled, the Previous Versions feature in Windows can be used with the shared folder.
<b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b>	Selecting this option creates a Recycle Bin for this shared folder.
<b>Restrict the access of Recycle Bin to administrators only for now</b>	Selecting this option prevents non-administrator users from recovering or deleting files in the Recycle Bin.   <b>Note</b> This option is available only when <b>Enable Network Recycle Bin</b> is selected.
<b>Enable sync on this shared folder</b>	Selecting this option allows this shared folder to be used with Qsync. This option is only available if Qsync Central is installed on the NAS.
<b>Enable access-based share enumeration (ABSE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the shared folders that they have permission to mount and access. Guest account users must enter a username and password to view shared folders.
<b>Enable access-based enumeration (ABE)</b>	When enabled, users can only see the files and folders that they have permission to access.

10. Click **OK**.  
File Station creates a shared folder.

## Sharing Space with a New User

1. Open File Station.
2. On the menu bar, click .
3. Select **Share space with a user**.  
The **Create a User** window opens.
4. Specify the following information:

Field	Description
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username that contains 1 to 32 characters from any of the following groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A to Z, a to z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0 to 9</li> <li>• Special characters: ~ ! @ # \$ ^ &amp; ( ) - _ . { }</li> </ul>

<b>Password</b>	Specify a password that contains 1 to 64 ASCII characters.
Quota	Specify the storage capacity available to the user.
<b>Phone number (optional)</b>	The information is for your reference and is not used by QuTS hero.
<b>Email (optional)</b>	<p>QuTS hero sends a notification to this email address when the account password is about to expire.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You must configure the related settings in <b>SMTP Server</b> and <b>Change Password</b>. Otherwise, QuTS hero would not send notifications to the specified email address.</li> <li>• <b>SMTP Server:</b> Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Notification &gt; E-mail</b> .</li> <li>• <b>Change Password:</b> Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; System &gt; Security &gt; Password Policy</b> .</li> </ul> </div>
<b>(Optional) Send a notification mail to the newly created user</b>	<p>When selected, QuTS hero sends a message that contains the following information to the specified email address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Username and password</li> <li>• URLs for connecting to the NAS</li> </ul>

- Click **Create**.  
File Station creates a new user account and allocates the specified storage space.


## Adding a Folder to the Transcoding Folder



### Important

Video files cannot be converted to a resolution higher than the original resolution. If a higher resolution is selected, File Station automatically transcodes the file in its original resolution.

- Open File Station.
- Locate the folder.
- Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Add to Transcode</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the file.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Add to Transcode</b>.</li> </ol>

The **Add to Transcode** window opens.

4. Select the transcoding video resolution.


- 240p
- 360p
- 480p SD
- 720p HD
- 1080p FULL HD
- Original resolution
- Only audio

5. Click **OK**.

File Station adds the transcoded files to the @Transcode folder.

### Canceling or Deleting Transcoding

1. Open File Station.
2. Locate the folder.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the folder.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Cancel/Delete Transcoding</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Cancel/Delete Transcoding</b>.</li> </ol>

A confirmation message appears.

4. Click **OK**.

File Station removes the selected folder from the Transcode folder and cancels the transcoding process.

### Locking or Unlocking an Encrypted Shared Folder

After creating an encrypted shared folder, you can lock or unlock this folder to control user access. For details on how to create an encrypted shared folder, see [Creating a Shared Folder](#).



1. Open File Station.
2. Locate an encrypted folder on the left panel.



**Tip**

File Station displays the following icons beside an encrypted shared folder.



Icon	Status
	The encrypted folder is locked.
	The encrypted folder is unlocked.

3. Perform one of the following tasks.

Tasks	Steps
Lock the shared folder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the shared folder.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Lock</b>.</li> </ol>
Unlock the shared folder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click the shared folder. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Unlock</b>.</li> <li>c. Specify the password.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

### Keeping a Folder or a File in Reserved Cache


You can keep the most important or the most frequently used data in the reserved cache to enhance access performance. HybridMount is required for this task.



**Important**











You can only perform this operation for folders in the shared folders mounted via HybridMount. For details on how to use HybridMount and how to mount cloud services, see HybridMount Help.

1. Open File Station.
2. Select a mounted shared folder.
3. Select a folder or file.
4. Choose one of the following methods.

Method	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click .</li> <li>b. Select <b>Always Keep in Reserved Cache</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Right-click the selected item.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Always Keep in Reserved Cache</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

File Station keeps the selected folder or file in the reserved cache.

Folders or files in the reserved cache can have one of the following statuses.

Status Icon	Description
	This file or folder is only stored in the cloud
	File Station is downloading this file or folder.
	File Station has encountered an error when downloading this file or folder.
	File Station has cached and is uploading this file or folder.
	File Station has cached and placed this file or folder in the upload queue.
	File Station has encountered an error when uploading this file or folder.
	This file or folder has been cached and synced and will always be kept in the reserved cache.
	This file or folder has been cached and synced.
	This file or folder has been cached and synced but marked as low priority. When the cache space is insufficient, File Station will remove files or folders that are the least recently accessed.
	This file or folder is ignored and not uploaded to the cloud. File Station ignores and skips temporary system files during the sync process.

## Removing a Folder from Reserved Cache


You can remove folders from the reserved cache.



### Important

You can only perform this operation for folders in the shared folders mounted via HybridMount. For details on how to use HybridMount and how to mount cloud services, see HybridMount Help.

1. Open File Station.
2. Select a mounted shared folder.
3. Locate one or more folders.
4. Choose one of the following methods.

Method	Steps
Use the toolbar	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select one or more folders.</li> <li>b. Click .</li> <li>c. Select <b>Do Not Keep in Reserved Cache</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

Method	Steps
Use the context menu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Select one or more folders.</li><li>b. Right-click the folder.</li><li>c. Select <b>Do Not Keep in Reserved Cache</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li><li>d. Click <b>OK</b>.</li></ol>

## 8. myQNAPcloud

myQNAPcloud is a service that allows you to access, manage, and share files stored on your QNAP devices remotely through the internet.

### Getting Started

1. Create a QNAP ID.  
For details, see [Creating a QNAP ID](#).
2. Add a NAS to myQNAPcloud.  
For details, see [Registering a Device to myQNAPcloud](#).
3. Optional: Configure any of the following settings.

Settings	Description
Port forwarding	Port forwarding allows you to access your device on the internet through a UPnP router. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Port Forwarding</a> .
My DDNS	My DDNS allows you to specify a dedicated myQNAPcloud subdomain name that you can use to access your device on the internet. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring My DDNS Settings</a> .
Published services	You can publish QNAP services on your device, such as the QNAP desktop and File Station, so they can be accessible on myQNAPcloud. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Published Services</a> .
myQNAPcloud Link	myQNAPcloud Link allows you to access your device on the myQNAPcloud website or through mobile apps and client utilities without changing your router settings. Using shared links, you can also simultaneously download and sync files to a remote NAS without needing to first save them to client device. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling myQNAPcloud Link</a> or <a href="#">Installing myQNAPcloud Link</a> .
Access controls	Access controls allow you to configure device access permissions for myQNAPcloud users. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Device Access Controls</a> .
SSL certificates	myQNAPcloud allows you to add SSL certificates to help secure your network communication. You can either download and install a myQNAPcloud or Let's Encrypt certificate. For details, see <a href="#">Installing an SSL Certificate</a> .

### Account Setup

#### Creating a QNAP ID

1. Go to <https://www.myqnapcloud.com>.
2. Click **Sign up**.  
The **Create Account** screen appears.
3. Specify a nickname, a valid email address or phone number, and a password.
4. Read and acknowledge the Terms of Service and Privacy Policy.
5. Click **Sign Up**.  
The **Data Privacy Notice** box appears.
6. Read the notice, and then click **I Agree**.  
myQNAPcloud sends a verification email or message.

7. Confirm the registration.  
Your QNAP ID is activated.



**Tip**

The registration link automatically expires in 15 days. You can go to the [QNAP Account Center](#) to send a new activation email.

## Registering a Device to myQNAPcloud

1. Log on to QuTS hero as administrator.
2. Go to **myQNAPcloud > Overview** .
3. Click **Get Started**.  
The **myQNAPcloud wizard** appears.
4. Click **Start**.
5. Specify your QNAP ID and password.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Specify a device name containing up to 30 alphanumeric characters.  
You may reuse an existing device name. The device currently using this name will be deregistered from myQNAPcloud.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Select the services you want to enable.  
QNAP recommends selecting all services.

Service	Description
<b>Auto Router Configuration</b>	This allows you to configure port forwarding. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Port Forwarding</a> .
<b>DDNS</b>	This allows you to access your device on the internet using a dedicated address. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring My DDNS Settings</a> .
<b>Published Services</b>	This allows you to select which services you want to publish on the myQNAPcloud website. For details, <a href="#">Configuring Published Services</a> .
<b>myQNAPcloud Link</b>	myQNAPcloud Link allows you to access your device on the myQNAPcloud website or through mobile apps and client utilities without changing your router settings. Using shared links, you can also simultaneously download and sync files to a remote NAS without needing to first save them to client device. For details, see <a href="#">Enabling myQNAPcloud Link</a> . If you enable this option and your device does not have myQNAPcloud Link, myQNAPcloud Link will automatically be downloaded and installed after you click <b>Next</b> .

10. Select an access control option.


Option	Description
<b>Public</b>	All users can search for your device and view the published services on the myQNAPcloud website.
<b>Private</b>	Your device will not appear in the search results. Only you can access your device on the myQNAPcloud website.

Option	Description
<b>Customized</b>	Your device will only be visible to you and invited users. Other users will not be able to access your device even with a SmartURL.

11. Click **Next**.  
myQNAPcloud applies your settings.  
The **Summary** screen appears.
12. Review the details, and then click **Finish**.





### Installing myQNAPcloud Link







Only perform this task if you did not enable myQNAPcloud Link when registering your device to your myQNAPcloud account.

1. Log on to QNAP as administrator.
2. Open **App Center**.
3. Click .  
A search box appears.
4. Type `myQNAPcloud Link` and then press `ENTER`.  
The myQNAPcloud Link application appears in the search results list.
5. Click **Install**.  
App Center installs myQNAPcloud Link on your device.

### Overview

The **Overview** screen displays your basic myQNAPcloud settings, as well as the device network connectivity and DDNS status.

Status Icon	Description
	The item is enabled and functioning properly.
	The item is disabled.
	One or more settings need to be configured for the item to function properly.
	There is no network connectivity.

Button	Description
	Click this to view your QNAP ID details.
	Click this to sign out of myQNAPcloud.
	Click this to modify your device name.
	Click this to copy the SmartURL to your clipboard.
	Click this to open the myQNAPcloud FAQ page on your browser.
	Click this to diagnose connection problems.
<b>Test</b>	Click this to test the internet connectivity.

## Configuring Port Forwarding

Port forwarding is only available if your router supports UPnP.

1. Go to **Auto Router Configuration**.
2. Select **Enable UPnP port forwarding**.  
Your device scans for UPnP routers on the network.



**Tip**

If your device cannot locate the router, click **Rescan**. If the issue persists, click **Diagnostics**, and then verify your network configuration or contact QNAP support through **Helpdesk**.

3. Optional: Add a new service to the **Forwarded Services** table.
  - a. Click **Add NAS Service**.  
The **Add NAS Service** window appears.
  - b. Specify a NAS service name that contains 1 to 64 ASCII characters.
  - c. Specify a port number.
  - d. Select an external port setting.
    - **Auto**: myQNAPcloud automatically selects an available external port.
    - **Manual**: You can specify a new port if the current service port is being used by other services.
  - e. Select a protocol.  
If you are unsure about this setting, select **TCP**.
  - f. Click **OK**.
4. In the **Forwarded Services** table, select the services you want to forward.
5. Click **Apply to Router**.



**Tip**

You can go to **Overview** to verify that there are no connectivity errors.

## Configuring My DDNS Settings

1. Open myQNAPcloud.
2. Go to **My DDNS**.
3. Enable **My DDNS**.
4. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Change the myQNAPcloud DDNS domain name	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>here</b>. The <b>Change Device Name Wizard</b> appears.</li> <li>b. Specify a device name containing up to 30 alphanumeric characters.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>

Task	User Action
Update myQNAPcloud	Click <b>Update</b> .
Manually configure the DDNS IP address	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Click here to manually configure your DDNS IP address</b>. The <b>Public IP Address</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Select an option. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Assign a static IP address</b></li> <li>• <b>Obtain an IP address automatically</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>

## Configuring Published Services

1. Open myQNAPcloud.
2. Go to **Published Services**.
3. In the **Publish** column, select all the services you want published. Published services are accessible through the myQNAPcloud website.
4. Optional: In the **Private** column, select all the services you want publish privately. Private services are only available to specified users with the access code.
  - a. Specify an access code containing 6 to 16 alphanumeric characters.
  - b. In the **User Management** table, select the users you want to grant access to. You can select a maximum of 9 users.



### Tip

Click **Add Users** to add users to the list.  
Click **Delete** to remove users from the list.

- c. Optional: Modify user access privileges.

Option	Description
<b>myQNAPcloud Connect (VPN)</b>	Select this option to grant users access to private NAS services when they use the myQNAPcloud Connect utility. Users can download myQNAPcloud Connect from the QNAP Utilities page ( <a href="https://www.qnap.com/en/utilities/essentials">https://www.qnap.com/en/utilities/essentials</a> ).
<b>myQNAPcloud Website</b>	Select this option to grant users access to private NAS services published in the myQNAPcloud website ( <a href="https://www.myqnapcloud.com/">https://www.myqnapcloud.com/</a> ).

5. Click **Apply**.

## Enabling myQNAPcloud Link

1. Open myQNAPcloud.
2. Go to **myQNAPcloud Link**.
3. Enable **myQNAPcloud Link**.







**Tip**  
If there are issues with the connection, click **Reconnect**.

## Configuring Device Access Controls

1. Open myQNAPcloud.
2. Go to **Access Control**.
3. Select an access control option.

Option	Description	User Action
Public	All users can search for your device and view the published services on the myQNAPcloud website.	Select <b>Public</b> .
Private	Your device will not appear in the search results. Only you can access your device on the myQNAPcloud website.	Select <b>Private</b> .
Customized	Your device will only be visible to you and invited users. Other users will not be able to access your device even with a SmartURL	<p><b>a.</b> Select <b>Customized</b>.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Optional: Add a user.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>2. Specify the user's email address or phone number.</li> <li>3. Click .</li> </ol> <p><b>c.</b> Optional: Remove a user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the list of users, identify a user you want to remove.</li> <li>• Click .</li> </ul>

4. Click **Apply**.

## Installing an SSL Certificate



**Important**  
myQNAPcloud SSL web service and Let's Encrypt certificates can only be used with the myqnapcloud domain.

1. Open myQNAPcloud.
2. Go to **SSL Certificate**.
3. Download and install a certificate.

Type	Description	User Action
myQNAPcloud SSL web service certificate	This certificate provides a secure environment for exchanging confidential information online and confirms the identity of your site to employees, business partners, and other users. You can purchase certificates on the myQNAPcloud website.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>myQNAPcloud SSL Certificate</b>, click <b>Download and install</b>. The <b>Download &amp; Install SSL Certificate</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Select a license from the list. A notification appears if you have not yet purchased a myQNAPcloud certificate.</li> </ul>
Let's Encrypt certificate	Let's Encrypt is a free, automated, and open certificate authority that issues domain-validated security certificates. You can install Let's Encrypt certificates with the myQNAPcloud DDNS service. You can choose to automatically renew this certificate before it expires.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Let's Encrypt</b>, click <b>Download and install</b>. The <b>Download &amp; Install SSL Certificate</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Specify a valid email address. This address is required for the Let's Encrypt account registration.</li> <li>c. Optional: Select <b>Automatically renew domain before expiration</b>.</li> </ul>

4. Click **Confirm**.  
myQNAPcloud applies the certificate and displays the details.



**Tip**

To delete the certificate from the device, click **Release** and then **Confirm**.

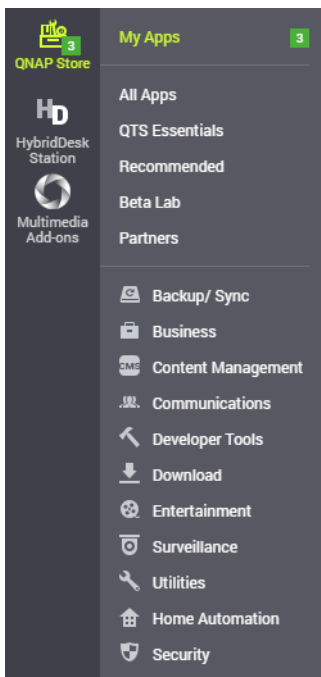
## 9. App Center

App Center is a digital distribution and management platform in QTS hero where you can browse, download, and manage applications and utilities developed for the QNAP NAS.

### Overview

#### Left Panel



The left panel allows you to browse available apps in various categories. You can go to the **My Apps** section to view all your installed apps. App Center displays a badge count to indicate the number of available updates.



### Toolbar



Left side

No.	Element	Possible User Actions
1	View mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the icon to switch between two view modes.</li> <li>Click  and select a view mode.</li> </ul>
2	App sorting	Click  and select an app sorting method.

No.	Element	Possible User Actions
3	Volume information	View the basic volume information and the installation locations of your apps. For more volume information, click <b>Details</b> .

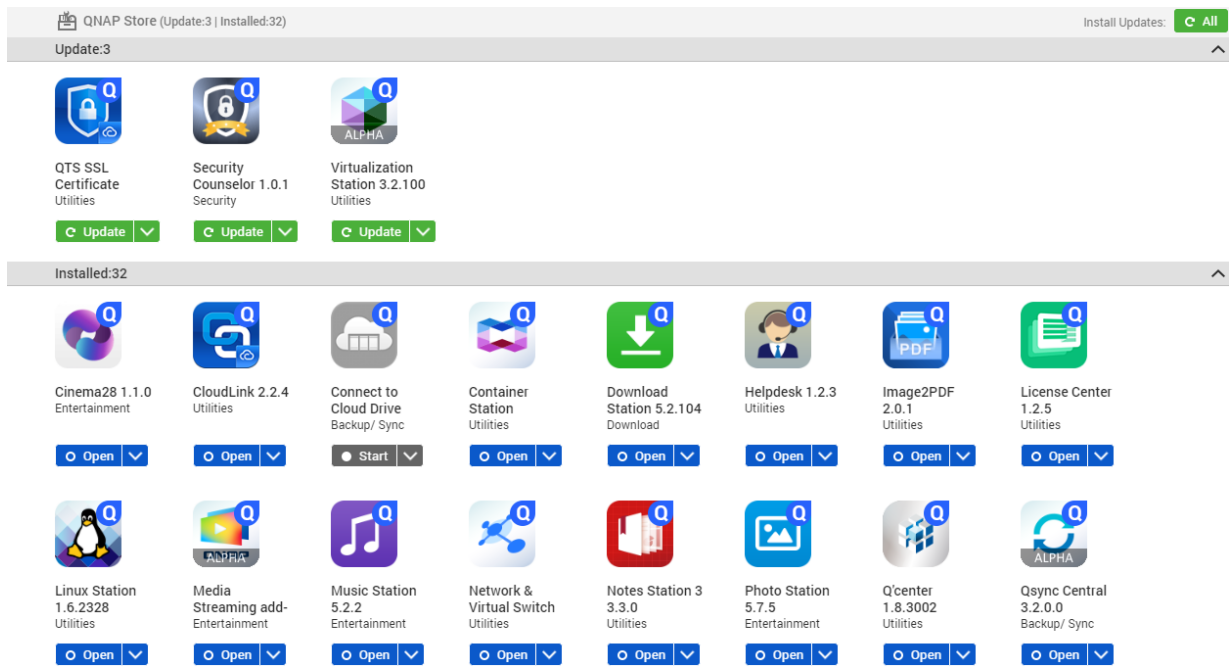


**Right side**

No.	Element	Possible User Actions
1	Search	Specify keywords to search for apps. App Center instantly displays search results based on specified keywords.
2	Refresh	Reload the data in App Center to view the current status of your apps.
3	Manual installation	Manually install an app by uploading an installation package. For details, see <a href="#">Installing an App Manually</a> .
4	Settings	Configure various App Center settings. For details, see <a href="#">App Center Settings</a> .
5	More	View the Quick Start or the Help document for more information about App Center.

**Main Area**

The main area allows you to browse available apps and manage your installed apps. For details, see [App Operations](#).



## App Operations

### Viewing App Information

You can browse apps and view their descriptions in App Center. This helps you decide whether to install or update an app.

1. Open App Center.
2. Locate an app.
3. Click the app icon.  
App Center displays the app information in a new window.
4. Perform one of the following actions.
  - View the app description
  - View the app changelog
  - Go to the QNAP forum
  - Download the app installation package

### Installing an App from App Center



#### Important

Based on the app you choose to install, App Center may display a confirmation message that provides more information and asks for your approval for installation. Certain apps also require you to specify the installation location. Read the message carefully before installing the app.

1. Open App Center.


2. Locate an app.
3. Optional: Click the app icon to view the app information.
4. Click **Install**.

## Installing an App Manually



### Warning

QNAP recommends only installing apps from QTS hero App Center or from the QNAP website. QNAP shall not be held liable for any damages, data loss, or security vulnerabilities resulting from the installation and use of unauthorized apps from untrusted sources.

1. Open App Center.
2. Click  on the toolbar. The **Install Manually** window appears.
3. Click **Browse**.
4. Locate and select the installation package.
5. Click **Install**. A message appears.
6. Depending on the scenario, perform one of the following actions.

Scenario	Actions
The app has a valid digital signature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Read the confirmation message.</li> <li>b. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
The app does not have a valid digital signature, and you enabled the installation of apps without valid digital signatures.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Read the confirmation message.</li> <li>b. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
The app does not have a valid digital signature, and you did not enable the installation of apps without valid digital signatures.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Read the warning message.</li> <li>b. Select <b>I understand the risks and want to install this application</b>.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Install</b>.</li> </ol>



### Tip

For more information on this setting, see [Enabling Installation of Apps without Valid Digital Signatures](#).

App Center installs the application.

## Updating an App

When updates are available for an installed app, App Center moves the app to the **Update** or **Required Update** section based on the importance of updates. You must perform required updates to ensure the functionality, compatibility, and data security of your apps.

1. Open App Center.

2. Locate an app in the **Update** or **Required Update** section.
3. Click **Update** or **Required Update**.  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **OK**.

### Batch Updating Multiple Apps

1. Open App Center.
2. Perform one the following updates.

Updates	Action
Only required updates	Below the toolbar, click <b>Required Update</b> .
All available updates	Below the toolbar, click <b>All</b> .

A confirmation message appears.

3. Click **OK**.

### Enabling or Disabling an App


You can enable or disable non-built-in apps in App Center.



**Note**

Disabling an app may affect the functionality of other apps.


1. Open App Center.
2. Locate an app.
3. Perform one of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Enable the app	Click <b>Start</b> .
Disable the app	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click .</li> <li>b. Select <b>Stop</b>.</li> </ol>

- After an app is enabled, its action button displays **Open**.
- After an app is disabled, its action button displays **Start**.

### Migrating an App

You can migrate an installed app to another volume to better allocate system resources.


1. Open App Center.
2. Locate an app.
3. Click .
4. Select **Migrate to**.

The **App Migration** window appears.

5. Select the destination volume.
6. Click **Migrate**.  
A confirmation message appears.
7. Click **OK**.

## Granting or Denying User Access to an App

QTuS hero administrators can grant or deny user access to apps. The main menu of non-administrator users only display the apps that they have access to.

1. Open App Center.
2. Locate an app.
3. Click .
4. Hover the mouse pointer over **Display on**.
5. Select one of the following options:

- Administrator's main menu



### Note

This is the only available option for many built-in system utilities, which non-administrators cannot be granted access to.


- Every user's main menu
- Every user's main menu and as an app shortcut on the login screen

## Uninstalling an App



### Warning

Uninstalling an app also deletes the related user data.

1. Open App Center.
2. Locate an app.
3. Click .
4. Select **Remove**.  
A confirmation message appears.
5. Click **OK**.


## App Center Settings

### Adding an App Repository

You can add an app repository to enrich the content in App Center. This allows you to download and install apps from third-party sources.


1. Open App Center.



2. Click  on the toolbar.
3. Go to **App Repository**.
4. Click **Add**.  
The **Add** window appears.
5. Specify the following connection information.
  - Name
  - URL
6. Optional: Specify the login credentials.
  - Username
  - Password
7. Click **Add**.

App Center adds the repository to the list. You can select the repository and then click **Edit** to modify its settings or click **Delete** to remove this repository from App Center.

### Configuring App Update Settings

1. Open App Center.
2. Click .
3. Go to **Update**.
4. Select **When updates are available** and then select one of the following options.

Option	Description
<b>Send a notification</b>	QuTS hero sends notification messages when updates are available for your apps. You can click <b>Configure Notification Rule</b> to create rules in Notification Center. For details, see <a href="#">Notification Center</a> .
<b>Install all updates automatically</b>	App Center automatically installs all available updates for your apps. You can select how often App Center should check for available updates.
<b>Install all required updates automatically</b>	App Center automatically installs all required updates for your apps to ensure their functionality, compatibility, and data security. You can select how often App Center should check for required updates.

5. Click **Apply**.

### Digital Signatures

QNAP uses digital signatures to validate apps created by QNAP or QNAP-trusted publishers. The use of digital signatures prevent the unauthorized tampering of apps that may lead to security risks.

A digital signature is considered valid if it meets the following criteria.


- The digital signature has not been tampered with.
- The digital signature has not expired.
- The digital signature is certified by QNAP.

## Enabling Installation of Apps without Valid Digital Signatures



### Warning

A valid digital signature ensures that an application was created by QNAP or a QNAP-trusted publisher. It also ensures that the app has not been maliciously tampered with. Installing apps without valid digital signatures may expose your NAS to security risks. QNAP shall not be held liable for any damages, data loss, or security vulnerabilities resulting from the installation and use of such apps.

1. Open App Center.
2. Click  on the toolbar.  
The **Settings** window appears.
3. Go to **General**.
4. Select **Allow installation of applications without a valid digital signature**.



### Important

App Center does not allow the installation of apps with tampered digital signatures even when this setting is enabled.

5. Click **Apply**.

# 10. Network & Virtual Switch

## About Network & Virtual Switch

Network & Virtual Switch is a QuTS hero utility that centralizes the creation, configuration, and control of network connections. Network & Virtual Switch also manages physical network interfaces, virtual adapters, Wi-Fi, and Thunderbolt connections in addition to controlling DHCP, DDNS, and gateway services.

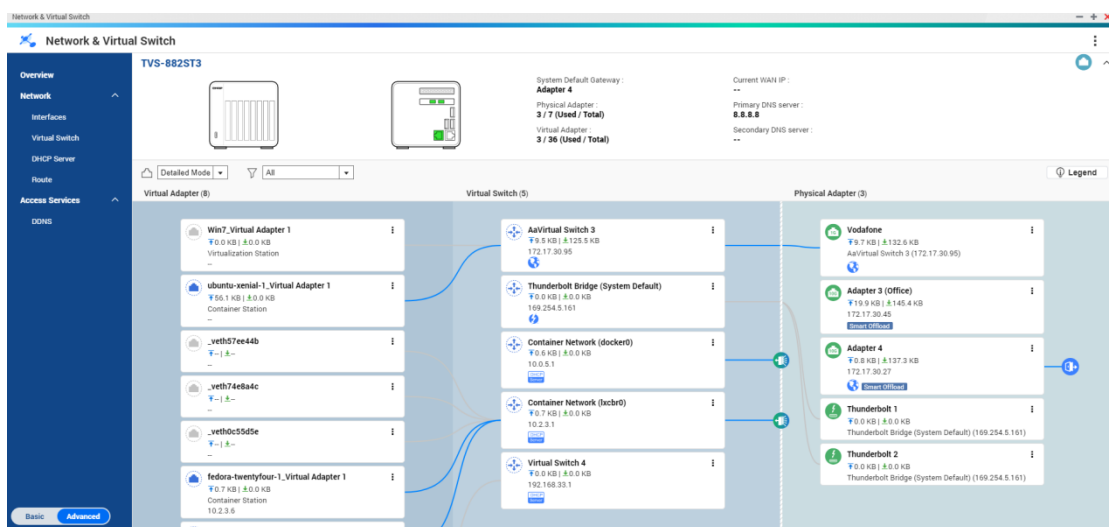
### Basic and Advanced Mode

Network & Virtual Switch features two separate usage modes. Switch between these modes by clicking **Basic** or **Advanced** in the Network & Virtual Switch menu pane.

Mode	Description
Basic	<p>This mode is well-suited for most users, and requires minimal configuration of network settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Virtual Switch functions are disabled.</li> <li>Static Route functions are disabled.</li> </ul>
Advanced	<p>This mode is best-suited for power-users who need more control over the configuration of network settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Virtual Switch functions are enabled.</li> <li>Static Route functions are enabled.</li> </ul>

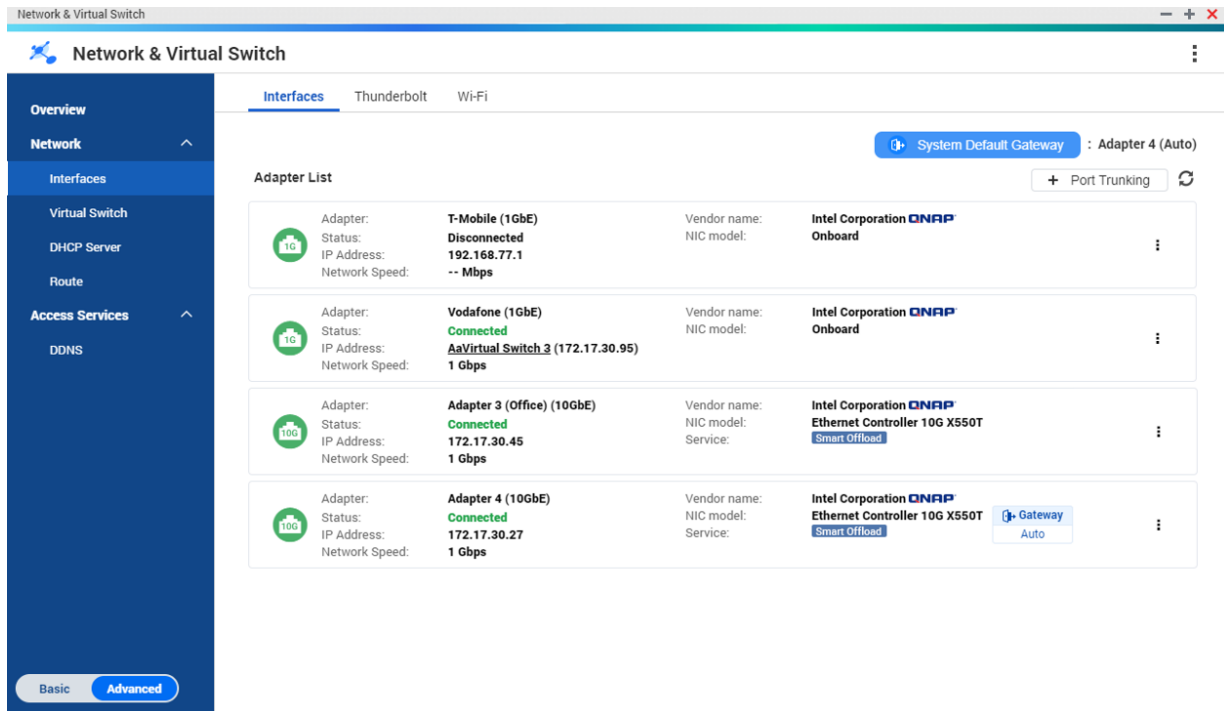
## Overview

This screen provides a general overview of the network topology, IP address, status, and usage information for each device on the network.




## Interfaces

This screen provides access to basic network settings and allows the configuration of physical adapters. This screen also contains settings related to IPv4, IPv6, DNS, port trunking, VLAN, Thunderbolt, USB QuickAccess, and Wi-Fi.






## IP Address

### Configuring IPv4 Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Identify the adapter that you want to configure, then click  > **Configure** .  
The **Configure** window opens.
4. Configure the IPv4 settings.


Setting	Description
Obtain IP address settings automatically via DHCP	If the network supports DHCP, the adapter automatically obtains the IP address and network settings.




Setting	Description
Use static IP address	<p>Manually assign a static IP address. You must specify the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fixed IP Address</li> <li>• Subnet Mask</li> <li>• Default Gateway</li> </ul>
Jumbo Frame	<p>Jumbo Frames are Ethernet frames that are larger than 1500 bytes. They are designed to enhance Ethernet networking throughput, and to reduce CPU usage when transferring large files. QTuS hero supports the following MTU sizes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1500 bytes (default)</li> <li>• 4074 bytes</li> <li>• 7418 bytes</li> <li>• 9000 bytes</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All connected network devices must enable Jumbo Frames and use the same MTU size.</li> <li>• Only certain NAS models support Jumbo Frames.</li> <li>• Using Jumbo Frames requires a network speed of 1000 Mbps or faster.</li> </ul>
Network Speed	<p>Select the network transfer rate allowed by the NAS network environment.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> Selecting <b>Auto-negotiation</b> will automatically detect and set the transfer rate.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> The Network Speed field is automatically set to <b>Auto-negotiation</b> and hidden when configuring 10GbE &amp; 40GbE adapters.</p>

5. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring IPv6 Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .

3. Identify the adapter that you want to configure and then click  > **Configure** .  
The **Configure** window opens.
4. Go to the **IPv6** tab.
5. Configure the IPv6 settings.


Setting	Description
Disable	Do not assign an IPv6 address.
IPv6 Auto-Configuration (Stateful)	<p>The adapter automatically acquires an IPv6 address and DNS settings from the DHCPv6-enabled server.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This option requires an available DHCPv6-enabled server on the network.</p>
IPv6 Auto-Configuration (Stateless)	<p>The adapter automatically acquires an IPv6 address and DNS settings from the router.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This option requires an available IPv6 RA(router advertisement)-enabled router on the network.</p>
Use static IP address	<p>Manually assign a static IP address to the adapter. You must specify the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fixed IP Address</li> <li>• Prefix length</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> Obtain the prefix length information from your network administrator.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default Gateway</li> </ul>

6. Click **Apply**.


## DNS

A Domain Name System (DNS) server translates a domain name into an IP address.

### Configuring DNS Settings

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Identify the adapter that you want to configure, then click  > **Configure** .  
The **Configure** window opens.
4. Go to the **DNS** tab.

5. Select one of the following options:

Setting	Description
Obtain DNS server address automatically	Automatically obtain the IP address using DHCP.
Use the following DNS server address	Manually assign the IP address for the primary and secondary DNS servers.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.

6. Click **Apply**.

## Virtual LANs (VLANs)


A Virtual LAN (VLAN) is a group of hosts which communicate as if they were attached to the same broadcast domain even if they are in different locations. You can use VLANs to increase security and flexibility, while decreasing network latency and load.

### Adding an Interface to a VLAN



**Important**

When using both port trunking and a VLAN, port trunking must be configured first.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Identify the adapter that you want to configure, then click  .
4. Select **Add VLAN**.  
The **Add VLAN** window opens.

- Specify a VLAN ID.



**Important**

The VLAN ID must be between 1 and 4094.

- Specify a description for the VLAN.
- Select one of the following options.

Option	Steps
Automatically obtain the IP address using DHCP	Select <b>Obtain IP address settings automatically via DHCP</b> .
Use a static IP address	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Use static IP address</b></li> <li>Specify a fixed IP address.</li> <li>Select a subnet mask.</li> <li>Specify the default gateway.</li> </ol>

- Click **Apply**.

## Port Trunking

Port trunking combines two or more Ethernet interfaces for increased bandwidth, load balancing and fault tolerance (failover). Load balancing is a feature that distributes workloads evenly across multiple Ethernet interfaces for higher redundancy. Failover ensures that a network connection remains available even if a port fails.

### Configuring Port Trunking



**Important**

Before configuring Port Trunking, ensure at least two network interfaces are connected to the same switch.

- Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
- Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
- Click **Port Trunking**.  
The **Port Trunking** window opens.
- Click **Add**.  
The **Port Trunking (Add)** window opens.
- Select two or more network interfaces to add to the trunking group.
- Click **Next**.
- Select a switch type.
- Click **Next**.
- Select a trunking mode.





**Important**

Some port trunking modes must be supported by your network switches. Selecting an unsupported mode may affect network performance or cause the network interface to freeze.

Mode	Description
Fault Tolerance (Failover)	
Active-Backup	All traffic is sent and received using the interface that was first added to the trunking group. If this primary interface becomes unavailable, the secondary interface will become active.
Broadcast	Transmits the same network packets to all the network interface cards.
Load balancing & Failover	
Balance-tlb	Incoming traffic is received by the current interface. If the interface fails, a slave interface takes over the MAC address of the failed interface. Outgoing traffic is distributed based on the current load for each interface relative to the interface's maximum speed.
Balance-alb	Similar to Balance-tlb, but offers additional load balancing for incoming IPv4 traffic.
Balance-rr	Transmits network packets sequentially to each network interface card in order to distribute the internet traffic among all the NICs.
Balance-xor	Transmits network packets using the Hash algorithm, which selects the same NIC slave for each destination MAC address.
802.3ad dynamic	Uses a complex algorithm to aggregate NICs and configure speed and duplex settings.

10. Click **Apply**.


## System Default Gateway

The system default gateway serves as the network access point for the NAS. By default, all external network traffic will pass through the gateway. A network interface must be specified for the default gateway.

### Configuring the System Default Gateway

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Click **System Default Gateway**.  
The **System Default Gateway** window opens.
4. Configure the system default gateway.

Setting	Description
Auto-select system default gateway	QTuS hero automatically detects all adapter, virtual switch, PPPoE, and VPN connections that can be used to connect to the internet. It selects one of these connections and then sets it as the default gateway.

Setting	Description
Select the system default gateway	<p>Manually assign an adapter to serve as the system default gateway. Optionally, set a backup failover gateway. The failover default gateway field is only available when multiple interfaces are connected.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> When assigning a PPPoE or VPN connection as the default gateway, ensure a stable physical connection is also set as the failover default gateway.</p>

5. Optional: Disable the NCSI service.



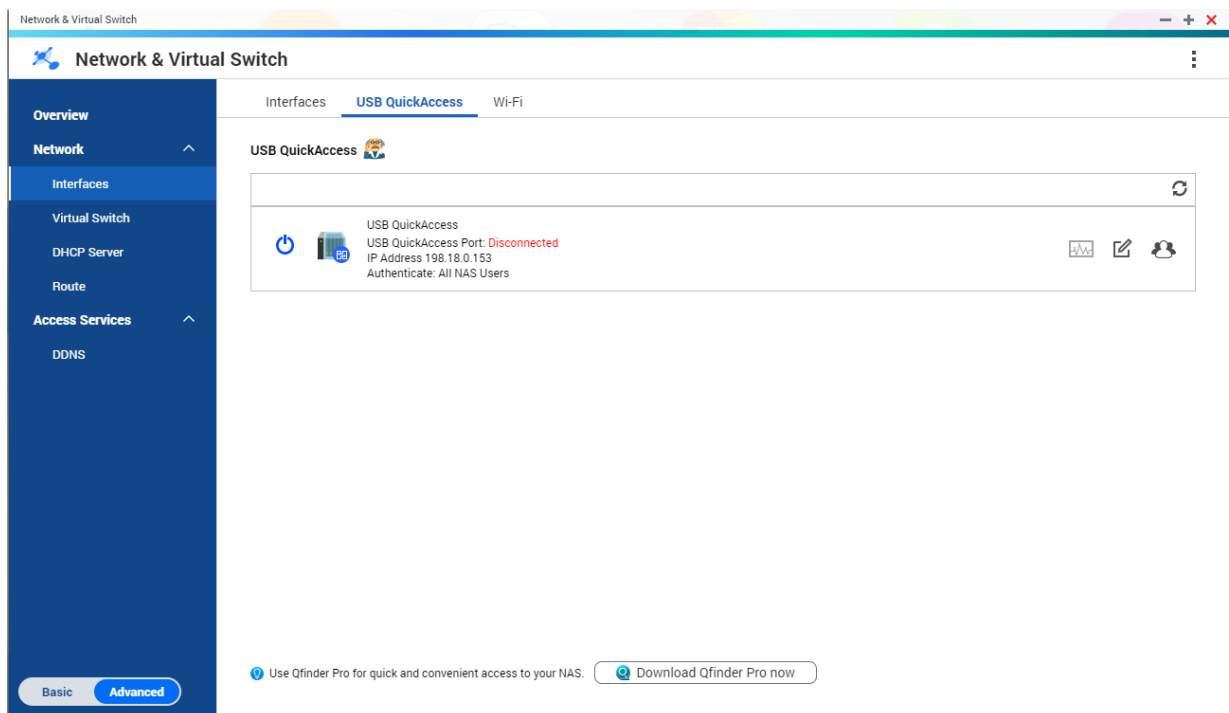
**Tip**

The QuTS hero Network Connectivity Status Indicator (NCSI) periodically performs tests to check the speed and status of NAS network connections.

6. Click **Apply**.

## USB QuickAccess

This screen controls the configuration and management of USB QuickAccess services on the NAS. USB QuickAccess allows a computer to connect to the NAS using a USB cable and the Common Internet File System (CIFS).




**Tip**


- USB QuickAccess is only available on certain models.

- It is not possible to configure, delete, or disable DHCP servers created with USB QuickAccess.


### Enabling USB QuickAccess

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **USB Quick Access** tab.
4. Click  .


### Configuring the USB QuickAccess IP address

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **USB Quick Access** tab.
4. Click  .  
The **Configure** window opens.
5. Enter a static IP Address.
6. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring USB QuickAccess Authentication

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **USB Quick Access** tab.
4. Click  .  
The **Configuration** window opens.
5. Select an authentication method:

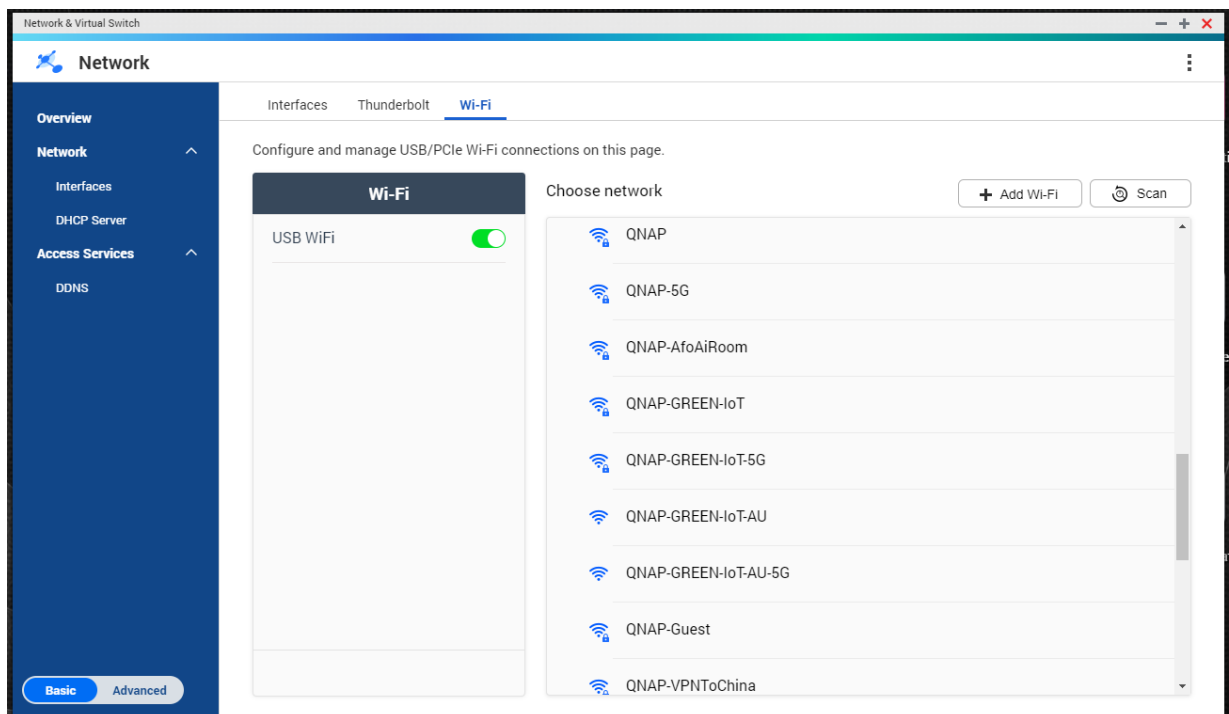
Authentication Method	Description
All NAS Users	A QuTS hero username and password is required to access files.
Everyone	No username or password is required to access files.

Authentication Method	Description
Selected Users/Groups	<p>Administrators can grant access to specific QuTS hero users or groups. A QuTS hero username and password is required to access files.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To grant access to domain users, first set up Domain Security. Go to <b>Control Panel &gt; Privilege &gt; Domain Security</b> .</p>

6. Click **Apply**.

## Wi-Fi


This screen controls the configuration and management of Wi-Fi connections accessible from the NAS.



### Important





- A USB or PCIe Wi-Fi device must be installed to access these features.
  - For a list of compatible USB Wi-Fi dongles, visit <http://www.qnap.com/compatibility>, then select **Search by Devices > USB Wi-Fi** .
  - For a list of compatible PCIe Wi-Fi cards, visit <http://www.qnap.com/compatibility>, then select **Search by Devices > Expansion Card > QNAP** .
- QuTS hero supports the simultaneous use of multiple PCIe Wi-Fi cards, but only one USB Wi-Fi dongle can be in used at a time.

## Enabling Wi-Fi

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **Wi-Fi** tab.
4.  .  
Click .



## Connecting to a Wireless Network

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **Wi-Fi** tab.
4. Optional: Click **Scan** to search for accessible networks.
5. Select a wireless network from the list.

Icon	Description
	The Wi-Fi network requires a password.
	Connect to a Wi-Fi network without a password.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Wi-Fi connection cannot access the internet.</li> <li>• The Wi-Fi connection requires an additional login.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> QuTS hero does not support networks that require an additional login.</p>

The settings panel expands.

6. Click **Connect**.
7. Optional: Configure connection settings.



Setting	Description
Password	Enter the password provided by the network administrator.   <b>Tip</b> Click  to make the password visible.
Connect automatically	Automatically connect to this network whenever it is in range.

Setting	Description
Connect even if hidden	Attempt to connect to this network even if the SSID is hidden.

8. Click **Apply**

### Adding a Wireless Network

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Interfaces** .
3. Go to the **Wi-Fi** tab.
4. Click **Add Wi-Fi**.  
The **Connect to a Wi-Fi network** window opens.
5. Configure connection settings.

Setting	Description
Network Name	Enter the name of the wireless network.
Security Type	Select the encryption used by the wireless network.
Password	Enter the password provided by the network administrator.  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p><b>Tip</b></p> <p>Click  to make the password visible.</p> </div> </div>
Automatically connect when the	Automatically connect to this network whenever it is in range.
Connect even if hidden	Attempt to connect to this network even if the SSID is hidden.

6. Click **Connect**.

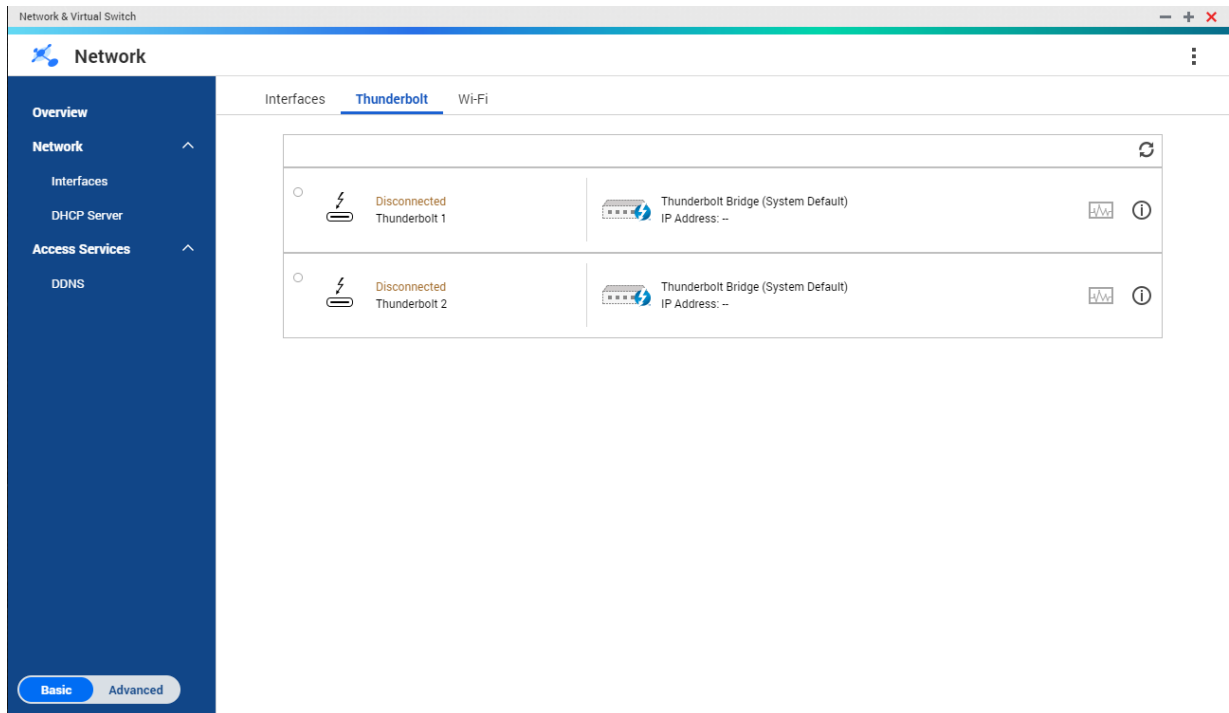
### Connection Messages

Message	Description
Connected	The NAS is currently connected to the Wi-Fi network.
Connecting	The NAS is trying to connect to the Wi-Fi network.
Out of range or hidden SSID	The wireless signal is not available or the SSID is not being broadcast.
Failed to get IP	The NAS is connected to the Wi-Fi network but could not get an IP address from the DHCP server. Check the router settings.
Association failed	The NAS cannot connect to the Wi-Fi network. Check the router settings.
Incorrect key	The entered password is incorrect.

Message	Description
Auto connect	Automatically connect to the Wi-Fi network. This is not supported if the SSID of the Wi-Fi network is hidden.

## Thunderbolt

This screen displays port and connection information related to any Thunderbolt interfaces on the NAS.



## Thunderbolt to Ethernet (T2E)

Thunderbolt to Ethernet functionality allows the Thunderbolt port to act as an Ethernet interface.



**Tip**

QNAP recommends using Qfinder Pro when configuring Thunderbolt to Ethernet.



**Important**

Due to Thunderbolt driver issues, T2E connections using Thunderbolt 2 may have connectivity problems when connecting to Windows. Thunderbolt 3 connections are unaffected.

### Enabling T2E with Qfinder Pro

Qfinder Pro is a utility for Windows, Mac, and Linux that allows you to quickly find and access a QNAP NAS over a LAN.

For the current version of Qfinder Pro, please visit <https://www.qnap.com/utilities>.



**Tip**

Qfinder Pro automatically configures the `/etc/sysctl.conf` settings file on macOS.

1. Open **Qfinder Pro**.
2. Locate the NAS using **Qfinder Pro**.
3. Click the Thunderbolt icon.  
The T2E window opens.
4. Select **Enable T2E**.
5. Click **Apply**.

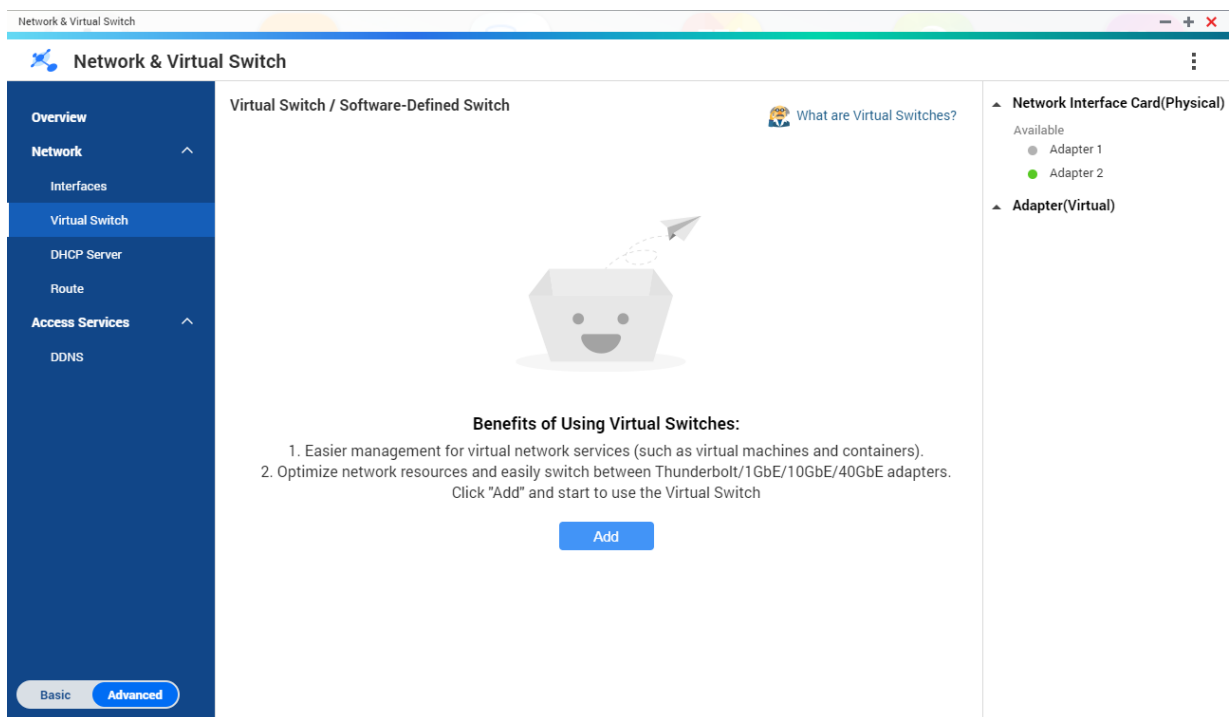
### Enabling T2E on macOS

1. Open the Terminal.
2. Run the command.

Command	Notes
<code>sudo sysctl net.inet.tcp.path_mtu_discovery=0 &amp;&amp; sudo sysctl net.inet.tcp.tso=0</code>	This command will only temporarily enable T2E. Restarting the Mac will delete the connection.
<code>sudo bash -c 'printf "#QNAP\n\nnet.inet.tcp.path_mtu_discovery=0\nnet.inet.tcp.tso=0\n#QNAP\n" &gt;&gt; /etc/sysctl.conf'</code>	This command will permanently apply these settings.


### Virtual Switches

This screen controls the configuration and management of virtual switches running on the NAS. Virtual Switches allow physical interfaces and virtual adapters to communicate with each other.



QuTS hero supports three different virtual switch modes.



Mode	Description
Basic	This mode is well-suited for most users, and requires minimal configuration of network settings.
Advanced	This mode is best-suited for power-users who need more control over the configuration of network settings.
Software-Defined Switch	<p>This mode is suited for power-users who need to simulate an L2 physical switch.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <p><b>Important</b> Packet forwarding rates are limited when using this mode.</p> </div>



**Tip**

To access this page, Network & Virtual Switch must be operating in [Advanced Mode](#).

### Creating a Virtual Switch in Basic Mode

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Virtual Switch** .
3. Click **Add**.  
The **Create a Virtual Switch** window opens.
4. Select **Basic Mode**.
5. Select one or more adapters.
6. Optional: Select **Enable the Spanning Tree Protocol**.



**Tip**

Enabling this setting prevents bridge loops.

7. Click **Apply**.

### Creating a Virtual Switch in Advanced Mode



1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Virtual Switch** .
3. Click **Add**.  
The **Create a Virtual Switch** window opens.
4. Select **Advanced Mode**.
5. Select one or more adapters.
6. Optional: Select **Enable the Spanning Tree Protocol**.



**Tip**

Enabling this setting prevents bridge loops.

7. Click **Next**.
8. Configure the virtual switch IP address.

Address Type	Description
DHCP Client	Assigns a dynamic IP address to the virtual switch.
Static IP	Assigns a static IP address to the virtual switch. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip</b>                      Examine your network setup for guidance on how to best configure these settings.                 </div>
Do not assign IP Addresses	Does not assign an IP address to the virtual switch after creation. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip</b>                      This setting should be used when creating a virtual switch for special purposes, such as when building an external or isolated network.                 </div>

9. Click **Next**.
10. Configure the virtual switch services.
  - a. Enable the NAT service.



**Important**






- The virtual switch must be configured with a static IP address. The IP address cannot be within the subnet of an interface that is currently in use.
- The IP address of the virtual switch cannot be in a reserved range that doesn't support forwarding:
  - 127.xxx.xxx.xxx
  - 169.254..xxx.xxx
  - 192.0.2.xxx
  - 198.51.100.xxx
  - 203.0.113.xxx

- b. Optional: Enable the DHCP Server.



**Important**




- The virtual switch must be configured with a static IP address. The IP address cannot be within the subnet of an interface that is currently in use.
- To avoid IP address conflicts, do not enable DHCP server if there is another DHCP server running on the local network.

Setting	Description
Start IP Address	Specify the starting IP address in a range allocated to DHCP clients.
End IP Address	Specify the ending IP addresses in a range allocated to DHCP clients.
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask used to subdivide your IP address.
Lease Time	Specify the length of time that an IP address is reserved for a DHCP client. The IP address is made available to other clients when the lease expires.
Default Gateway	Specify the IP address of the default gateway for the DHCP server.
Primary DNS Server	Specify a DNS server for the DHCP server.
Secondary DNS Server	Specify a secondary DNS server for the DHCP server.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.
WINS Server	Specify the WINS server IP address.   <b>Tip</b> Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS ) converts computer names (NetBIOS names) to IP addresses, allowing Windows computers on a network to easily find and communicate with each other.
DNS Suffix	Specify the DNS suffix.   <b>Tip</b> The DNS suffix is used for resolving unqualified or incomplete host names.
TFTP Server	Specify the public IP address for the TFTP server.   <b>Tip</b> QuTS hero supports both PXE and remote booting of devices
Boot File	Specify location and file name of the TFTP server boot file.   <b>Tip</b> QuTS hero supports both PXE and remote booting of devices

11. Click **Next**.


12. Configure the virtual switch IPv6 address.

Setting	Description
Disable	Do not assign an IPv6 address.

Setting	Description
IPv6 Auto-Configuration (Stateful)	<p>The adapter automatically acquires an IPv6 address and DNS settings from the DHCPv6-enabled server.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This option requires an available DHCPv6-enabled server on the network.</p>
IPv6 Auto-Configuration (Stateless)	<p>The adapter automatically acquires an IPv6 address and DNS settings from the router.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This option requires an available IPv6 RA(router advertisement)-enabled router on the network.</p>
Use static IP address	<p>Manually assign a static IP address. You must specify the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fixed IP Address</li> <li>• Prefix length</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> Obtain the prefix length information from your network administrator.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default Gateway</li> </ul>

13. Click **Next**.

14. Configure the DNS settings.

Setting	Description
Obtain DNS server address automatically	Automatically obtain the DNS server address using DHCP.
Use the following DNS server address	<p>Manually assign the IP address for the primary and secondary DNS servers.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.</p>

15. Click **Next**.

16. Confirm the virtual switch settings.

17. Click **Apply**.

## Creating a Virtual Switch in Software-defined Switch Mode



### Important

To avoid bridge loops, please ensure any Ethernet cables are connected to the same switch before configuring a Software-defined Switch.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .

The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.

2. Go to **Network > Virtual Switch**.
3. Click **Add**.  
The **Create a Virtual Switch** window opens.
4. Select **Software-defined Switch Mode**.
5. Select one or more adapters.
6. Optional: Select **Enable the Spanning Tree Protocol**.



### Tip

Enabling this setting prevents bridge loops.

7. Click **Apply**.

## DHCP Server

This screen controls the creation and management of Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) servers. DHCP servers can assign IPv4 addresses to clients on the network, while RADVD servers assign IPv6 addresses.

	Status	Adapter	IP Address	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Actions
<input type="checkbox"/>		USB QuickAccess	198.18.0.153	198.18.0.154	198.18.0.154	



### Important

Do not create a new DHCP server if one already exists on the network. Enabling multiple DHCP servers on the same network can cause IP address conflicts or network access errors.

## Creating a DHCP Server

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > DHCP Server** .
3. Click **Add**.  
The **DHCP Server** window opens.
4. Select an interface.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the network environment for the DHCP server.

Option	Description
Enable DHCP server on the current network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The adapter keeps the existing IP address and subnet mask.</li> <li>• The DHCP server shares the subnet mask with the adapter and is assigned the next available IP address.</li> </ul>
Reassign an IP address to the adapter and enable a DHCP server on a new subnet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The adapter is assigned a new IP address and subnet mask.</li> <li>• The DHCP server uses a different subnet mask and IP address.</li> </ul>
Enable DHCP server for another subnet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The adapter keeps the existing IP address and subnet mask.</li> <li>• The DHCP server uses a different subnet mask and IP address.</li> </ul>


7. Click **Next**.
8. Configure a static IP address for the adapter.






### Important

A static IP address must be configured when creating a DHCP server.

- a. Click **Yes**.
- b. Configure IP address settings.






Setting	Description
Fixed IP Address	Specify a fixed IP address.   <b>Tip</b> Examine your network setup for guidance on how to best configure these settings.
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask used to subdivide your IP address.

Setting	Description
Default Gateway	Specify the IP address of the default gateway for the adapter.
Jumbo Frame	<p>Jumbo Frames are Ethernet frames that are larger than 1500 bytes. They are designed to enhance Ethernet networking throughput, and to reduce CPU usage when transferring large files. QTuS hero supports the following Jumbo Frame sizes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1500 bytes (default)</li> <li>• 4074 bytes</li> <li>• 7418 bytes</li> <li>• 9000 bytes</li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Jumbo Frames are only supported by certain NAS models.</li> <li>• Using Jumbo Frames requires a network speed of 1000 Mbps or faster. All connected network devices must enable Jumbo Frames and use the same MTU size.</li> </ul>
Network Speed	<p>Specify the speed at which the adapter will operate.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> <b>Auto-negotiation</b> will automatically detect and set the transfer rate.</p>
Primary DNS Server	Assign an IP address for the primary DNS server.
Secondary DNS server	<p>Assign an IP address for the secondary DNS server.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.</p>

c. Click **Next**.

9. Configure DHCP settings.

Setting	Description
Start IP Address	Specify the starting IP address in a range allocated to DHCP clients.
End IP Address	Specify the ending IP addresses in a range allocated to DHCP clients.
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask used to subdivide your IP address.
Lease Time	Specify the length of time that an IP address is reserved for a DHCP client. The IP address is made available to other clients when the lease expires.

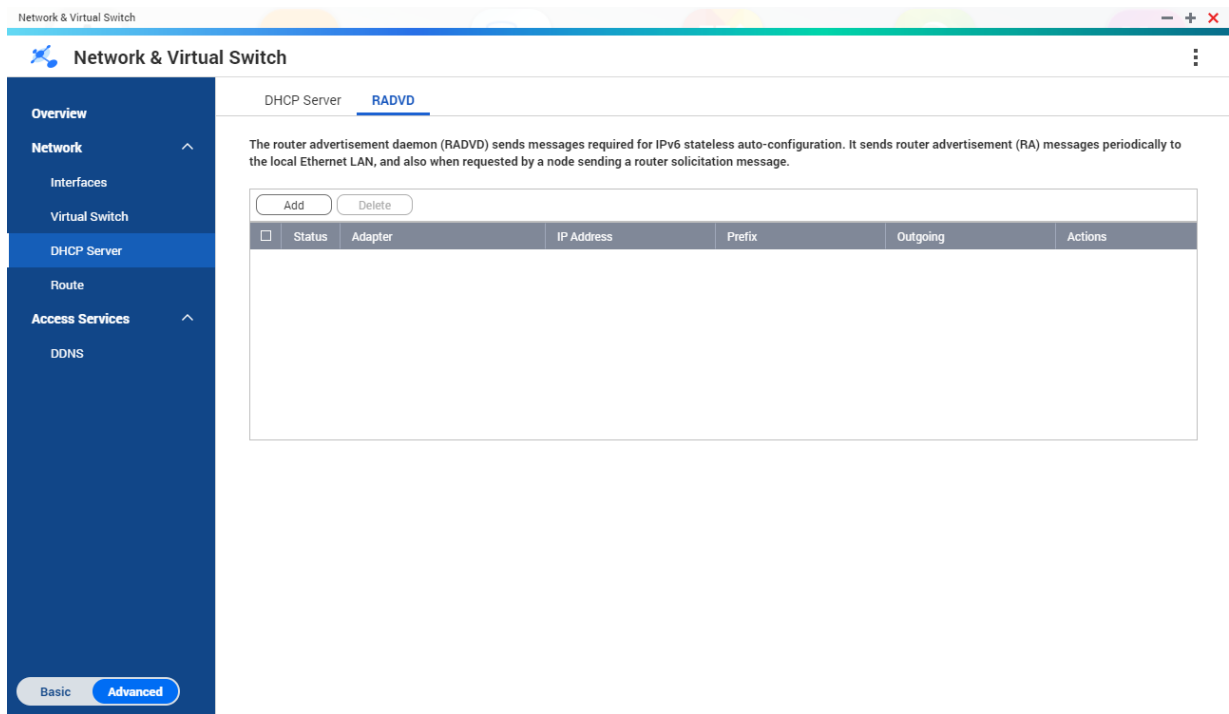
Setting	Description
Default Gateway	Specify the IP address of the default gateway for the DHCP server.
Primary DNS Server	Specify a DNS server for the DHCP server.
Secondary DNS Server	Specify a secondary DNS server for the DHCP server.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.
WINS Server	Specify the WINS server IP address.   <b>Tip</b> Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) converts computer names (NetBIOS names) to IP addresses, allowing Windows computers on a network to easily find and communicate with each other.
DNS Suffix	Specify the DNS suffix.   <b>Tip</b> The DNS suffix is used for resolving unqualified or incomplete host names.
TFTP Server	Specify the public IP address for the TFTP server.   <b>Tip</b> QuTS hero supports both PXE and remote booting of devices
Boot File	Specify location and file name of the TFTP server boot file.   <b>Tip</b> QuTS hero supports both PXE and remote booting of devices

10. Click **Apply**.

## RADVD


This screen controls the creation and management of Router Advertisement Daemon (RADVD) servers. This service sends messages required for IPv6 stateless auto-configuration. This service periodically sends router advertisement (RA) messages to devices on the local network, and can also send a router solicitation messages when requested from a connected node.








### Creating an RADVD Server

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & File Services > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > DHCP Server** .
3. Go to the **RADVD** tab.
4. Click **Add**.  
The **RADVD - Outgoing Interface** window opens.
5. Select the outgoing interface.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Configure a static IP address for the adapter.

 **Important**  
A static IP address must be configured when creating a RADVD server.

- a. Click **Yes**.
- b. Optional: Configure Static IP address settings.

Setting	Description
Fixed IP Address	Specify a fixed IP address.   <b>Tip</b> Examine your network setup for guidance on how to best configure these settings.

Setting	Description
Prefix Length	Specify the prefix length for the adapter.   <b>Tip</b> Obtain the prefix and the prefix length information from your ISP.
Default Gateway	Specify the IP address of the default gateway for the DHCP server.
Primary DNS Server	Assign an IP address for the primary DNS server.
Secondary DNS server	Assign an IP address for the secondary DNS server.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.

c. Click **Next**.

8. Select a second adapter for the RADVD service interface.

9. Click **Next**.

10. Optional: Configure a static IP address for the second RADVD adapter.






**Important**

Creating an RADVD interface requires that the adapter use a static IP address. If the adapter already uses a static IP address, skip this step.




a. Click **Yes**.

b. Configure Static IP address settings.

Setting	Description
Fixed IP Address	Specify a fixed IP address.   <b>Tip</b> Examine your network setup for guidance on how to best configure these settings.
Prefix Length	Specify the prefix length for the adapter.   <b>Tip</b> Obtain the prefix and the prefix length information from your ISP.
Default Gateway	Specify the IP address of the default gateway for the adapter.
Primary DNS Server	Specify the DNS server address.
Secondary DNS server	Specify the DNS server address.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.

c. Click **Apply**.

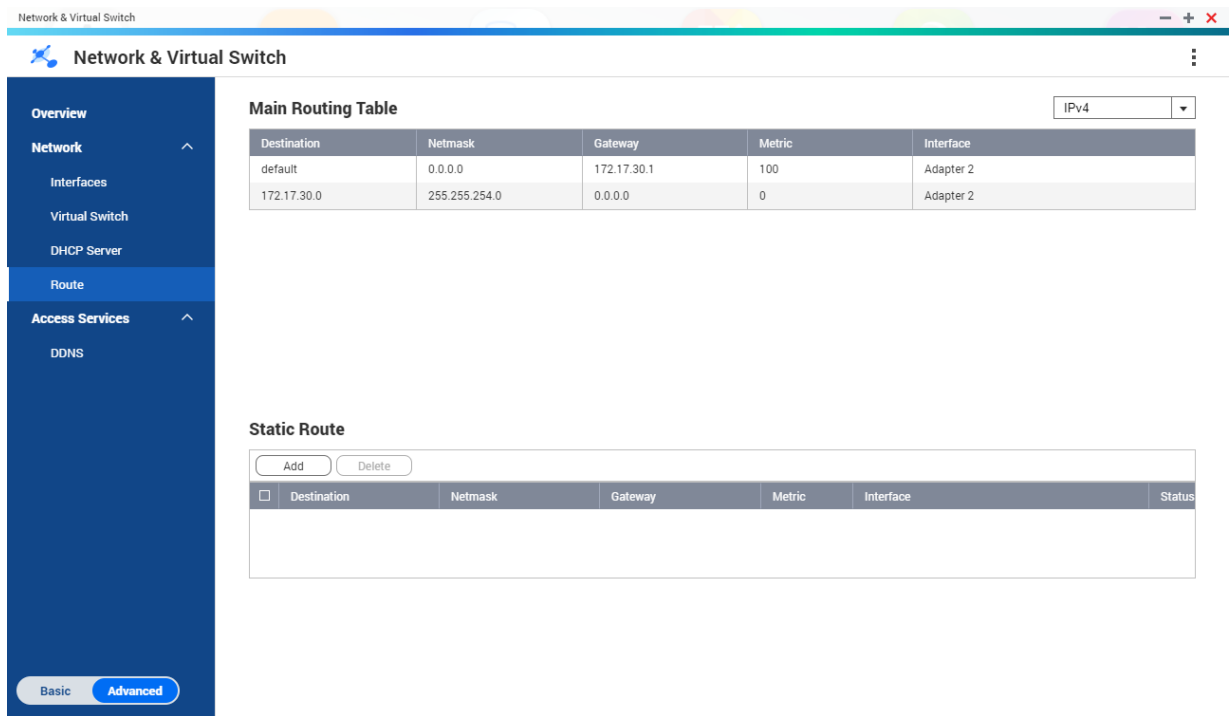
**11. Configure the RADVD server settings.**

Setting	Description
Prefix	Specify the routing prefix for the adapter.   <b>Tip</b> Examine your network setup for guidance on how to best configure these settings.
Prefix Length	Specify the prefix length for the adapter.   <b>Tip</b> Obtain the prefix and the prefix length information from your ISP.
Lease Time	Specify the length of time that an IP address is reserved for a DHCP client. The IP address is made available to other clients when the lease expires.
Primary DNS Server	Specify the DNS server address.
Secondary DNS server	Specify the DNS server address.   <b>Important</b> QNAP recommends specifying at least one DNS server to allow URL lookups.

**12. Click Apply.**

**Route**

This screen controls the creation of static routes. Under normal circumstances, QuTS hero automatically obtains routing information after it has been configured for Internet access. Static routes are only required in special circumstances, such as having multiple IP subnets located on your network.



## Creating a Static Route

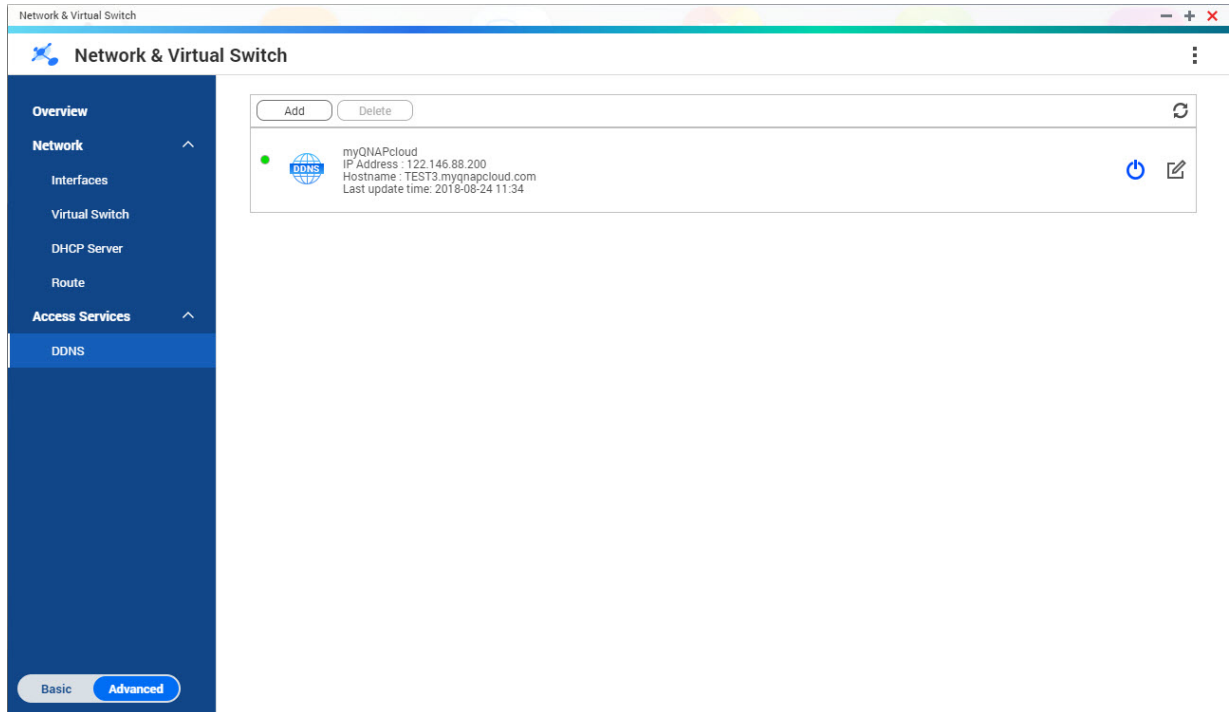
1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > Route** .
3. Click **Add**.  
The **Static Route (IPv4)** window opens.
4. Configure the IP address settings.

Setting	Description
Destination	Specify a static IP address where connections are routed to.
Netmask	Specify the IP address of the destination's netmask.
Gateway	Specify the IP address of the destination's gateway.
Metric	Specify the number of nodes that the route will pass through.  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div> <p><b>Note</b> Metrics are cost values used by routers to determine the best path to a destination network.</p> </div> </div>
Interface	Select the interface that connections should be routed through.

5. Click **Apply**.

## DDNS

This screen controls the management of Dynamic Domain Name System (DDNS) services. DDNS allows access to the NAS from the internet using a domain name rather than an IP address.



### Adding a DDNS Service

1. Go to **Control Panel > Network & Virtual Switch** .  
The **Network & Virtual Switch** window opens.
2. Go to **Network > DDNS** .
3. Click **Add**.  
The **DDNS (Add)** window opens.
4. Configure the DDNS settings.

Setting	Description
Select DDNS server	Select the DDNS service provider.
Username	Specify the username for the DDNS service.
Password	Specify the password for the DDNS service.
Hostname	Specify the hostname or domain name for the DDNS service.
Check the External IP Address	Specify how often to update the DDNS record.

5. Click **Apply**.

## 11. iSCSI & Fibre Channel

iSCSI & Fibre Channel is a QuTS hero utility that enables you to configure iSCSI and Fibre Channel storage settings on your NAS.

### Storage Limits

#### iSCSI Storage Limits


iSCSI Storage Limit	Maximum
iSCSI LUNs and targets per NAS	255 (combined)
Connections per iSCSI session	8
iSCSI sessions per target	The maximum number of sessions is determined by available NAS CPU resources, memory, and network bandwidth.
iSCSI sessions per NAS	The maximum number of sessions is determined by available NAS CPU resources, memory, and network bandwidth.

#### Fibre Channel Storage Limits

Fibre Channel Storage Limit	Maximum
Fibre Channel ports + port groups	256 (combined)
WWPN aliases	256
LUN masking rules	256
Port binding rules	256
LUNs mapped to 1 Fibre Channel port	256

#### iSCSI & Fibre Channel Global Settings

You can access global settings by clicking  in the **iSCSI & Fibre Channel** window.


Setting	Description
Enable iSCSI and Fibre Channel services	Enable these services to use iSCSI and Fibre Channel on your NAS.
iSCSI service port	View and modify the port that iSCSI initiators connect to.   <b>Tip</b> The default port is 3260.
Enable iSNS	SNS enables the automatic discovery and management of iSCSI initiators and targets within a TCP/IP network. <b>iSNS server IP:</b> Specify the IP address of the iSNS server.




## Creating a Block-Based LUN

1. Go to one of the following screens.
  - **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage**
  - **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC Storage**
2. Click **Create**, and then select **New Block-Based LUN**.  
The **Create LUN** window opens.
3. Specify a LUN name
  - Length: 1 to 32 characters
  - Valid characters: 0-9, a-z, A-Z, underscore (\_)
4. Select the storage pool that this LUN will be created in.
5. Select a provisioning type.

Provisioning Type	Description
Thick provisioning	QuTS hero allocates storage pool space when creating the LUN. This space is guaranteed to be available later.
Thin provisioning	QuTS hero allocates storage pool space only when needed, such as when data is being written to the LUN. This ensures efficient use of space but there is no guarantee that space will be available.

6. Specify a LUN capacity.  
Specify the maximum capacity of the LUN. The maximum capacity depends on the LUN allocation method:
  - Thick provisioning: Equal to the amount of free space in the parent storage pool.
  - Thin provisioning: 1 PB
7. Optional: Configure the following LUN settings.

Setting	Description
Compression	<p>QuTS hero compresses the data in the LUN to reduce the size of stored data. Enabling compression also reduces the total number of blocks that QuTS hero needs to read and write, increasing read and write speeds.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;">  <div> <p><b>Tip</b> New shared folders and LUNs have compression enabled by default. Compression does not impact read/write and processor performance on ZFS filesystems. Only disable this setting when necessary.</p> </div> </div>

Setting	Description
Deduplication	<p>QuTS hero eliminates duplicate copies of data to reduce the required amount of storage space.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> To enable deduplication your NAS must have at least 8 GB of memory.</p>
Alert threshold	<p>QuTS hero issues a warning notification when the percentage of used LUN space is equal to or above the specified threshold.</p>
SSD Cache	<p>The SSD cache will be used to improve LUN access performance.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> This setting is only available when the SSD cache is enabled.</p>
Fast clone	<p>Fast Clone enables QuTS hero to create copies of files faster. It also saves storage space by modifying file metadata, allowing original and copied files to share the same data blocks.</p> <p> <b>Important</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fast Clone only works when the copied file is created in the LUN containing the original file.</li> <li>• Fast Clone does not improve the speed of snapshot restoration operations such as restoring files from a snapshot, snapshot revert, and snapshot clone.</li> </ul>
Synchronous I/O	<p>Select the ZFS Intent Log (ZIL) sync setting to improve either data consistency or performance. There are three options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto (Default): QuTS hero uses synchronous I/O or asynchronous I/O based on the application and the type of I/O request.</li> <li>• All: All I/O transactions are treated as synchronous and are always written and flushed to a non-volatile storage (such as a SSD or HDD). This option gives the best data consistency, but might have a slight impact on performance.</li> <li>• None: All I/O transactions are treated as asynchronous. This option gives the highest performance, but has a higher risk of data loss in the event of a power outage. Ensure that a UPS (uninterrupted power supply) is installed when using this option.</li> </ul>
Performance profile (block size)	<p>Specify the block size of the LUN.</p>

**8. Optional: Select Map LUN to an iSCSI target or FC port group**

If selected, the **Edit LUN Mapping** wizard appears after QuTS hero has finished creating the LUN.

**9. Click Create**

**10. Optional: Map the LUN to an iSCSI target or Fibre Channel port group.**

For details, see the following topics:

- [Mapping a LUN to an iSCSI Target](#)



- [Mapping a LUN to a Fibre Channel Port Group](#)

## iSCSI

iSCSI enables computers, servers, other NAS devices, and virtual machines to access NAS storage in the form of LUNs over a TCP/IP network. Hosts can partition, format, and use the LUNs as if they were local disks.

### Getting Started with iSCSI

1. Create an iSCSI target on the NAS.  
For details, see [Creating an iSCSI Target](#).
2. Create a LUN on the NAS.  
A LUN is a portion of storage space. LUNs are created from storage pool space.  
For more information, see [Creating a Block-Based LUN](#)
3. Map the LUN to the iSCSI target.  
Multiple LUNs can be mapped to one target.  
For details, see [Mapping a LUN to an iSCSI Target](#).
4. Install an iSCSI initiator application or driver on the host.  
The host is the service, computer, or NAS device that will access the LUN.
5. Connect the iSCSI initiator to the iSCSI target on the NAS.



#### Warning

To prevent data corruption, multiple iSCSI initiators should not connect to the same LUN simultaneously.

The LUNs mapped to the iSCSI target appear as disks on the host.

6. In the host OS, format the disks.

### iSCSI Performance Optimization

You can optimize the performance of iSCSI by following one or more of these guidelines:

- Use thick provisioning (instant allocation). Thick provisioning gives slightly better read and write performance than thin provisioning.
- Create multiple LUNs, one for each processor thread on the NAS. For example, if the NAS has four processor threads, then you should create four or more LUNs.



#### Tip

Go to **Control Panel > System > System Status > System Information > CPU** to view the number of processor threads.

- Use separate LUNs for different applications. For example, when creating two virtual machines which intensively read and write data, you should create one LUN for each VM to distribute the load.
- You can use iSER (iSCSI Extensions for RDMA) for faster data transfers between QNAP NAS devices and VMware ESXi servers. Enabling iSER requires a compatible network card and switch. For a list of compatible network devices, see <https://www.qnap.com/solution/iser>.

## iSCSI Storage

The **iSCSI Storage** screens allows you to view iSCSI targets. On this screen you can enable, disable, and edit targets, view each target's mapped LUNs, edit LUN mappings, take snapshots of LUNs, and configure the iSCSI access control list (ACL).

### iSCSI LUNs

#### Mapping a LUN to an iSCSI Target

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Select a LUN.



**Tip**

Double-click an iSCSI target to view all of its mapped LUNs.

3. Optional: If the LUN is already mapped to a target, disable the LUN.
  - a. Click **Action**, and then select **Disable**  
A confirmation message appears.
  - b. Click **OK**.  
QuTS hero disables the LUN.
4. Click **Action**, and then select **Edit LUN Mapping**.  
The **Edit LUN Mapping** window opens.
5. Select **Map to iSCSI target**.
6. Select an iSCSI target.
7. Optional: Select **Enable LUN**.  
If selected, QuTS hero will enable the LUN after mapping it to the target.
8. Click **OK**.

#### iSCSI LUN Actions

LUN Action	Description
Disable	Disable the LUN. The LUN will become inaccessible to connected iSCSI initiators.
Enable	Enable a disabled LUN.
Modify	Edit the LUN settings.
Delete	<p>Delete the LUN and all data stored on it.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <p><b>Important</b> This action is only available if the LUN is unmapped.</p> </div>
Edit LUN Mapping	<p>Unmap the LUN, or map it to a different iSCSI target or Fibre Channel Port group. For details, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Mapping a LUN to a Fibre Channel Port Group</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Mapping a LUN to an iSCSI Target</a></li> </ul>

LUN Action	Description
Show in Storage & Snapshots	Manage the LUN at <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Storage &gt; Storage/Snapshots</b>
LUN Import/Export	Export the LUN to another server, a local NAS folder, or an external storage device. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a LUN Export Job</a> .

### iSCSI LUN Status

Status	Description
Enabled	The LUN is active and visible to connected initiators.
Disabled	The LUN is inactive and invisible to connected initiators.

### iSCSI Targets

#### Creating an iSCSI Target

- Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
- Click **Create**, and then select **New iSCSI Target**.  
The **iSCSI Target Creation Wizard** window opens.
- Click **Next**.
- Specify a target name.  
QuTS hero appends the specified name to the iSCSI qualified name (IQN). IQNs are unique names used to identify targets and initiators.
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z
  - Length: 1 to 16 characters
- Optional: Specify a target alias.  
An alias enables you to identify the target more easily on the initiator.
  - Length: 1 to 32 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, underscore (\_), hyphen (-), space ( )
- Optional: Select **Allow clustered access to this target**.  
When enabled, multiple iSCSI initiators can access this target and its LUNs simultaneously.



#### Warning

To prevent data corruption, the initiators and LUN filesystems must all be cluster-aware.

- Optional: Enable CRC checksums.  
Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.

Checksum Type	Description
Data Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.

Checksum Type	Description
Header Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.

8. Click **Next**.

9. Optional: Enable CHAP authentication.

An initiator must authenticate with the target using the specified username and password. This provides security, as iSCSI initiators do not require a NAS username or password.

- Username
  - Length: 1 to 128 characters
  - Valid Characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z
- Password
  - Length: 12 to 16 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z

10. Optional: Enable mutual CHAP authentication.

Both the initiator and the target must authenticate with each other for additional security. First, the initiator authenticates with the target using the CHAP authentication username and password. Next, the target authenticates with the initiator using the mutual CHAP username and password.

- Username
  - Length: 1 to 128 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, colon (:), period (.), hyphen (-)
- Password
  - Length: 12 to 16 characters
  - Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, all special characters

11. Click **Next**.

12. Optional: Select **Create a LUN and map it to this target**.


If selected, QuTS hero opens the **Block-Based LUN Creation Wizard** immediately after finishing this wizard. The new LUN will then be automatically mapped to this target.

13. Click **Apply**.

QuTS hero creates the iSCSI target, and then opens the **Block-Based LUN Creation Wizard** window if **Create an iSCSI LUN and map it to this target** was enabled.

### Editing iSCSI Target Settings

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Select an iSCSI target.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Modify**.  
The **Modify iSCSI Target** window opens.
4. Modify any of the following settings.

Setting	Description
Target Alias	<p>An alias enables you to identify the target more easily on the initiator.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Length: 1 to 32 characters</li> <li>• Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, underscore ( _ ), hyphen ( - ), space ( )</li> </ul>
Enable clustered access to the iSCSI target from multiple initiators	<p>When enabled, multiple iSCSI initiators can access this target and its LUNs simultaneously.</p> <div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px;">  <p><b>Warning</b> To prevent data corruption, the initiators and LUN filesystems must all be cluster-aware.</p> </div>
CRC/Checksum	<p>Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data Digest: The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.</li> <li>• Header Digest: The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.</li> </ul>
Use CHAP authentication	<p>An initiator must authenticate with the target using the specified username and password. This provides security, as iSCSI initiators do not require a NAS username or password.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Username <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Length: 1 to 128 characters</li> <li>• Valid Characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Password <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Length: 12 to 16 characters</li> <li>• Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Mutual CHAP	<p>Both the initiator and the target must authenticate with each other for additional security. First, the initiator authenticates with the target using the CHAP authentication username and password. Next, the target authenticates with the initiator using the mutual CHAP username and password.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Username <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Length: 1 to 128 characters</li> <li>• Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, colon (:), period (.), hyphen (-)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Password <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Length: 12 to 16 characters</li> <li>• Valid characters: 0 to 9, a to z, A to Z, all special characters</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

5. Click **Apply**.

### iSCSI Target Actions

Action	Description
Deactivate	Disable an active target and disconnect all connected iSCSI initiators.
Activate	Enable a deactivated target.
Modify	Edit the target's settings. For details, see <a href="#">Editing iSCSI Target Settings</a> .
View Connections	View the IP addresses and IQN information of all iSCSI initiators connected to this target.
Delete	Disconnect all connected iSCSI initiators and delete the target. Any LUNs mapped to the target will be unmapped and then added to the unmapped LUN list.

### iSCSI Target Status

Status	Description
Ready	The target is accepting connections but no initiators are currently connected.
Connected	An initiator is connected to the target.
Offline	The target is not accepting connections.

### iSCSI ACL

The iSCSI access control list (ACL) allows you to configure a LUN masking policy for each connected iSCSI initiator. A LUN masking policy determines which LUNs the initiator is able to see and access. If no policy is specified for an iSCSI initiator, then QuTS hero applies the default policy to it.



#### Tip

- The default policy gives all iSCSI initiators full read/write access to all LUNs.
- You can edit the default policy so that all LUNs are either read-only or not visible to all iSCSI initiators, except for initiators with specific permissions from a policy.

### Adding an iSCSI LUN Masking Policy

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Click **iSCSI ACL**.  
The **iSCSI ACL** window opens.
3. Click **Add a Policy**.  
The **Add a Policy** window opens.
4. Specify the policy name.  
The name must consist of 1 to 32 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: a-z, A-Z

- Numbers: 0-9
- Special characters: Hyphen (-), space ( ), underscore ( \_ )

5. Specify the initiator IQN.
6. Configure the access permissions for each LUN.

Permission	Description
Read Only	The iSCSI initiator can read data on the LUN, but cannot write, modify, or delete data.
Read/Write	The iSCSI initiator can read, write, modify, and delete data on the LUN.
Deny Access	The LUN is invisible to the iSCSI initiator.



**Tip**  
Click the values in the columns to change the permissions.

7. Click **Apply**.

### Editing an iSCSI LUN Masking Policy

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Click **iSCSI ACL**.  
The **iSCSI ACL** window opens.
3. Select a policy.
4. Click **Edit**.  
The **Modify a Policy** window opens.
5. Optional: Edit the policy name.  
The name must consist of 1 to 32 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: a-z, A-Z
  - Numbers: 0-9
  - Special characters: Hyphen (-), space ( ), underscore ( \_ )
6. Optional: Configure the access permissions for each LUN.

Permission	Description
Read Only	The iSCSI initiator can read data on the LUN, but cannot write, modify, or delete data.
Read/Write	The iSCSI initiator can read, write, modify, and delete data on the LUN.
Deny Access	The LUN is invisible to the iSCSI initiator.



**Tip**  
Click the values in the columns to change the permissions.

7. Click **Apply**.

## Deleting an iSCSI LUN Masking Policy

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Click **iSCSI ACL**.  
The **iSCSI ACL** window opens.
3. Select a policy.
4. Click **Delete**.  
A confirmation message appears.
5. Click **OK**.

## iSCSI Target Authorization

Each iSCSI target can be configured either to allow connections from all iSCSI initiators, or to only allow connections from a list of authorized initiators.



### Important

By default, iSCSI target authorization is disabled.

## Configuring an iSCSI Target's Authorized Initiators List

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .
2. Select an iSCSI target.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Modify**.  
The **Modify an iSCSI Target** window opens.
4. Click **Initiators**.
5. Select **Allow connections from the list only**.
6. Optional: Add one or more iSCSI initiators to the authorized iSCSI initiators list.
  - a. Click **Add**.
  - b. Specify the initiator IQN.
  - c. Click **Confirm**.
  - d. Repeat the previous steps for each additional iSCSI initiator that you want to add.
7. Optional: Delete one or more iSCSI initiators from the authorized iSCSI initiators list.
  - a. Select an initiator IQN.
  - b. Click **Delete**.
  - c. Repeat the previous steps for each additional iSCSI initiator that you want to delete.
8. Click **Apply**.

## Disabling iSCSI Target Authorization

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage** .



2. Select an iSCSI target.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Modify**.  
The **Modify an iSCSI Target** window opens.
4. Click **Initiators**.
5. Select **Allow all connections**.
6. Click **Apply**.

## QNAP Snapshot Agent

QNAP Snapshot Agent enables QuTS hero to take application-consistent snapshots of iSCSI LUNs on VMware or Microsoft servers. Application-consistent snapshots record the state of running applications, virtual machines, and data. When QuTS hero takes a LUN snapshot, QNAP Snapshot Agent triggers the following actions:

- Windows: The server flushes data in memory, logs, and pending I/O transactions to the LUN before the snapshot is created.
- VMware: The server takes a virtual machine snapshot.

**Tip**

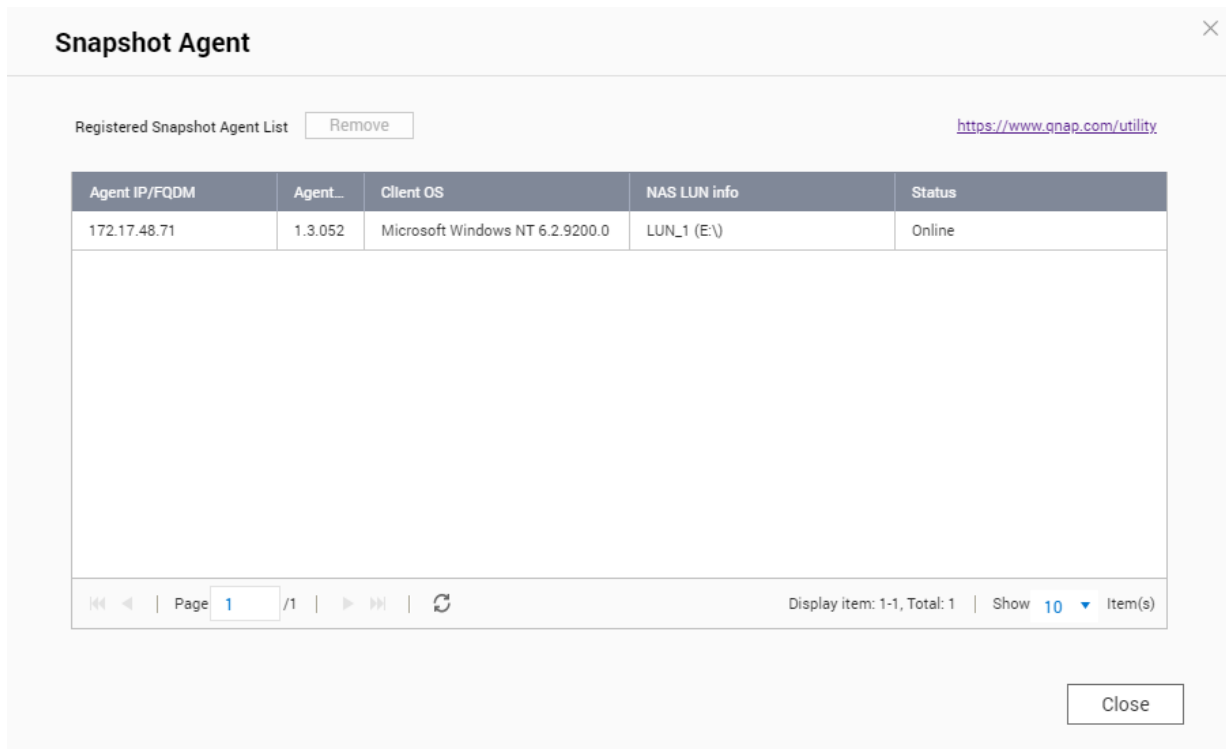
To download QNAP Snapshot Agent, go to <https://www.qnap.com/utilities>.

## Snapshot Agent Server List

To view a list of all iSCSI initiators that are using QNAP Snapshot Agent with this NAS, go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > iSCSI Storage**. Click **Snapshot**, and then select **Snapshot Agent**.

**Tip**

To unregister an iSCSI initiator, select it in the list and then click **Remove**.



## Remote Disk

Remote disk enables QuTS hero to act as an iSCSI initiator, allowing you to expand NAS storage by adding iSCSI LUNs from other NAS or storage servers as remote disks. When connected, remote disks are automatically shared on the **Shared Folders** screen. If a remote disk is disconnected, the disk will become inaccessible and QuTS hero will try to reconnect to the target after 2 minutes. If the target cannot be reached, the status of the remote disk will change to *Disconnected*.

This feature is only available on NAS models that support iSCSI.

### Remote Disk Limitations

Limit	Value
Maximum number of remote disks per NAS	8
Supported file systems	ext3, ext4, FAT32, NTFS, HFS+
Maximum remote disk size	16 TB

### Adding a Remote Disk

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > iSCSI > Remote Disks** .
2. Click **Add Virtual Disk**.
3. Specify the IP address or hostname of the remote server.
4. Optional: Specify the iSCSI port of the remote server.
5. Click **Get Remote Disk**.  
QuTS hero connects to the remote server and then lists all available iSCSI targets.

6. Select an iSCSI target.
7. Optional: Specify a CHAP username and password.  
This is required if the remote server has CHAP authentication enabled.
8. Optional: Enable CRC checksums.  
Initiators and targets communicate over TCP connections using iSCSI protocol data units (PDU). The sending device can send a checksum with each PDU. The receiving device uses this checksum to verify the integrity of the PDU, which is useful in unreliable network environments. There are two checksum types, which can be enabled separately.

Checksum Type	Description
Data Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the data portion of the PDU.
Header Digest	The checksum can be used to verify the header portion of the PDU.

9. Click **Next**.

10. Optional: Specify a disk name.  
The name must consist of 1 to 50 characters from the following groups:


- Letters: a to z, A to Z
- Numbers: 0-9
- Special characters: space ( ), hyphen (-), underscore (\_), period (.)

The following are not allowed:

- The last character is a space
- The name starts with "\_sn\_"

11. Select a LUN.

12. Optional: Format the disk.  
Select one of the following options.

File System	Compatible Operating Systems and Devices
ext4	Linux, NAS devices
ext3	Linux, NAS devices
FAT32	Windows, macOS, NAS devices, most cameras, mobile phones, video game consoles, tablets   <b>Important</b> The maximum file size is 4 GB.
NTFS	Windows
HTS+	macOS



**Note**

The block size of the remote disks is set to 64 k during formatting.



**Warning**

All data on the LUN will be deleted.

**13. Configure synchronous I/O.**

If the remote server is using ZFS, select the ZFS Intent Log I/O mode for the LUN to improve data consistency or performance.

Mode	Description
Synchronous	All I/O transactions are treated as synchronous and are always written and flushed to a non-volatile storage (such as a SSD or HDD). This option gives the best data consistency, but might have a small impact on performance.
Asynchronous	All I/O transactions are treated as asynchronous. This option gives the highest performance, but has a higher risk of data loss in the event of a power outage. Ensure that a UPS (uninterrupted power supply) is installed when using this option.

**14. Click Next.**

**15. Click Finish.**

QuTS hero adds the remote disk and shares it at **Control Panel > Privilege > Shared Folders** . By default only the admin account has access.

**Remote Disk Actions**

Action	Description
Edit	Edit the name of the disk.
Delete	Disconnect the remote disk and delete its shared folder. Existing data on the disk will not be deleted.
Format	Format the remote disk. Select one of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ext4</li> <li>• ext3</li> <li>• FAT32</li> <li>• NTFS</li> <li>• HTS+</li> </ul>

**Fibre Channel**

**FC Ports**

The **Fibre Channel (FC) Ports** screen displays all of the Fibre Channel ports and port groups on the NAS.

**Fibre Channel Port Groups**

A Fibre Channel port group is a group of one or more Fibre Channel ports. Fibre Channel port groups help you organize and manage LUN mappings more easily. When a LUN is mapped to a Fibre Channel port group, QuTS hero automatically maps the LUN to every Fibre Channel port in the group.



**Important**

- Each Fibre Channel port can be in one or more Fibre Channel port groups.

- Each LUN can only be mapped to one Fibre Chanel group.
- There is a default port group that contains all Fibre Channel ports.

### Creating a Fibre Channel Port Group

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC Ports** .
2. Click **Create Port Group**.  
The **Create Port Group** window opens.
3. Specify a group name.  
Name requirements:
  - Length: 1–20 characters
  - Valid characters: A–Z, a–z, 0–9
4. Select one or more Fibre Channel ports.
5. Click **Create**.

### Mapping a LUN to a Fibre Channel Port Group

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC Storage** .
2. Select a LUN.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Edit LUN Mapping**.  
The **Edit LUN Mapping** window opens.
4. Select **Map to FC port group**.
5. Select a Fibre Channel port group.



**Tip**

The default group contains all Fibre Channel ports.

6. Choose whether you want to configure LUN masking.

Option	Description
Enable LUN and do not configure LUN masking	Do not configure LUN masking. Any initiator that is able to connect to a Fibre Channel port in the port group will be able to see the LUN.
Keep LUN disabled and configure LUN masking in the next step	Configure LUN masking. You can restrict which initiators can see the LUN.

7. Click **OK**.
8. Optional: Configure LUN masking.
  - a. Add one or more initiator WWPNs to the LUN's authorized initiators list.

Method	Steps
Add from WWPN list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select one or more initiator WWPNs in the WWPN list.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>
Add WWPNs as text	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Specify one WWPN per line using any of the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</li> <li>• XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>

- b. Optional: Select **Add unknown WWPNs to the FC WWPN Aliases List**.  
When selected, QTS hero will add any unknown WWPNs to the list of known aliases. To view the list, go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases**.
- c. Optional: Select **Enable LUN**.  
If selected, QTS hero will enable the LUN after mapping it to the target.
- d. Click **OK**.

### Fibre Channel Port Actions

Action	Description
Edit Alias	Specify an alias for the Fibre Channel port. The alias must consist of 1 to 20 characters from any of the following groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letters: A-Z, a-z</li> <li>• Numbers: 0-9</li> <li>• Special characters: Hyphen (-), underscore (_)</li> </ul>
View initiators	View a list of all Fibre Channel initiators currently logged into the port.
Edit port binding	Modify the port binding for the port. Port binding allows you to restrict which initiators are allowed to connect to the port. For more information, see <a href="#">Fibre Channel Port Binding</a> .

### Fibre Channel Port Status

Status	Description
Connected	The port has an active network connection.
Disconnected	The port does not have an active network connection.

### Fibre Channel Port Binding

Port binding is a Fibre Channel security method that enables you to restrict which initiator WWPNs are allowed to connect through a Fibre Channel port. It is similar to iSCSI target authorization.



**Tip**

By default, port binding is disabled on all Fibre Channel ports.

**Configuring Fibre Channel Port Binding**

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC Ports** .
2. Select a Fibre Channel port.
3. Click **Action**, and then select **Edit Port Binding**.  
The **Fibre Channel Port Binding** window opens.
4. Add one or more initiator WWPNs to the LUN's authorized initiators list.

Method	Steps
Add from WWPN list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select one or more initiator WWPNs in the WWPN list.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>
Add WWPNs as text	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specify one WWPN per line using any of the following formats:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</li> <li>• XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>

5. Optional: Select **Add unknown WWPNs to the FC WWPN Aliases List**.  
When selected, QuTS hero will add any unknown WWPNs to the list of known aliases. To view the list, go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .
6. Click **OK**.

**FC Storage**

The **FC Storage** screen displays the LUN and Fibre Channel port group mappings.

**Fibre Channel LUN Masking**

LUN masking is a security feature that enables you to make a LUN visible to some Fibre Channel initiators and invisible to other initiators.

**Configuring Fibre Channel LUN Masking**

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC Storage** .
2. Select a LUN.



**Important**

The LUN must be disabled.

3. Click **LUN Masking**.  
The **LUN Masking** window opens.
4. Add one or more initiator WWPNs to the LUN's authorized initiators list.


Method	Steps
Add from WWPN list	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select one or more initiator WWPNs in the WWPN list.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>
Add WWPNs as text	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specify one WWPN per line using any of the following formats:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</li> <li>• XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> </ol>

5. Optional: Select **Add unknown WWPNs to the FC WWPN Aliases List**.  
 When selected, QTS hero will add any unknown WWPNs to the list of known aliases. To view the list, go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .

6. Select **Enable LUN**.  
 If selected, QTS hero will enable the LUN after mapping it to the target.

7. Click **OK**.

### Fibre Channel LUN Actions

LUN Action	Description
Edit LUN Mapping	Unmap the LUN, or map it to a different iSCSI target or Fibre Channel Port group. For details, see the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Mapping a LUN to a Fibre Channel Port Group</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Mapping a LUN to an iSCSI Target</a></li> </ul>
Edit LUN Masking	LUN masking is an authorization method that makes a Logical Unit Number (LUN) visible to some initiators and invisible to other initiators. For details, see <a href="#">.Configuring Fibre Channel LUN Masking</a>
Show in Storage & Snapshots	Manage the LUN at <b>Storage &amp; Snapshots &gt; Storage &gt; Storage/Snapshots</b>
Modify	Edit the LUN settings.
Enable	Enable a disabled LUN.
Disable	Disable the LUN. The LUN will become inaccessible to connected iSCSI initiators.
Delete	Delete the LUN and all data stored on it.   <b>Important</b> This action is only available if the LUN is unmapped.
LUN Import/Export	Export the LUN to another server, a local NAS folder, or an external storage device. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a LUN Export Job</a> .



## Fibre Channel LUN Status

Status	Description
Enabled	The LUN is active and visible to connected initiators.
Disabled	The LUN is inactive and invisible to connected initiators.

## FC WWPN Aliases

On the **FC WWPN Aliases** screen, you can view, edit, and add WWPNs and WWPN aliases. A WWPN (World Wide Port Name) is a unique identifier for Fibre Channel ports. A WWPN alias is a unique human-readable name for a Fibre Channel port that makes it easier to identify it.

### Adding WWPNs

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .
2. Click **Add**.  
The **Add WWPN** window appears.
3. Add one or more WWPNs to the list of known WWPNs using any of the following methods.

Method	Steps
Add WWPNs from logged-in Fibre Channel initiators.	Select <b>Add WWPNs from all logged-in FC initiators</b> .
Add WWPNs as text	Specify one WWPN per line using any of the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX</li> <li>• XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX</li> </ul>

4. Click **Add**.

### Configuring a WWPN Alias

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .
2. Locate a WWPN.
3. Under **Alias**, specify an alias for the WWPN.  
The alias must consist of 1 to 20 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A-Z, a-z
  - Numbers: 0-9
  - Special Characters: Underscore (\_), hyphen (-)
4. Click **Save**.

### Removing a WWPN Alias

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .

2. Locate a WWPN.
3. Clear the **Alias** field.
4. Click **Save**.

### Exporting a List of WWPN Aliases

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .
2. Click **Export**.  
The file browser window opens.
3. In the file browser window, navigate to the folder where you want to save the file.
4. Specify a filename.
5. Click **Save**.

The list of WWPN aliases is saved to your local computer as a CSV file, in the format:

- Field 1: WWPN
- Field 2: Alias

```
11:00:24:5e:be:00:00:06, ja882c32p1
11:00:24:5e:be:00:00:07, ja88c32p2
11:00:00:24:5e:be:00:06, ja88c16p1
11:00:00:24:5e:be:00:07, ja882c16p2
10:00:00:10:9b:1b:cc:99, z640Emulex2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:54:89:49, z640Q32gport2
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:87, test3
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:99, test1
10:00:00:10:9b:1b:cc:98, z640Emulex1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:54:89:48, z640Q32gport1
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:89, test2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:23:46, QL16c1p1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:23:47, QL16c1p2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:31:bc, QL16c2p1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:31:bd, QL16c2p2
```

#### Example CSV Output

### Importing a List of WWPN Aliases

You can import a list of WWPNs and aliases from a CVS file in the following format:

- Field 1: WWPN
- Field 2: Alias

```

11:00:24:5e:be:00:00:06,ja882c32p1
11:00:24:5e:be:00:00:07,ja88c32p2
11:00:00:24:5e:be:00:06,ja88c16p1
11:00:00:24:5e:be:00:07,ja882c16p2
10:00:00:10:9b:1b:cc:99,z640Emulex2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:54:89:49,z640Q32gport2
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:87,test3
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:99,test1
10:00:00:10:9b:1b:cc:98,z640Emulex1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:54:89:48,z640Q32gport1
10:00:00:99:99:99:99:89,test2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:23:46,QL16c1p1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:23:47,QL16c1p2
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:31:bc,QL16c2p1
11:00:f4:e9:d4:58:31:bd,QL16c2p2

```

### Example CSV File



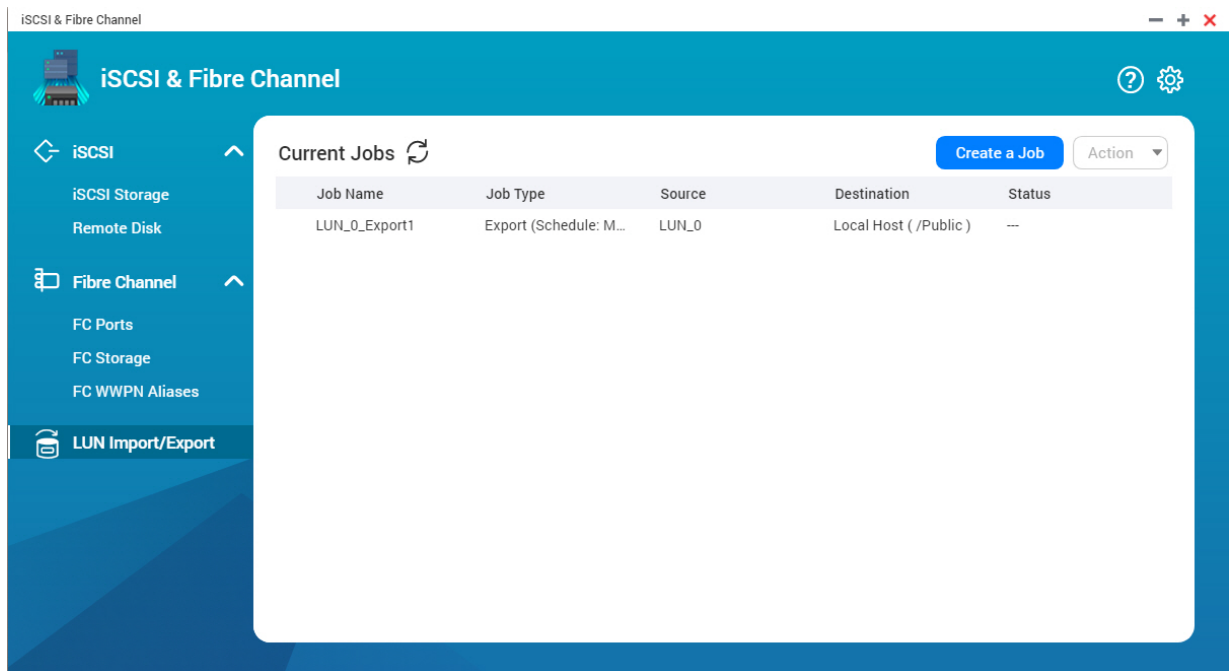
#### Important

- Identical aliases will be overwritten from the CSV file.
- Lines not formatted correctly will be ignored.

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > Fibre Channel > FC WWPN Aliases** .
2. Click **Import**.  
The file browser window opens.
3. Locate and open the CSV file.

## LUN Import/Export

With LUN Import/Export, you can back up a LUN as an image file to an SMB or NFS file server, local NAS folder, or external storage device. You can then import the LUN image file and restore the LUN on any QNAP NAS.



## Creating a LUN Export Job

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > LUN Import/Export**.
2. Click **Create a Job**.  
The **Create LUN Export Job** windows opens.
3. Select **Export a LUN**.
4. Select a LUN.
5. Optional: Specify a job name.  
The name must consist of 1 to 55 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Special characters: Underscore ( \_ )
6. Click **Next**.
7. Select the destination folder.

Option	Description	Required Information
Linux Share (NFS)	NFS share on an external server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address or host name</li> <li>• NFS folder or path</li> </ul>

Option	Description	Required Information
Windows Share (CIFS/SMB)	CIFS/SMB share on an external server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address or host name</li> <li>• Username</li> <li>• Password</li> <li>• CIFS/SMB folder or path</li> </ul>
Local Host	Local NAS shared folder or connected external storage device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NAS shared folder or external device</li> <li>• Sub-folder</li> </ul>

8. Click **Next**.

9. Optional: Specify a LUN image name.

- The name must consist of 1 to 64 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Special characters: Underscore ( \_ ), hyphen ( - ), space ( )
- The name cannot begin or end with a space.

10. Optional: Select **Use Compression** to compress the image file.

When enabled, the image file will be smaller but exporting will take longer and will use more processor resources.

11. Select when the job will run.

Option	Description
Now	Run the job immediately after the job has been created. After this first run, the job will only run when manually started.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hourly</li> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Monthly</li> </ul>	Run the job periodically according to the specified schedule.

12. Click **Next**.

13. Click **Apply**.

QuTS hero creates the job. The job then starts running if **Now** was selected as the scheduling option.

## Importing a LUN from an Image File

1. Go to **iSCSI & Fibre Channel > LUN Import/Export** .


2. Click **Create a Job**.

The **Create LUN Export Job** windows opens.

3. Select **Import a LUN**.
4. Optional: Specify a job name.  
The name must consist of 1 to 55 characters from any of the following groups:
  - Letters: A to Z, a to z
  - Numbers: 0 to 9
  - Special characters: Underscore ( \_ )
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the source folder.

Option	Description	Required Information
Linux Share (NFS)	NFS share on an external server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address or host name</li> <li>• NFS folder or path</li> </ul>
Windows Share (CIFS/SMB)	CIFS/SMB share on an external server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP address or host name</li> <li>• Username</li> <li>• Password</li> <li>• CIFS/SMB folder or path</li> </ul>
Local Host	Local NAS shared folder or connected external storage device	NAS shared folder or external device

7. Click **Next**.
8. Select the LUN image file.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Specify the import destination.

Option	Description	Required Information
Overwrite existing LUN	Import the image file data to an existing LUN.   <b>Warning</b> All existing data on the LUN will be overwritten.	An existing LUN.
Create a new LUN	Import the image file as a new LUN.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LUN name</li> <li>• LUN location. This will be a storage pool.</li> </ul>

11. Click **Next**.
12. Click **Apply**.

QuTS hero creates the job, and then immediately runs it.

## LUN Import/Export Job Actions

Action	Description
Edit	Edit the job.
Delete	Delete the job.
Start	Start the job.
Stop	Stop a running job.
View Logs	View the job's status, properties, details of its last run, and event logs.

## LUN Import/Export Job Status

Action	Description
--	The job has not run yet.
Initializing	The job is preparing to run.
Processing	The job is running. The job's progress is displayed a percentage next to the status.
Finished	The job has finished running or was canceled by a user.
Failed	The job failed. View the job's event log for details.

## 12. Multimedia

QTS hero provides a range of applications and utilities for viewing, playing, and streaming multimedia files stored on the NAS.

Application/Utility	Description
HybridDesk Station (HD Station)	Connect to an HDMI display to access multimedia content on your NAS.
DLNA Media Server	Configure your NAS as a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) server to access media files on your NAS from devices on your home network.
Media Streaming Add-on	Stream media from your NAS to DLNA, Chromecast, and HDMI-connected devices.
Multimedia Console	Manage multimedia apps and content on the NAS. You can index files, transcode videos, and generate thumbnails for multimedia content.

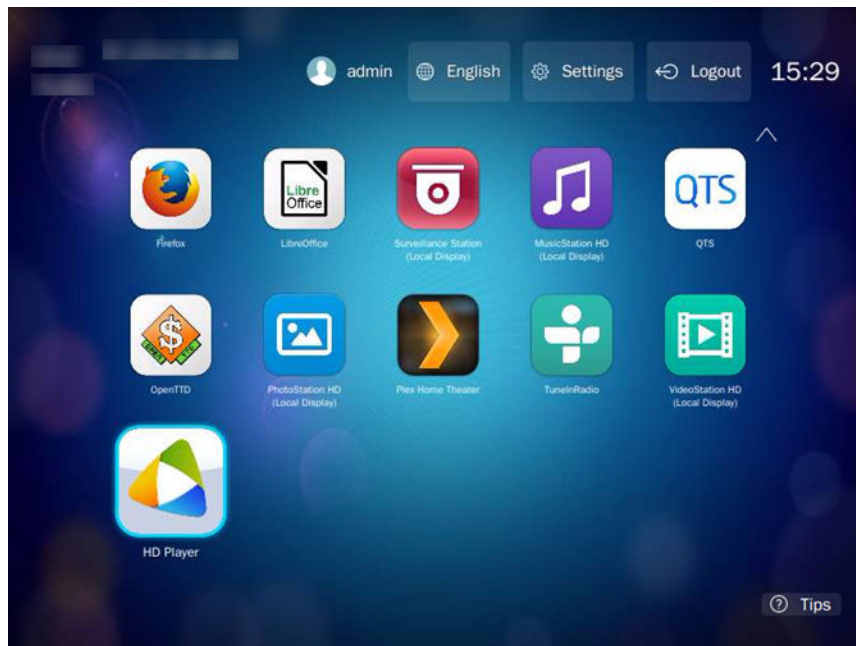
### HybridDesk Station (HD Station)

HybridDesk Station (HD Station) allows you to connect to an HDMI display and directly access multimedia content and use other applications on your NAS. You can use your NAS as a home theater, multimedia player, or desktop substitute. After installing HD Station and connecting the NAS to an HDMI display, you can navigate your NAS using HD Station.

HD Station requires:


- A TV or monitor with an HDMI port
- A mouse, keyboard, or remote control for navigation
- A graphics card (some NAS models only). Go to <https://www.qnap.com> to check the software specifications for your NAS and verify that it is compatible with HD Station.





## Installing HD Station

1. Go to **Control Panel > Applications > HDMI Display Applications** .
2. Choose one of the following installation methods.

Installation Method	Steps
Guided installation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Get Started Now</b>. The <b>HybridDesk Station</b> window appears.</li> <li>b. Review the list of selected applications.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Tip</b> All applications are selected by default. You can deselect applications that you do not want to install.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>
Manual installation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Under <b>Install Manually</b>, click <b>Browse</b>.</li> <li>b. Select the HD Station QKPG.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Install</b>.</li> </ol>

QuTS hero installs HD Station and the selected applications.







**Note**

Multimedia Services must be enabled to play multimedia content in HD Station. Go to **Main Menu > Applications > Multimedia Console** to enable Multimedia Services. HD Player, Photo Station, Music Station, and Video Station must also be installed on the NAS to play multimedia content from the respective applications.

## Configuring HD Station

1. Go to **Control Panel > Applications > HDMI Display Applications > Local Display settings** .
2. Perform any of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Enable HD Station	<p>Click <b>Enable</b>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> HD Station must be disabled to perform this action.</p>
Disable HD Station	<p>Click <b>Disable</b>.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> HD Station must be enabled to perform this action.</p>
Install all HD Station applications	<p><b>a.</b> Click <b>Install All Apps</b>. A dialog box appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Update installed apps	Click <b>Update</b> .
Restart HD Station	Click <b>Restart</b> .
Remove HD Station and related applications	<p><b>a.</b> Click <b>Remove</b>. A dialog box appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Edit HD Station settings	<p><b>a.</b> Click <b>Settings</b>. The <b>Settings</b> window appears.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Modify any of the following settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Output resolution:</b> Change the resolution of HD Station.</li> <li>• <b>Overscan:</b> Reduce the visible area of a video displayed in HD Station.</li> <li>• <b>Enable Remote Desktop:</b> View the NAS HDMI output using your web browser.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enabling Remote Desktop may affect the playback quality of local videos.</li> <li>• You must restart Remote Desktop after changing the output resolution.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Tip</b> You can also open and restart Remote Desktop from this screen.</p>
Install HD Station apps	<p><b>a.</b> Under <b>Install Manually</b>, click <b>Browse</b>.</p> <p><b>b.</b> Select the application QKPG.</p> <p><b>c.</b> Click <b>Install</b>.</p>

## HD Station Applications

Go to **App Center > HybridDesk Station** to install or configure applications used with HD Station.

### Using HD Player in HD Station

You can use HD Player to browse and play multimedia content in Photo Station, Music Station, and Video Station.

1. Connect an HDMI display to the NAS.
2. Select your NAS account.
3. Specify your password.
4. Start HD Player.
5. Select your NAS account.
6. Specify your password.

### DLNA Media Server

You can configure your NAS as a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) server, allowing you to access media files on your NAS through your home network using DLNA devices such as TVs, smartphones, and computers.

The contents displayed in DLNA Media Server are based on user account permissions and Multimedia Console settings.



#### Important

- You must enable Multimedia Services before using DLNA Media Server. Go to **Control Panel > Applications > Multimedia Console > Overview** to enable Multimedia Services.
- The first time you enable DLNA Media Server, QuTS hero automatically installs the Media Streaming Add-on if it is not already installed on the NAS. For details, see [Media Streaming Add-on](#).

### Enabling DLNA Media Server


1. Go to **Control Panel > Applications > DLNA Media Server** .
2. Select **Enable DLNA Media Server**.
3. Optional: Specify the following information.

Field	Description
<b>Service Name</b>	Specify a name for the DLNA Media Server.
<b>Select default user account</b>	Select the user account that will be the directory for the DLNA Media Server.

4. Click **Apply**.

## Configuring DLNA Media Server

1. Go to **Control Panel > Applications > DLNA Media Server** .
2. Perform any of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Scan for multimedia content	Click <b>Scan now</b> .
Restart DLNA Media Server	Click <b>Restart</b> .
Configure advanced settings	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Advanced Settings</b>. The <b>Media Streaming Add-on</b> portal opens in a new browser window.</li> <li>b. Configure the settings.</li> </ol> <div style="border-left: 2px solid #0070C0; padding-left: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b> Media Streaming Add-on must be installed to configure advanced settings. For details, see <a href="#">Media Streaming Add-on</a>.                 </div>

## Media Streaming Add-on

Media Streaming Add-on allows you to stream media from your NAS to different DLNA, Chromecast, and HDMI-connected devices simultaneously using the following QuTS hero multimedia applications:

- File Station
- Photo Station
- Music Station
- Video Station

Go to App Center to install Media Streaming Add-on.



**Tip**

You can restart Media Streaming Add-on anytime by clicking **Restart** on the home screen.

## Configuring General Settings

1. Open **Media Streaming Add-on**.  
Media Streaming Add-on opens in a new tab.




### Note

Media Streaming Add-on logs you in based on your QuTS hero user credentials. If a login screen appears, you will need to specify your username and password to log in.

2. Go to **General Settings**.
3. Modify any of the following settings.

Setting	Description
<b>Service name</b>	This is the name that devices on the local network will see when connecting to the NAS.
<b>Default user account</b>	Select the user account that media devices receive content from. To connect using a different user account, you must specify the account's username and password in the connection settings of the media receiver.
<b>Network interface</b>	Select the network interface.
<b>Port</b>	Specify the port number.
<b>Menu language</b>	Select the language displayed for menu items.
<b>Default menu style</b>	Select the type of menu style. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Simple</b></li> <li>• <b>All categories</b></li> <li>• <b>Custom</b> Select one of the <b>Custom</b> options and click <b>Customize</b> to configure the display options for the menu.</li> </ul>

Setting	Description
<b>Always stream videos to Apple TV and Chromecast in original file formats</b>	<p>When selected, the NAS streams videos to these devices without transcoding or embedding subtitles.</p> <p> <b>Important</b> Ensure that Apple TV and Chromecast support the file formats of videos on your NAS when selecting this option.</p>

4. Click **Apply All**.

## Configuring Browsing Settings

1. Open **Media Streaming Add-on**.  
Media Streaming Add-on opens in a new tab.



**Note**

Media Streaming Add-on logs you in based on your QuTS hero user credentials. If you see a login screen, you will need to specify your username and password and log in.

2. Go to **Browsing Settings**.
3. Modify any of the following settings.

Setting	Description
<b>Display Photo</b>	Select the display size of the thumbnail for photo albums.
<b>Music title display style</b>	Select the type of information that is displayed for music files.
<b>Video title display style</b>	Select whether video titles display the file name of the video or the embedded information.

4. Click **Apply All**.

## Configuring Media Receivers

1. Open **Media Streaming Add-on**.  
Media Streaming Add-on opens in a new tab.



**Note**

Media Streaming Add-on logs you in based on your QuTS hero user credentials. If you see a login screen, you will need to specify your username and password and log in.

2. Go to **Media Receivers**.
3. Perform any of the following actions.

Action	Steps
Enable device sharing	Select <b>Enable sharing for new media receivers automatically</b> . When enabled, newly discovered devices will automatically be allowed to connect to DLNA Media Server.
Scan for new devices	Click <b>Scan for devices</b> Media Streaming Add-on searches for new media devices connected to the NAS.

Action	Steps
Modify device connections	Select or deselect media devices. Only selected devices can connect to DLNA Media Server.

4. Click **Apply All**.

## Multimedia Console

Multimedia Console helps you manage installed multimedia apps and content stored on the NAS. Multimedia Console can index files, transcode videos, and generate thumbnails for apps and system services such as Photo Station, Video Station, Music Station, and DLNA Server.

### Overview

The **Overview** screen displays the indexing and thumbnail generation status for multimedia files as well as the total number of photos, videos, and music files on your NAS



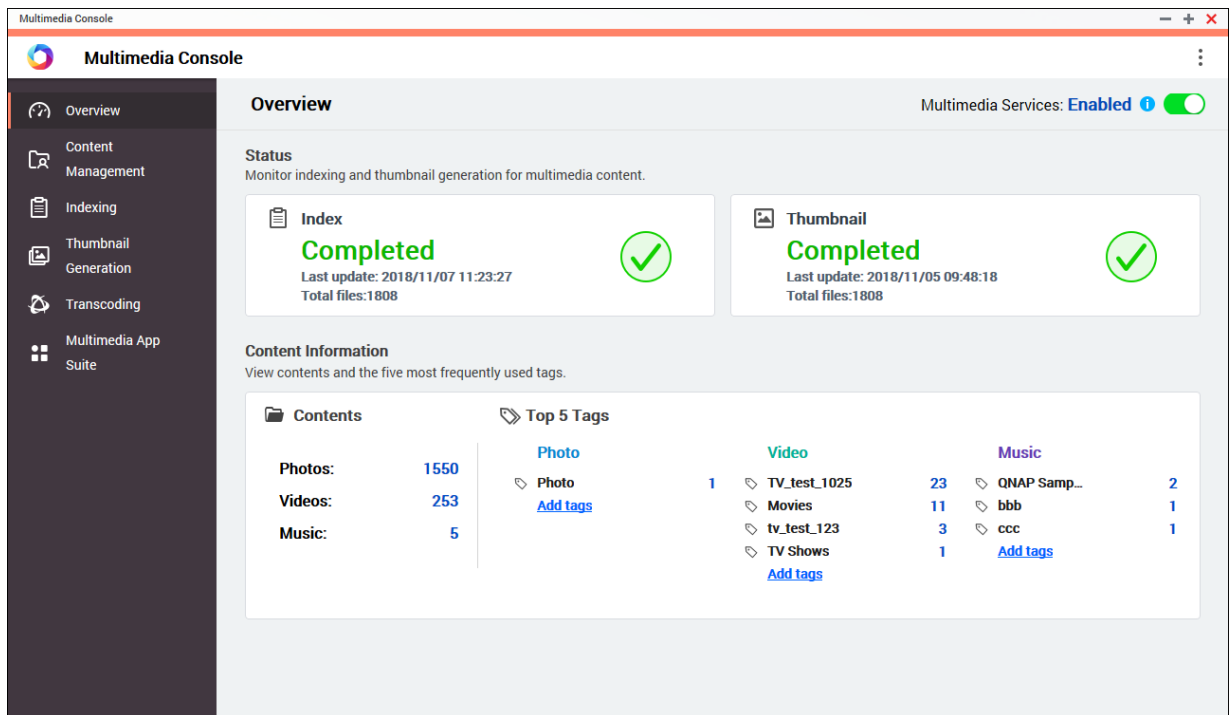
**Important**

To use features like indexing and thumbnail generation, Multimedia Services must be enabled.



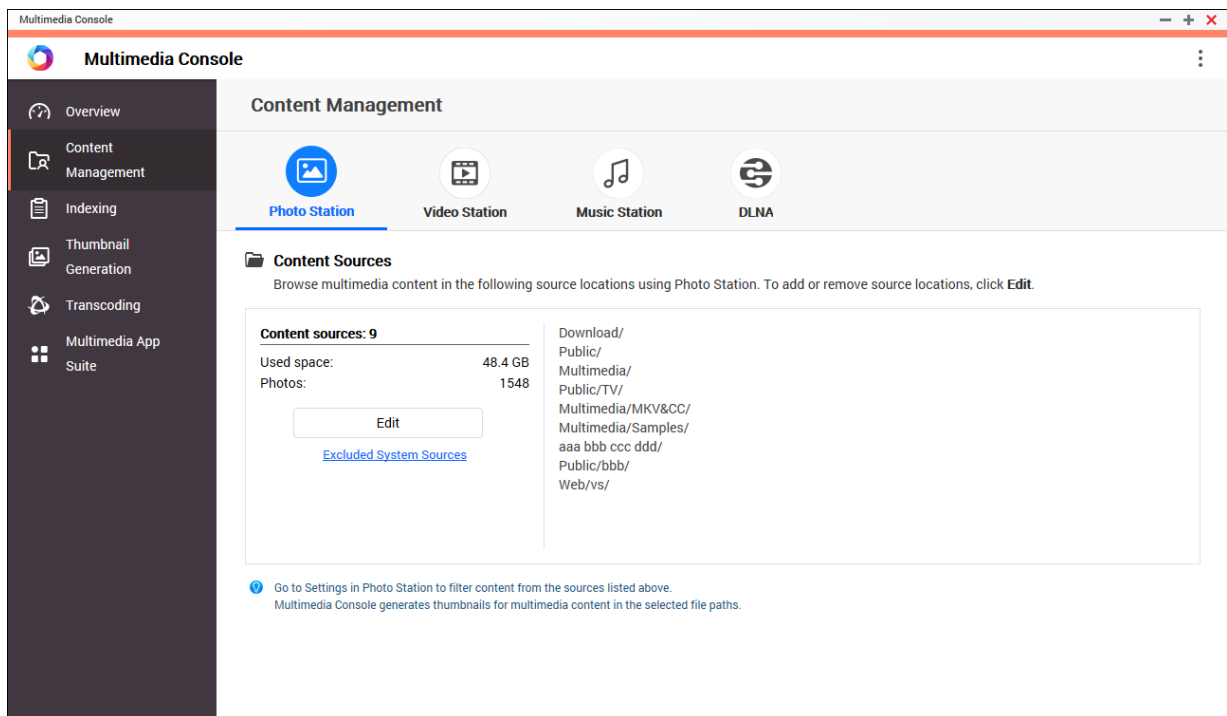
**Tip**

You can enable or disable Multimedia Services in the upper right of the **Overview** screen.



## Content Management

The **Content Management** screen displays the content source folders for multimedia apps installed on the NAS. You can view and edit the content source folders for apps and system services such as Photo Station, Video Station, Music Station, and DLNA Media Server.



## Editing Content Sources

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Content Management**.
3. Select an app or service.
4. Click **Edit**.  
The **Edit Content Sources** window appears.
5. Select or deselect content source folders.  
The **Selected Folder Paths** list updates.
6. Click **Apply**.



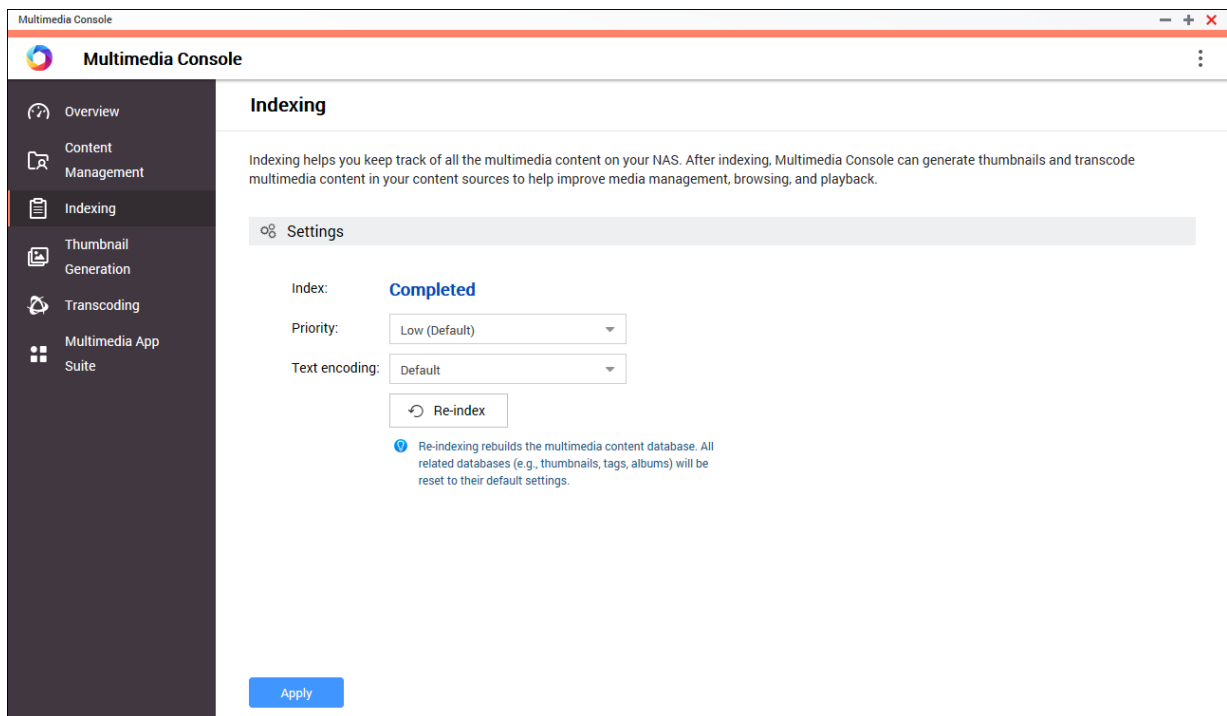
### Tip

Click **Excluded System Sources** on the **Content Management** screen to view system folder paths that are excluded from Multimedia Services.

## Indexing

Multimedia Console improves content management, browsing, and playback when accessing files in various multimedia apps by scanning and indexing multimedia files on your NAS.





## Configuring Indexing Settings

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Indexing**.
3. Select the **Priority**.
  - **Low (Default)**
  - **Normal**

The **Priority** determines the amount of system resources allocated to the indexing process.

4. Select the type of **Text encoding**.  
The type of **Text encoding** determines the character encoding scheme that Multimedia Console uses to index text and data in your multimedia files. The default encoding scheme is Unicode.
5. Click **Apply**.



### Tip

Click **Re-index** to rebuild the multimedia content database and revert dependent databases to their default settings.

## Thumbnail Generation

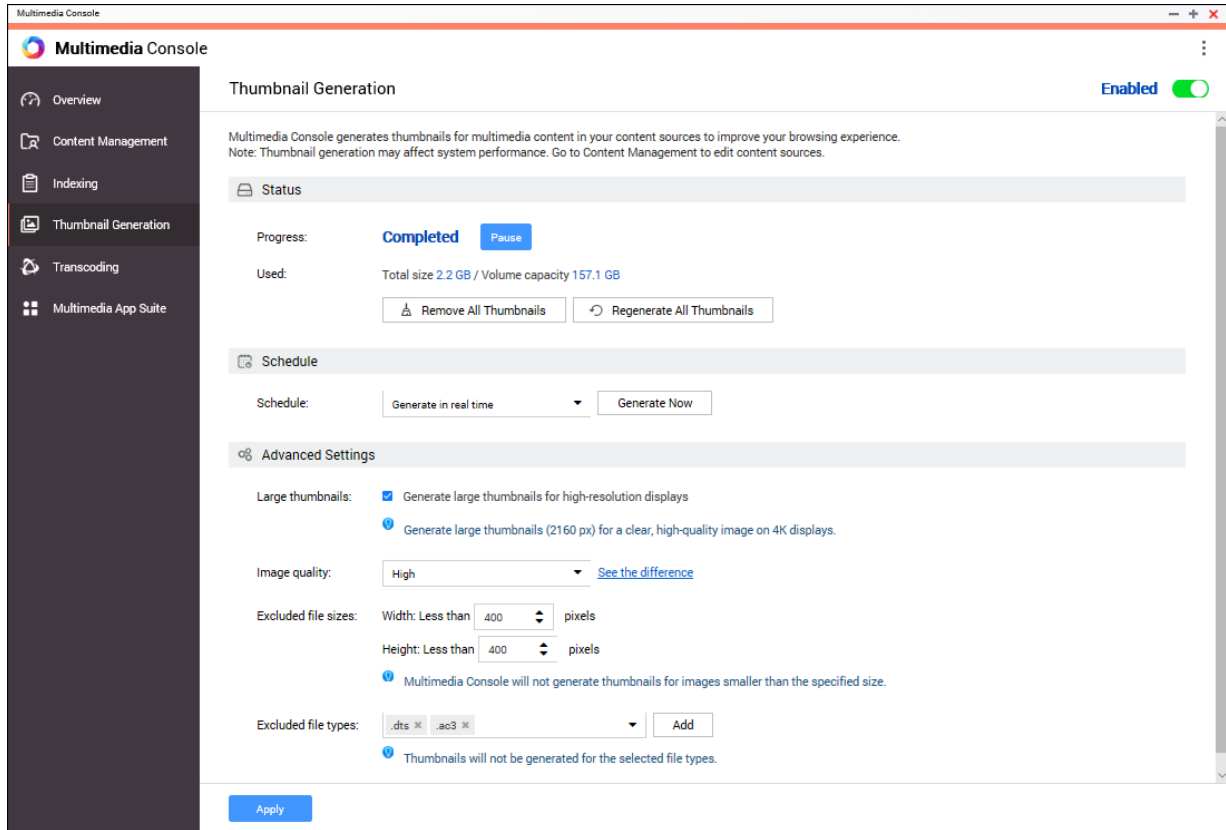
Multimedia Console generates thumbnails for multimedia files to improve browsing.



### Note


- Thumbnail generation is enabled by default if Multimedia Services is enabled.


- You can disable thumbnail generation in the upper right of the **Thumbnail Generation** screen.
- Generating thumbnails may affect system performance.



## Configuring Status


1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Thumbnail Generation > Status** .
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	Steps
Pause thumbnail generation	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next to <b>Progress</b>, click <b>Pause</b>. The <b>Pause</b> window opens.</li> <li>Select <b>Pause</b>.</li> <li>Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Tip</b>                      Click <b>Resume</b> when thumbnail generation is paused to resume thumbnail generation.                 </div>

Task	Steps
Postpone thumbnail generation	<p>a. Next to <b>Progress</b>, click <b>Pause</b>. The <b>Pause</b> window opens.</p> <p>b. Select <b>Postpone</b>.</p> <p>    1. Select the duration.</p> <p>c. Click <b>OK</b>.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> Click <b>Resume</b> when thumbnail generation is postponed to resume thumbnail generation.</p>
Remove thumbnails	<p>a. Under <b>Used</b>, click <b>Remove All Thumbnails</b>. A dialog box appears.</p> <p>b. Click <b>OK</b>.</p>
Regenerate thumbnails	<p>a. Under <b>Used</b>, click <b>Regenerate All Thumbnails</b>. A dialog box appears.</p> <p>b. Click <b>OK</b>.</p>

### Configuring Schedule

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Thumbnail Generation > Schedule** .
3. Next to **Schedule**, select one of the following options.

Option	Description
<b>Generate in real time</b>	Multimedia Console generates thumbnails for new files as soon as they are detected.
<b>Generate using schedule</b>	<p>Multimedia Console generates thumbnails according to a specified schedule.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> When selected, you must specify a thumbnail generation schedule.</p>
<b>Generate manually</b>	Multimedia Console generates thumbnails only after clicking <b>Generate Now</b> .




**Tip**

Click **Generate Now** to force Multimedia Console to start generating thumbnails immediately.

4. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Advanced Settings

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Thumbnail Generation > Advanced Settings** .
3. Configure any of the following settings.

Setting	Description
<b>Large thumbnails</b>	When selected, Multimedia Console generates high-resolution thumbnails (2160 px) for media files.
<b>Image quality</b>	Select <b>High</b> or <b>Low</b> .   <b>Tip</b> Click <b>See the difference</b> to view a side-by-side comparison of high- and low-quality thumbnails.
<b>Excluded file sizes</b>	Multimedia Console only generates thumbnails for images that are larger than the specified resolution.
<b>Excluded file types</b>	Multimedia Console will not generate thumbnails for the selected file types.

4. Click **Apply**.

## Transcoding

The transcoding feature in Multimedia Console converts video files to MPEG-4 format for improved compatibility with media players on mobile devices, smart TVs, and web browsers. Transcoding can also scale down the resolution of video files to prevent buffering in slower network environments.

You can create and manage transcoding tasks and configure settings from the **Transcoding** screen in Multimedia Console.

### Overview

You can manage Background Transcoding and On-the-Fly Transcoding tasks from the Overview tab on the **Transcoding** screen.



#### Note

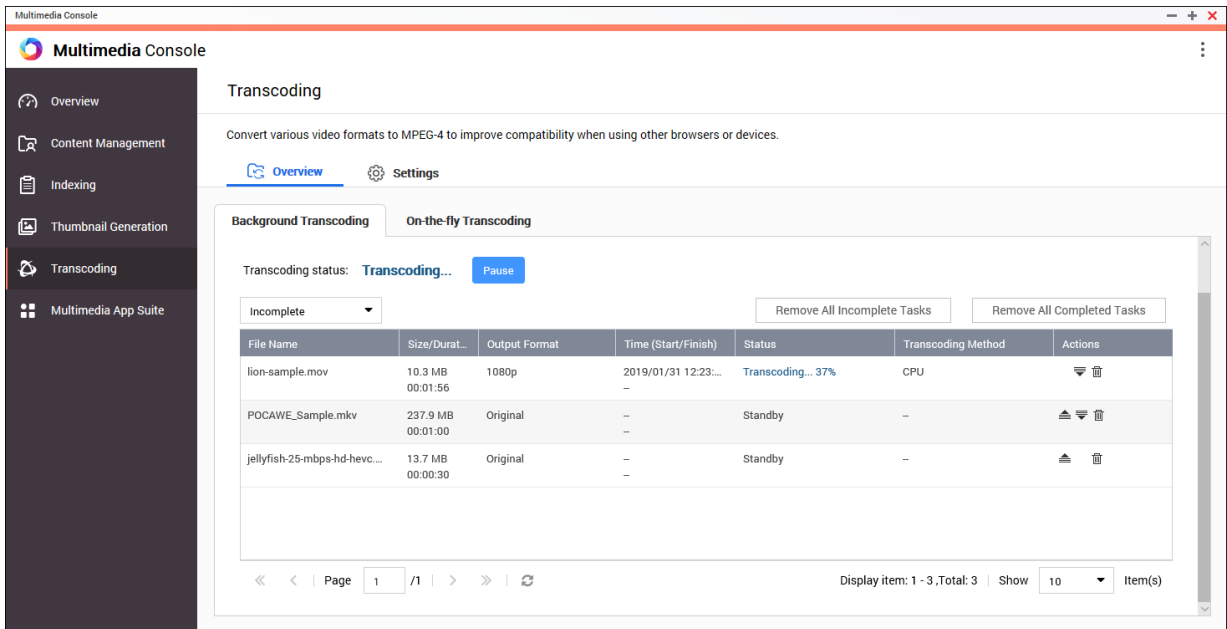
- Transcoding is only available for certain NAS models. Go to <https://www.qnap.com/en/compatibility> to view specifications for your NAS and verify that it is compatible.
- Transcoding uses additional NAS storage space to store transcoded files.

Type	Description
<b>Background Transcoding</b>	Background Transcoding converts videos asynchronously to minimize consumption of system resources if the video is accessed by multiple users simultaneously. You can manually add videos to background transcoding folders using File Station, Photo Station, or Video Station. For details on managing background transcoding folders, see <a href="#">Configuring Background Transcoding Folders</a>



Type	Description
<p><b>On-the-Fly Transcoding</b></p>	<p>On-the-Fly Transcoding converts videos in real time as you watch them.</p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot specify the output format for On-the-Fly Transcoding.</li> <li>On-the-Fly Transcoding uses more system resources than Background Transcoding and may affect the performance of your NAS.</li> </ul> <p><b>Tip</b></p> <p>You can install CodexPack to increase transcoding speed and reduce system resource consumption. You can check whether your NAS supports GPU-accelerated transcoding on the <b>Transcoding Settings</b> screen. For details, see <a href="#">Configuring Transcoding Resources</a>.</p>

### Background Transcoding




The Background Transcoding tab displays the overall background transcoding status as well as additional information about specific background transcoding tasks. You can view and manage background transcoding tasks from this tab.



### General Tasks

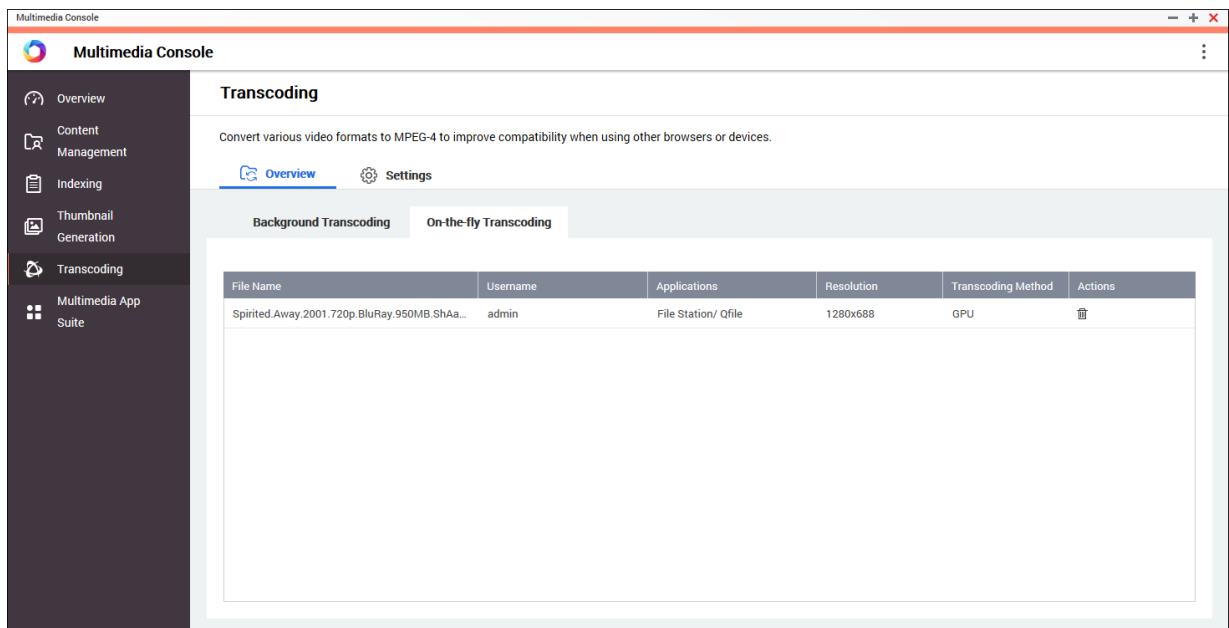
Task	User Action
Pause background transcoding	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Pause</b>. The <b>Pause</b> window opens.</li> <li>2. Select <b>Pause</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Tip</b> Click <b>Resume</b> when background transcoding is paused to resume background transcoding.</p>
Postpone background transcoding	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Pause</b>. The <b>Pause</b> window opens.</li> <li>2. Select <b>Postpone</b>.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the duration.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Tip</b> Click <b>Resume</b> when background transcoding is postponed to resume background transcoding.</p>
View completed tasks	Above the background transcoding task table, select <b>Completed</b> from the drop-down list. Multimedia Console displays completed background transcoding tasks.
View incomplete tasks	Above the background transcoding task table, select <b>Incomplete</b> from the drop-down list. Multimedia Console displays incomplete background transcoding tasks.
Remove incomplete tasks	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Remove All Incomplete Tasks</b>. A dialog box appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Remove completed tasks	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Remove All Completed Tasks</b>. A dialog box appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>



#### Task Table Configuration (Incomplete Tasks)

Button	Description
	Moves a task up in the list and increases its priority.
	Moves a task down in the list and decreases its priority.
	Removes a task from the list.

#### On-the-fly Transcoding

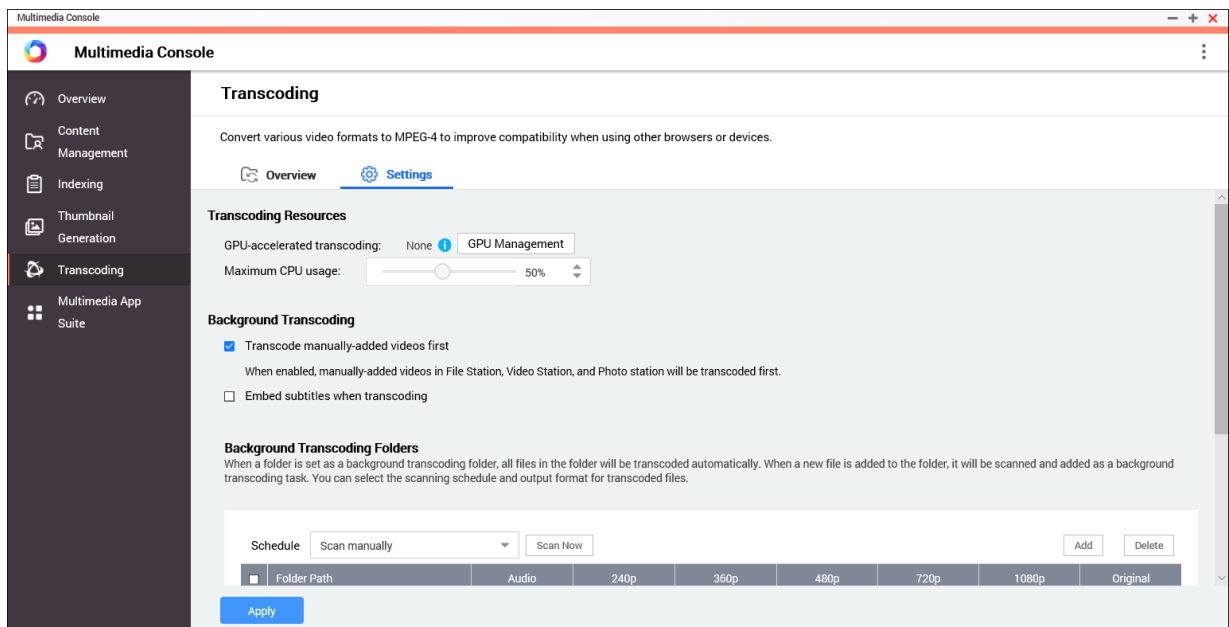
The On-the-Fly Transcoding tab displays information about on-the-fly transcoding tasks. You can view and manage on-the-fly transcoding tasks from this tab.



 **Tip** Click  to remove a task from the list.

## Settings

You can manage Background Transcoding and On-the-Fly Transcoding settings from the Settings tab on the **Transcoding** screen.



## Configuring Transcoding Resources

1. Open Multimedia Console.

2. Go to **Transcoding > Settings > Transcoding Resources** .
3. Optional: Enable **GPU-accelerated transcoding**.
  - a. Click **GPU Management**.  
The **System > Hardware > Graphics Card** screen appears.
  - b. Configure graphics card settings.  
For details, see [Configuring Expansion Cards Settings](#).
4. Specify the **Maximum CPU usage** allocated to transcoding tasks.
5. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Background Transcoding Settings

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Transcoding > Settings > Background Transcoding** .
3. Configure any of the following settings.



Setting	Description
<b>Transcode manually-added videos first</b>	Videos in File Station, Video Station, and Photo Station that are manually added will be transcoded first.
<b>Embed subtitles when transcoding</b>	Multimedia Console automatically embeds subtitles to videos when transcoding them.

4. Click **Apply**.

### Configuring Background Transcoding Folders

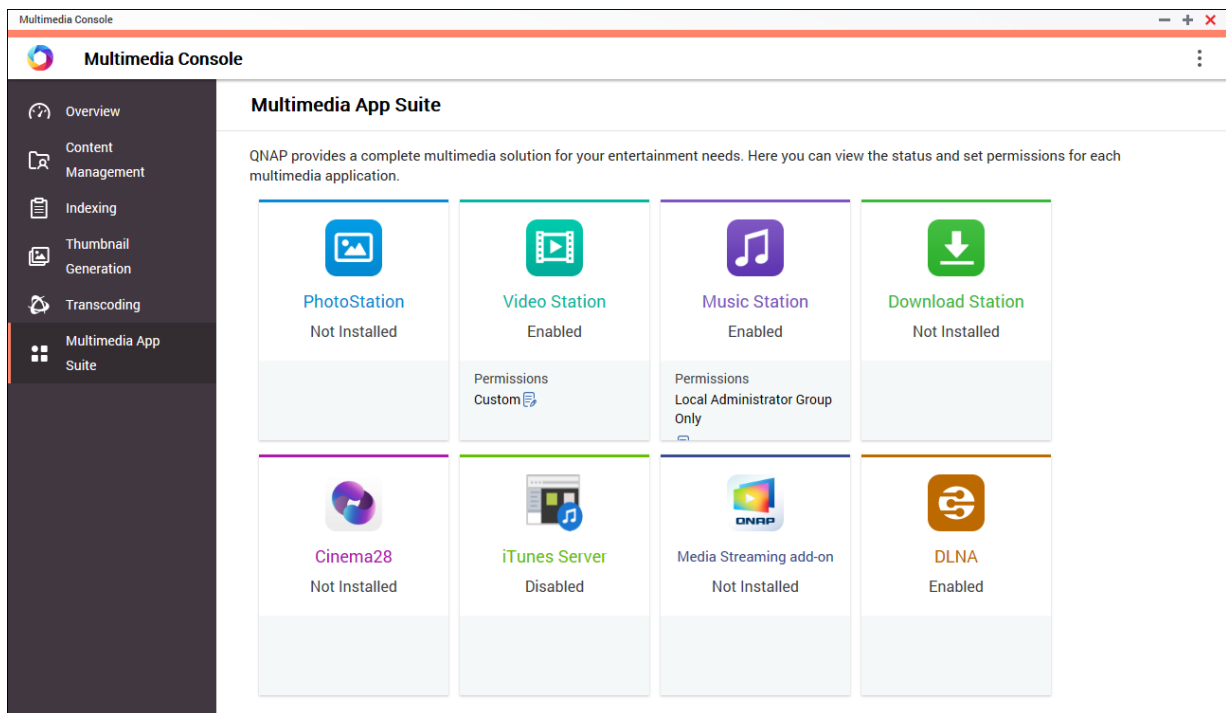
1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Transcoding > Settings > Background Transcoding Folders** .
3. Perform any of the following tasks.



Task	User Action
Configure the scanning schedule for background transcoding folders	<p>Select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Scan in real time:</b> Multimedia Console scans background transcoding folders for new files and adds the files as background transcoding tasks as soon as they are detected.</li> <li>• <b>Scan using schedule:</b> Multimedia Console scans background transcoding folders for files according to a specified schedule.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b> When selected, you must specify the time of day that Multimedia Console generates thumbnails.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Scan manually:</b> Multimedia Console scans background transcoding folders only when you click <b>Scan Now</b>.</li> </ul>
Add a background transcoding folder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Add</b>. The <b>Add Background Transcoding Folders</b> window appears.</li> <li>Select a folder.</li> <li>Specify the output format.</li> <li>Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>
Remove a background transcoding folder	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select a background transcoding folder.</li> <li>Click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ol>
Configure transcoding output format	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Locate a background transcoding folder on the list.</li> <li>Select the output format.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Note</b> Multimedia Console upscales the video if the selected resolution is higher than the original resolution of the video.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>Apply</b>.</li> </ol>

## Multimedia App Suite

You can view statuses and configure user and group access permissions for installed multimedia apps and services from the **Multimedia App Suite** screen.



## Configuring Multimedia Apps and Services

1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Multimedia App Suite**.
3. Perform any of the following tasks.

Task	User Action
Install an app or service	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Locate an app or service with the status <b>Not Installed</b> under the app or service name.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Not Installed</b>. The <b>App Center</b> and app installation windows open.</li> <li>c. Click <input type="button" value="+ Install"/>.</li> </ol>
Enable an app or service	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Locate an app or service with the status <b>Disabled</b> under the app or service name.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Disabled</b>.</li> <li>c. The app or service opens in a new window.</li> <li>d. Enable the app or service.</li> </ol>
Disable an app or service	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Locate an app or service with the status <b>Enabled</b> under the app or service name.</li> <li>b. Click <b>Enabled</b>.</li> <li>c. The app or service opens in a new window.</li> <li>d. Disable the app or service.</li> </ol>

## Configuring Multimedia App Permissions



1. Open Multimedia Console.
2. Go to **Multimedia App Suite**.
3. Locate an app with access permissions.
4. Under **Permissions**, click the permission status.  
The **Permission Settings** window opens.
5. Select a permission type.

Permission Type	Description
<b>All Users</b>	All users can access the app.
<b>Local Administrator Group Only</b>	Only users in the local administrator group can access the app.
<b>Custom</b>	Specified users and user groups can access the app.

A dialog box appears.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Perform any of the following actions.

Permission Type	User Action
<b>All Users</b>	Click <b>Close</b> .
<b>Local Administrator Group Only</b>	Click <b>Close</b> .

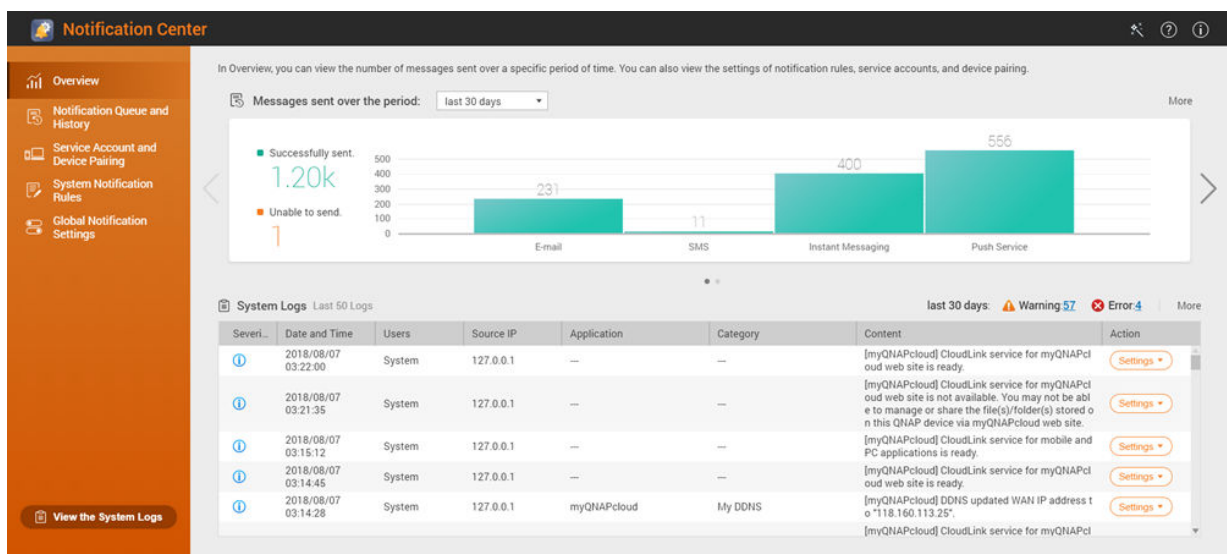
Permission Type	User Action
<p><b>Custom</b></p>	<p>a. Select a user or user group type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Local</b></li> <li>• <b>Domain</b></li> </ul> <p>b. Choose to deny or allow access to selected users or groups. A dialog box appears.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol> <p>c. Filter the list by users or groups.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> Use the <b>Search</b> field to quickly find users or groups.</p> <p>d. Select a user or group.</p> <p>e. Click <b>Add</b>. The user or group is added to the Selected Users/Groups list.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select a user or group and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the user or group from the list.</li> <li>• Click <b>Delete All</b> to remove all users or groups from the list.</li> </ul> <p>f. Click <b>Save</b>.</p> <p>g. Click <b>Close</b>.</p>

## 13. Notification Center

Notification Center consolidates all QuTS hero notifications to help you monitor the status of your NAS and its applications and address potential issues more closely and promptly. You can send notifications to recipients through different channels including emails, SMS, instant messaging, and other push services. Notification Center also lets you create custom notification rules and criteria, ensuring that you receive notifications that are most relevant to your needs.

### Overview

The Overview screen displays the number of notifications delivered over a specific period of time. It also displays the number of notification rules, service accounts, and paired devices you configured.



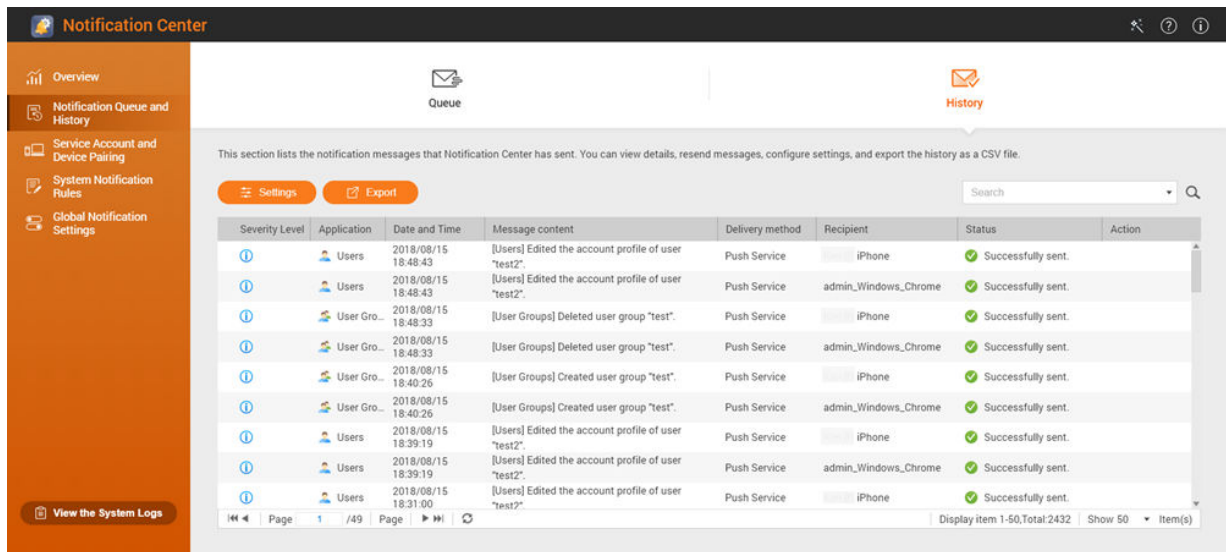
### Notification Queue and History


#### Queue

The Queue screen displays the messages that Notification Center is going to send. The required transmission time depends on the current status of your NAS. You can remove a message from the queue before it is sent. Messages removed from the queue will not appear in the History screen.

#### History

The History screen displays the messages that Notification Center has sent. You can view details, resend messages, configure settings, and export the history as a CSV file. In the settings, you can specify how long your notification records are retained and where they are stored.



No.	Task	User Action
1	Export the notification message history.	Click <b>Export</b> . Notification Center saves the CSV file on your computer.
2	Resend the notification.	Identify the notification you want to resend, and then click  . This button only appears when Notification Center is unable to send the notification to the recipient.

### Configuring History Settings

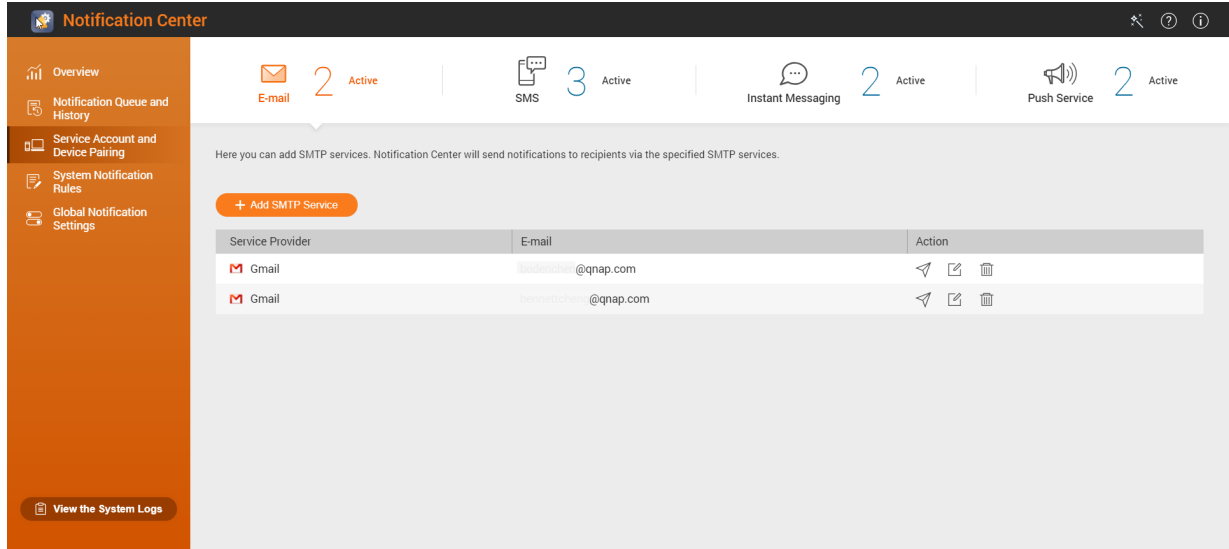
1. Open Notification Center.
2. Go to **Notification Queue and History > History** .
3. Click **Settings**.  
The **Settings** window appears.
4. Configure the following information.
  - Retention period: Specify the maximum number of days Notification Center retains notification records before deleting them.
  - Notification record storage: Select whether or not you want to keep notification records in a specified local folder.
5. Click **Confirm**.  
Notification Center saves your settings.

### Service Account and Device Pairing

Service Account and Device Pairing allows you to configure the simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) and short message service center (SMSC) settings so you can receive notifications through email and SMS. You can also pair your instant messaging accounts and devices with your NAS to receive notifications through instant messaging or push services.

## Email Notifications


The Email screen allows you to add and view email notification recipients and configure your simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) service settings.



Button	Task	User Action
	Send a test message to a specified recipient.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . The <b>Send test message</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Specify an email address.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Send</b>.</li> </ol>
	Edit the configurations of an existing email server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . The <b>Edit SMTP Service Account</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Edit the settings.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>
	Remove an email server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Configuring an Email Notification Server

1. Go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > E-mail** .
2. Click **Add SMTP Service**.  
The **Add SMTP Service** window appears.
3. Select an email account.
4. Configure the following.

Service Provider	User Action
Gmail or Outlook	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Click <b>Add account</b>. The email account window appears.</li> <li>b. Specify the email address that will act as the sender for QuTS hero notifications. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>c. Click <b>Allow</b>.</li> </ol>
Yahoo	<div style="border-left: 2px solid red; padding-left: 10px;"> <p> <b>Important</b> Before configuring the Yahoo Mail settings, do the following.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Log in to your Yahoo Mail account.</li> <li>b. Go to <b>Help &gt; Account Info &gt; Account Security</b> .</li> <li>c. Enable <b>Allow apps that use less secure sign in</b>.</li> </ol> </div> <p>Specify a valid Yahoo mail address and its account password.</p>
Custom	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specify the domain name or the IP address of your SMTP service such as <code>smtp.gmail.com</code>.</li> <li>b. Specify the port number for the SMTP server. If you specified an SMTP port when you configured the port forwarding settings, use this port number.</li> <li>c. Specify the email address that will act as the sender for QuTS hero notifications.</li> <li>d. Specify a username that contains a maximum of 128 ASCII characters.</li> <li>e. Specify a password that contains a maximum of 128 ASCII characters.</li> <li>f. Select one of the following secure connection options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>SSL</b>: Use SSL to secure the connection.</li> <li>• <b>TLS</b>: Use TLS to secure the connection.</li> <li>• <b>None</b>: Do not use a secure connection.</li> </ul> </li> </ol> <p>QNAP recommends enabling a secure connection if the SMTP server supports it.</p>
Others	Specify a valid email address and its account password.



**Tip**

To configure multiple email servers, click **Add SMTP Service**, and then perform the previous steps.

5. Optional: Select **Set as default SMTP service account**.

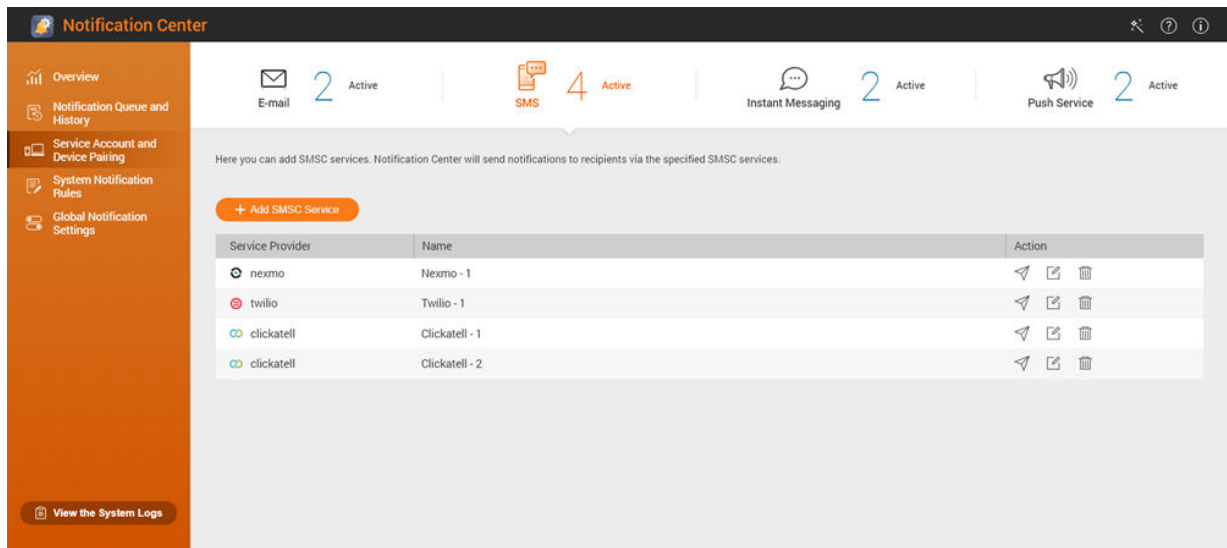
6. Click  .  
The SMTP server sends a test email.

7. Click **Create**.  
Notification Center adds the SMTP service to the list.



## SMS Notifications

The SMS screen allows you to view and configure your short message service center (SMSC) settings. You can either configure a custom SMSC or use any of the currently supported SMS service providers: Clickatell, Nexmo, and Twilio.




Button	Task	User Action
	Send a test message to a specified recipient.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . The <b>Send test message</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Specify a country code and phone number.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Send</b>.</li> </ol>
	Edit the configurations of an existing SMS server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . The <b>Edit SMSC Service Account</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Edit the settings.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>
	Remove an SMS server.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Configuring an SMS Notification Server

1. Go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > SMS** .
2. Click **Add SMSC Service**.  
The **Add SMSC Service** window appears.
3. Select a service provider.


4. Specify an alias.
5. Specify the following information.

SMS Service Provider	Information
Clickatell - Communicator/Central	Clickatell username, password, and API ID
Clickatell - SMS Platform	Clickatell API key
Nexmo	Nexmo API key and secret question, and a sender name The sender name can contain a maximum of 32 characters.
Twilio	Your Twilio account SID, access token, and the Twilio-provided phone number linked to your account
Custom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• URL template text formatted according to the format specified by your SMS service provider. Use the following replaceable URL template parameters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• @@UserName@@: Specify the username for this connection.</li> <li>• @@Password@@: Specify the password for this connection.</li> <li>• @@PhoneNumber@@: Specify the phone number where the SMS messages are sent. This parameter is required.</li> <li>• @@Text@@: Specify the text content of the SMS message. This parameter is required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p> <b>Important</b> You will not be able to receive SMS messages if the template text does not match the format used by your SMS service provider.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the service provider. The name can contain a maximum of 32 ASCII characters.</li> <li>• A password. The password can contain a maximum of 32 ASCII characters.</li> </ul>



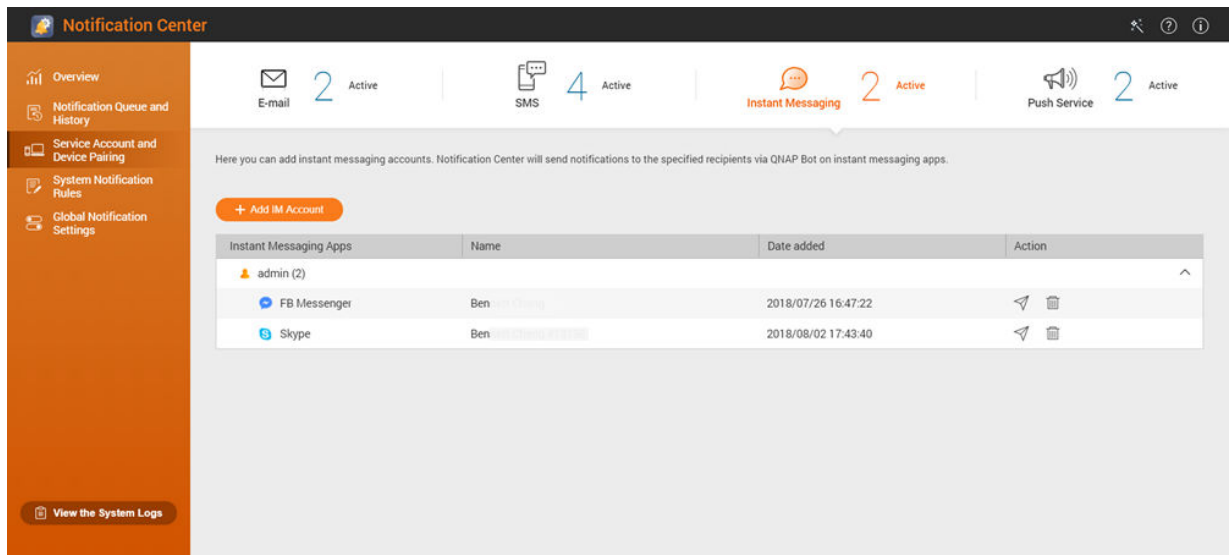
**Tip**

To configure multiple SMS servers, click **Add SMSC Service**, and then perform the previous steps.

6. Click .  
The SMS server sends a test message.
7. Click **Create**.  
Notification Center adds the SMTP service to the list.

### Instant Messaging Notifications

The Instant Messaging screen allows you to pair Notification Center with instant messaging accounts such as Skype and Facebook Messenger. Notification Center sends notifications to the specified recipients through QBot, the QNAP instant messaging bot account.



Button	Task	User Action
	Send a test message.	Click  .
	Unpair from and remove the instant messaging account.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click  . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Pairing Notification Center with Skype

Before configuring Skype notifications, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.
- You have an active Skype account.
- Skype is installed on your device.

1. Go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > Instant Messaging** .
2. Click **Add IM Account**.  
The **Notification IM Wizard** appears.
3. Select Skype.  
The **Add Bot to Contacts** window appears.
4. Log in to the Skype account you want to pair.  
Skype adds QNAP Bot as a contact.
5. Close the **Add Bot to Contacts** window.
6. Click **Next**.  
A verification code appears.
7. On Skype, enter the verification code.  
Notification Center verifies and pairs with the Skype account.

8. Click **Finish**.  
Notification Center adds the Skype account to the list.

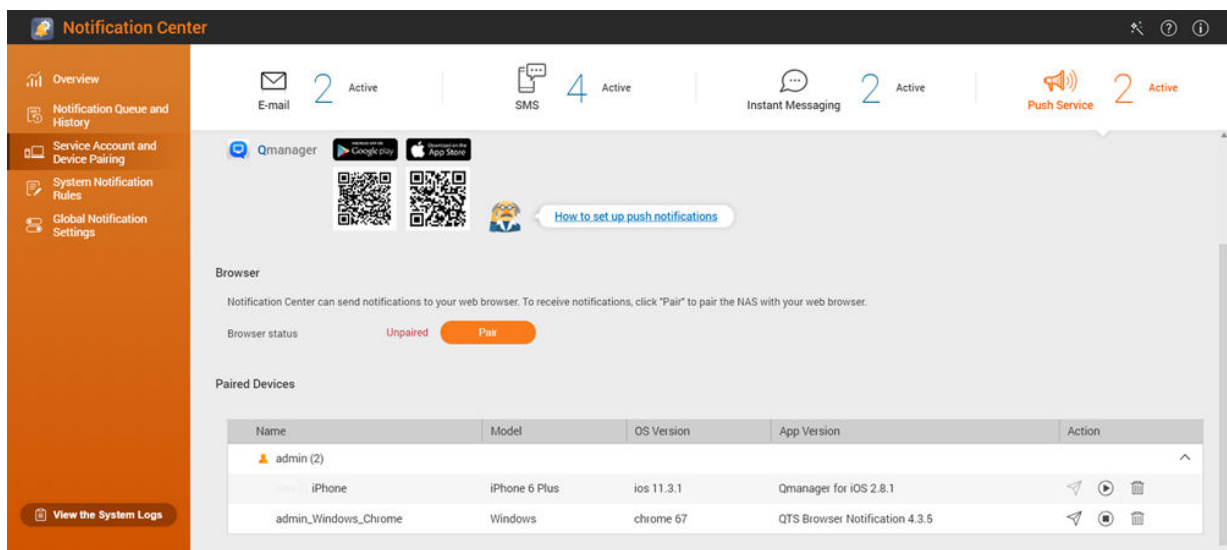
## Pairing Notification Center with Facebook Messenger









Before configuring instant messaging (IM) notifications, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.
  - You have an active Facebook Messenger account.
1. Go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > Instant Messaging**.
  2. Click **Add IM Account**.  
The **Notification IM Wizard** appears.
  3. Select Facebook Messenger.  
The **Add Bot to Contacts** window appears.
  4. Log in to the Facebook Messenger account you want to pair.  
Facebook Messenger adds QNAP Bot as a contact.
  5. Click **Get Started**.  
A verification code appears on the **Notification IM Wizard**.
  6. On Facebook Messenger, enter the verification code.  
Notification Center verifies and pairs with the Facebook Messenger account.
  7. Click **Finish**.  
Notification Center adds the Facebook Messenger account to the list.

## Push Notifications

The Push Service screen allows you to configure push services for web browsers and mobile devices.




Button	Task	User Action
	Send a test message.	Click  .
	Start sending push notifications to the device or browser.	Click  .
	Stop sending push notifications to the device or browser.	Click  .
	Unpair and remove the device or browser.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Pairing Notification Center with a Mobile Device

Before pairing, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.
- Qmanager is installed on the mobile device.
- Your NAS is added in Qmanager.

1. Open Qmanager on the mobile device.
2. Perform one of the following.

Pairing Option	User Action
Automatic pairing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. From the device list, tap the NAS you want to pair. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>b. Tap <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>
Manual pairing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify your NAS from the device list, and then tap . The device settings screen appears.</li> <li>b. Select <b>Push notifications</b>.</li> <li>c. Tap <b>Save</b>. A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>d. Tap <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>


Notification Center pairs with the mobile device.

3. In Notification Center, go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > Push Service**.
4. Verify that the mobile device appears in the list of paired devices.

### Pairing Notification Center with a Web Browser

Before pairing, ensure the following.

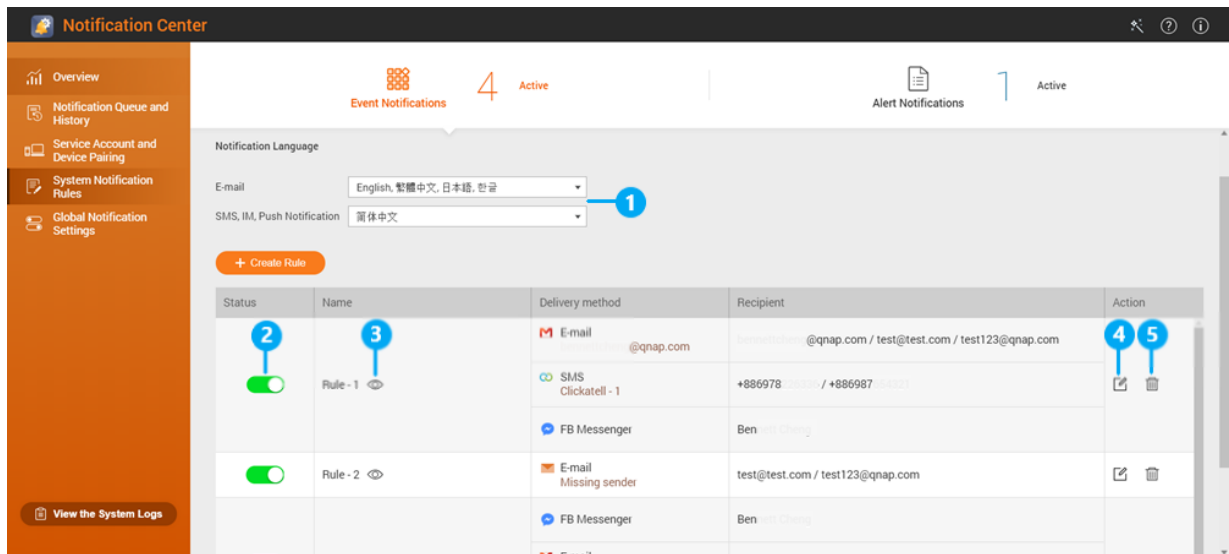
- Your device is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.
- You are using one of the following web browsers: Google Chrome, Internet Explorer, Firefox, or Safari.


1. Go to **Service Account and Device Pairing > Push Service** .
2. Under Browser, click **Pair**.  
Notification Center pairs with your current browser.  
The browser appears in the list of paired devices.
3. Change your browser name.
  - a. Beside your browser name, click  .
  - b. Specify a browser name.  
The field accepts a maximum of 127 ASCII characters.
  - c. Press ENTER.  
Notification Center saves your browser name.




## System Notification Rules

### Event Notifications

You can create custom rules and select applications and features that you want to receive event notifications from. You can also specify the message type, keywords, and time range to further define notification types or narrow the scope. Notification Center supports sending event notifications in multiple languages and provides four delivery methods to meet your different needs, including emails, SMS, instant messaging, and push services.



No.	Task	User Action
1	Specify a notification language.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select one or more languages for email notifications.</li> <li>2. Select a language for SMS, IM, and push notifications.</li> </ol>
2	Enable or disable the rule.	Click  .

No.	Task	User Action
3	Preview the rule settings.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click . The <b>Event Notifications</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Review the settings, and then click <b>Close</b>.</li> </ol>
4	Edit the rule.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click . The <b>Edit Rule for Event Notifications</b> window appears.</li> <li>2. Edit the settings.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>
5	Delete the rule.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Creating an Event Notification Rule

Before creating a notification rule, ensure that your NAS is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.

1. Go to **System Notification Rules > Event Notifications** .
2. Click **Create Rule**.  
The **Create event notification rule** window appears.
3. Specify a rule name.
4. Select the events you want recipients to be notified of.





**Tip**

To select all events, select **Select all**.  
To display only the events for a specific application or service, select the item from the **Displayed Items** drop-down menu.

5. Click **Next**.
6. Select a security level.

Security Level	Description
Information	Information messages inform users of changes in the NAS settings or its applications.
Warning	Warning messages inform users of events when NAS resources, such as storage space and memory, are critically low, or when the hardware behaves abnormally.
Error	Error messages inform users of problems that occur when the system tries to update or run applications or processes or when it fails to enable or disable NAS features.

7. Specify a keyword filter.



Filter	Description
All messages	Notification Center sends all notifications that are classified under the types you selected.
Includes	Notification Center sends only the notifications that are classified under the types you selected and includes the keywords you specify. To add keyword filters, click  , and then specify one or more keywords.
Excludes	Notification Center sends only the notifications that are classified under the types you selected and excludes the keywords you specify. To add keyword filters, click  , and then specify one or more keywords.



**Important**







The event notification filter only accepts keywords that are in English or in any of the languages specified on the **Event Notifications** screen.


- 8. Specify a time range when you want to receive notifications.
- 9. Click **Next**.
- 10. Select a delivery method.
- 11. Configure the sender information.

Method	User Action
Email	<p>a. Select an SMTP server.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To add an SMTP server, see <a href="#">Configuring an Email Notification Server</a>.</p> <p>b. Optional: Specify a custom subject line. This text replaces the original email subject line. Use this to help recipients better understand the notifications they receive.</p> <p>c. Optional: Select <b>Send email as plain text</b>.</p>
SMS	<p>Select an SMSC server.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> To add an SMSC server, see <a href="#">Configuring an SMS Notification Server</a>.</p>
Instant Messaging or Push Service	Notification Center automatically assigns Qbot.

- 12. Configure the recipient information.



Method	User Action
Email	<p>a. Click <b>Select NAS User</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window appears.</p> <p>b. Select one or more NAS users.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Finish</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window closes.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add a recipient, click <b>Add</b>, and then specify their email address.</li> <li>• To delete a recipient, click .</li> </ul>
SMS	<p>a. Click <b>Select NAS User</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window appears.</p> <p>b. Select one or more NAS users.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Finish</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window closes.</p> <p>d. Select a country code for each recipient.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add a recipient, click <b>Add</b>, and then specify their cell phone number.</li> <li>• To delete a recipient, click .</li> </ul>
Instant Messaging	<p>Select one or more recipients.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To add instant messaging notification recipients, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with Skype</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with Facebook Messenger</a></li> </ul>
Push Service	<p>Select one or more recipients.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To add push notification recipients, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with a Mobile Device</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with a Web Browser</a></li> </ul>

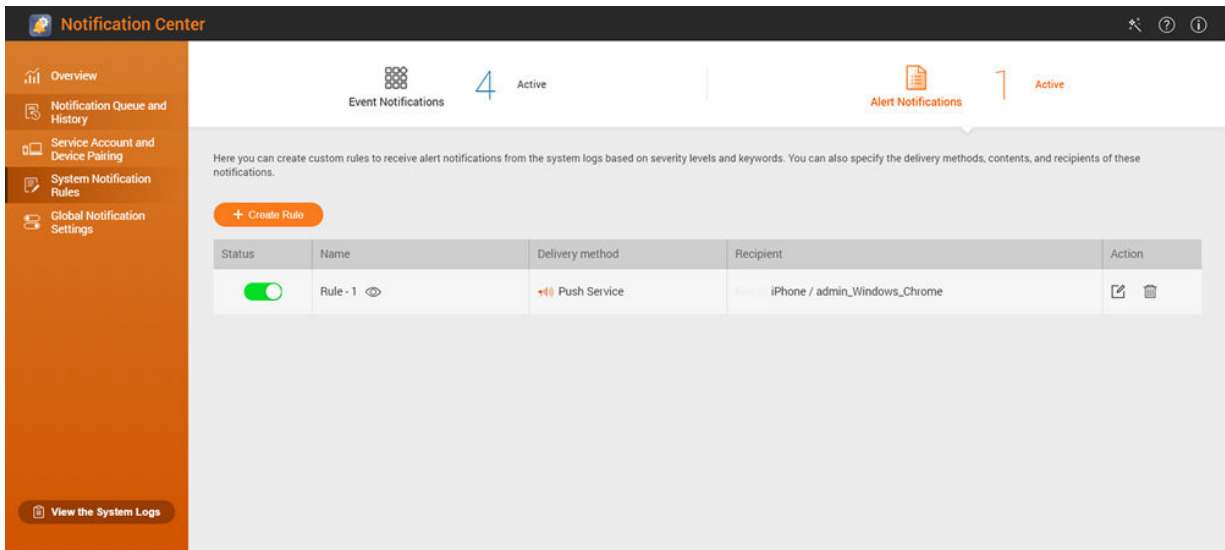
13. Optional: Click  to send a test message.
14. Optional: Click **Add Pair** to create a new pair.
15. Click **Next**.
16. Verify the rule settings.

**17. Click Finish.**

Notification Center displays the new rule on the **Event Notifications** screen.

## Alert Notifications

You can create custom rules to receive alert notifications from the System Logs based on the notification type and keywords. You can also specify the delivery methods, contents, and recipients of these notifications.



Button	Task	User Action
	Enable or disable the rule.	Click .
	Preview the rule settings.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click . The <b>Alert Notifications</b> window appears.</li> <li>Review the settings, and then click <b>Close</b>.</li> </ol>
	Edit the rule.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click . The <b>Edit Rule for Alert Notifications</b> window appears.</li> <li>Edit the settings.</li> <li>Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>
	Unpair from and remove the device or browser.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click . A confirmation message appears.</li> <li>Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol>

### Creating an Alert Notification Rule



Before creating a notification rule, ensure that your NAS is registered to an active myQNAPcloud account.

1. Go to **System Notification Rules > Alert Notifications** .

2. Click **Create Rule**.  
The **Create alert notification rule** window appears.
3. Specify a rule name.
4. Select the events you want recipients to be notified of.
  - a. Select a security level.

Security Level	Description
Information	Information messages inform users of changes in the NAS settings or its applications.
Warning	Warning messages inform users of events when NAS resources, such as storage space and memory, are critically low, or when the hardware behaves abnormally.
Error	Error messages inform users of problems that occur when the system tries to update or run applications or processes or when it fails to enable or disable NAS features.

- b. Specify a keyword filter.



Filter	Description
All messages	Notification Center sends all notifications that are classified under the types you selected.
Includes	Notification Center sends only the notifications that are classified under the types you selected and includes the keywords you specify.  To add keyword filters, click  , and then specify one or more keywords.
Excludes	Notification Center sends only the notifications that are classified under the types you selected and excludes the keywords you specify.  To add keyword filters, click  , and then specify one or more keywords.







**Important**



The alert notification filter only accepts keywords that are in English.


5. Specify a time range when you want to receive notifications.
6. Specify a notification message threshold.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Select a delivery method.
9. Configure the sender information.

Method	User Action
Email	<p>a. Select an SMTP server.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b> To add an SMTP server, see <a href="#">Configuring an Email Notification Server</a>.</p> <p>b. Optional: Specify a custom subject line. This text replaces the original email subject line. Use this to help recipients better understand the notifications they receive.</p> <p>c. Optional: Select <b>Send email as plain text</b>.</p>
SMS	<p>Select an SMSC server.</p> <p> <b>Note</b> To add an SMSC server, see <a href="#">Configuring an SMS Notification Server</a>.</p>
Instant Messaging or Push Service	Notification Center automatically assigns Qbot.

10. Configure the recipient information.

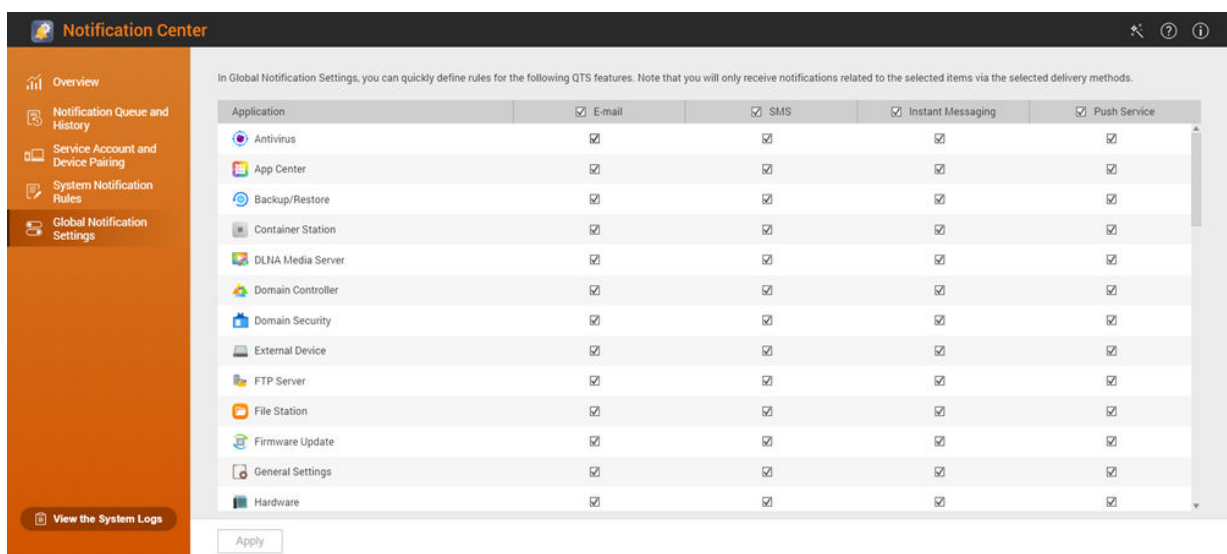
Method	User Action
Email	<p>a. Click <b>Select NAS User</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window appears.</p> <p>b. Select one or more NAS users.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Finish</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window closes.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add a recipient, click <b>Add</b>, and then specify their email address.</li> <li>• To delete a recipient, click .</li> </ul>
SMS	<p>a. Click <b>Select NAS User</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window appears.</p> <p>b. Select one or more NAS users.</p> <p>c. Click <b>Finish</b>. The <b>Select NAS User</b> window closes.</p> <p>d. Select a country code for each recipient.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To add a recipient, click <b>Add</b>, and then specify their cell phone number.</li> <li>• To delete a recipient, click .</li> </ul>

Method	User Action
Instant Messaging	Select one or more recipients.   <b>Tip</b> To add instant messaging notification recipients, see the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with Skype</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with Facebook Messenger</a></li> </ul>
Push Service	Select one or more recipients.   <b>Tip</b> To add push notification recipients, see the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with a Mobile Device</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Pairing Notification Center with a Web Browser</a></li> </ul>

- Optional: Click  to send a test message.
- Optional: Click **Add Pair** to create a new pair.
- Click **Next**.
- Verify the rule settings.
- Click **Finish**.  
Notification Center displays the new rule on the **Alert Notifications** screen.

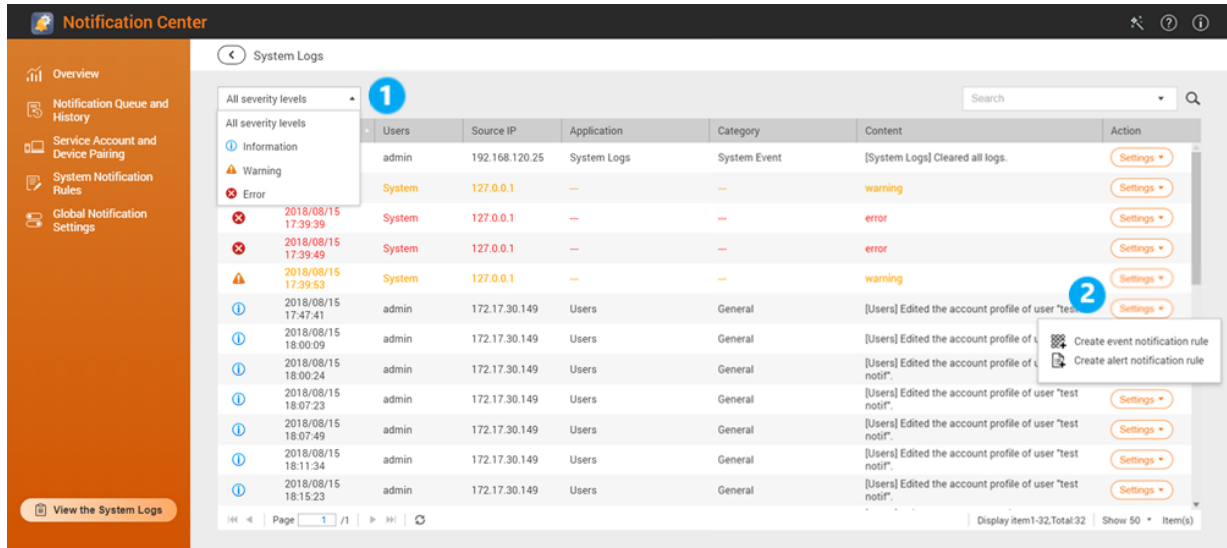
## Global Notification Settings

The Global Notification Settings screen allows you to quickly define global notification rules. From the list, you can select or deselect, and then apply the delivery methods for each QuTS hero feature or application. Users only receive notifications related to the selected features through their selected delivery methods.



## System Logs

The System Logs screen displays all system events on the NAS. On this screen, you can sort and filter the logs or create notification rules based on existing logs.



No.	Task	User Action
1	Filter system logs	Select a security level.
2	Create a notification rule	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Settings</b>.</li> <li>2. Select one of the following options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Create event notification rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Create alert notification rule</b></li> </ul>                     The <b>Create notification rule</b> window appears.                 </li> <li>3. Select one of the following options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add as a new rule</b></li> <li>• <b>Add to an existing rule</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Click <b>Confirm</b>.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tip</b> To add or edit notification rules, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Creating an Event Notification Rule</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Creating an Alert Notification Rule</a></li> </ul>

## 14. License Center

License Center allows you to monitor and manage the licenses of your applications running on your NAS. Through License Center, you can perform the following actions.

- Purchase licenses through the application's built-in Software Store
- Activate and deactivate licenses either manually or automatically, and either offline or through myQNAPcloud Link
- Delete licenses
- Recover licenses if you recently reinitialized your NAS
- Transfer licenses purchased from the old QNAP License Store to the new QNAP license server

### Related Portals

Portal	Description	URL
QNAP License Manager	QNAP License Manager is a portal that allows you and your organizations to manage all licenses from one central console.	<a href="https://license.qnap.com">https://license.qnap.com</a>
QNAP Software Store	The QNAP Software Store is a one-stop shop where you can purchase licenses for QNAP and QNAP-affiliated software.	<a href="https://software.qnap.com">https://software.qnap.com</a>
Old QNAP License Store	Users of QuTS hero 4.3.4.0435 or older can purchase licenses from this online store.	<a href="https://license2.qnap.com">https://license2.qnap.com</a>

### Buying Licenses Using QNAP ID

Before buying a license, ensure the following.

- The application is already installed on your NAS.
  - You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
1. Open License Center.
  2. Go to **Software Store**.
  3. Locate the product on the list, and then click **Buy**.  
The license details appear.
  4. Review the details, and then click **Next**.  
The **Authentication** dialog box appears.
  5. Specify your QNAP ID password.
  6. Click **Next**.  
The product window appears.
  7. Select the item you want to buy, and then review the price.
  8. Read and agree to the terms of service and product agreement.

9. Click **Checkout**.  
The purchase summary page appears in your web browser.
10. Review the details, and then click **Buy Now**.  
The secure PayPal browser window appears.
11. Select a payment method.

Payment Method	Description
Credit or debit card	Specify your payment information, including your card details, billing address, and contact information.
PayPal	Use your existing PayPal account or create a new one.

12. Click **Pay Now**.  
The payment confirmation window appears.
13. Optional: Review the license details, and then click **Activate Now**.  
The license is activated.



**Tip**

You can activate licenses at a later time. For details, see [License Activation](#).

## License Activation

You can activate QNAP or QNAP-affiliated licenses using the following methods.

Activation Method	Description
Using QNAP ID	Licenses purchased through License Center or Software Store are stored in your QNAP ID account. They can be accessed through both License Center and the <a href="#">QNAP License Manager</a> website. To activate this type of license, see <a href="#">Activating a License Using QNAP ID</a> .
Using a product key	The 25-character product key is purchased together with the product from either QNAP or an authorized reseller. The product key is normally printed on the product package. You can use product keys to activate licenses in License Center. For details, see <a href="#">Activating a License Using a Product or License Key</a> .
Using a license key	You can generate the 25-character license key after purchasing licenses through the <a href="#">QNAP Software Store</a> . For details, see <a href="#">Generating a License Key</a> . You can use license keys to activate licenses in License Center. For details, see <a href="#">Activating a License Using a Product or License Key</a> . License details for licenses activated using license keys are not displayed on the QNAP License Manager website.



Activation Method	Description
Using a product authorization key (PAK)	<p>The 24-character PAK is purchased together with the product from either QNAP or an authorized reseller. The product key is normally printed on the product package.</p> <p>If you are using NAS devices running QuTS hero version 4.3.4.0435 or older, use PAKs to activate licenses through App Center.</p> <p>If you are using NAS devices running QuTS hero version 4.3.4.0483 or later, you can transfer PAKs purchased from the <a href="#">Old QNAP License Store</a> to NAS devices. For details, see <a href="#">Activating a License Using a PAK</a>.</p>
Offline	<p>Use this method when the NAS is not connected to the internet. For details, see <a href="#">Activating a License Offline</a>.</p>

### Activating a License Using QNAP ID

Before activating your license, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
  - You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
1. Open License Center.
  2. Go to **My Licenses**.
  3. Click **Add**.  
The **License Activation** window appears.
  4. Select a license from the list.
  5. Click **Add**.  
License Center activates the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
  6. Click **Close**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.

### Activating a License Using a Product or License Key

Before activating your license using a product or license key, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
  - You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
1. Open License Center.
  2. Go to **My Licenses**.
  3. Click **Add**.  
The **License Activation** window appears.
  4. Click **manually activate a license**.
  5. Select **Use a product or license key**.
  6. Click **Next**.

7. Specify the key.

Key	Description
Product key	The product key is purchased together with the product from either QNAP or an authorized reseller. The product key is normally printed on the product package.
License key	Users can generate a license key from the QNAP License Manager website. For details, see <a href="#">Generating a License Key</a> .

8. Read and agree to the terms of service.
9. Click **Activate**.  
A notification message appears.
10. Click **Activate**.  
License Center activates the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
11. Click **Close**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.


### Generating a License Key

1. Open your web browser.
2. Go to <https://license.qnap.com>.
3. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
4. Go to **My Licenses**.
5. From the list of licenses, select the license you want to generate a key for.
6. In the table below, select **Activation and Installation** and then select **Activate on QNAP Device**.  
The **Activate License** window appears.
7. Select **Activate using the license key**.
8. Click **Next**.  
License Manager generates the license key.



**Tip**

Click **Renew License Key** to generate a new key.

9. Click .  
Your system copies the license.
10. Click **Done**.

### Activating a License Using a PAK

Before activating a license using a product authorization key (PAK), ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
- You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.

1. Open License Center.

2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Click **Add**.  
The **License Activation** window appears.
4. Click **manually activate a license**.
5. Select **Use product authorization key (PAK)**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Specify the PAK.
8. Click **Next**.  
License Center transfers and activates the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
9. Click **Close**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.

## Activating a License Offline

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Click **Add**.  
The **License Activation** window appears.
4. Click **manually activate a license**.
5. Select **Offline Activation**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Read the instructions, and then click **Download**.  
License Center downloads the device identity file (DIF) file to your computer.
8. Read and agree to the terms of service.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Read the instructions, and then click **Go to License Manager**.  
Your web browser opens the **QNAP License Manager** website.
11. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
12. Go to **My Licenses**.
13. From the list of licenses, select the license you want to activate.
14. In the table below, click **Activation and Installation**.  
The license activation details appear.
15. Click **Activate on QuTS Hero**.  
The **Activate License** dialog box appears.
16. Select **Offline Activation**.
17. Click **Next**.


18. Click **Browse**.  
The file browser appears.
19. Locate and select the DIF from your computer.
20. Click **Upload**.  
QNAP License Manager activates the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
21. Click **Download**.  
QNAP License Manager downloads the license install file (LIF) to your computer.
22. Click **Done**.
23. Go back to License Center.
24. In the **License Activation** window, click **Next**.
25. Click **Browse Files**.  
The file browser appears.
26. Locate and select the LIF from your computer.
27. Click **Next**.  
License Center uploads the LIF and displays the license summary.
28. Click **Activate**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.

## License Deactivation

You can deactivate QNAP or QNAP-affiliated licenses using the following methods.

Activation Method	Description
Using QNAP ID	Licenses purchased through License Center or Software Store are stored in your QNAP ID account, and can be accessed through both License Center and the <a href="#">QNAP License Manager</a> website. To deactivate this type of license, see <a href="#">Deactivating a License Using QNAP ID</a> .
Offline	Use this method when the NAS is not connected to the internet. For details, see <a href="#">Deactivating a License Offline</a> .



### Deactivating a License Using QNAP ID

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to deactivate, and then click .  
The **License Deactivation** window appears.
4. Select **Use QNAP ID**.
5. Read and acknowledge the warning.
6. Click **Next**.  
License Center deactivates the license.

A confirmation message appears.

7. Click **Close**.  
License Center removes the license from the list of active licenses.

## Deactivating a License Offline

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to deactivate, and then click .  
The **License Deactivation** window appears.
4. Select **Offline Deactivation**.
5. Read and acknowledge the warning.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Read the instructions, and then click **Download**.  
License Center downloads the license uninstall file (LUF) to your computer.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Read the instructions, and then click **Finish**.
10. Open your web browser.
11. Go to <https://license.qnap.com>.
12. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
13. Go to **My Licenses**.
14. From the list of licenses, select the license you want to deactivate.
15. In the table below, click **Activation and Installation**.  
The license activation details appear.
16. Under **Advanced Options**, click .  
The **Deactivate License** window appears.
17. Click **Offline Deactivation**.
18. Click **Browse**.  
The file browser appears.
19. Locate and select the LUF from your computer.
20. Click **Upload**.  
QNAP License Manager deactivates the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
21. Click **Done**.



**Tip**

If the license is still listed in **My Licenses**, click  to remove it from the list. If the license has not yet expired, this action does not permanently delete the license from License Center.

## License Extension


License Center will notify you 30 days before any of your subscription-based licenses expire. You can extend your QNAP or QNAP-affiliated licenses using the following methods.

Activation Method	Description
Using QNAP ID	Licenses purchased through License Center or Software Store are stored in your QNAP ID account, and can be accessed through both License Center and the <a href="#">QNAP License Manager</a> website. If you have an existing valid, unused subscription-based license in License Center, you can use this to extend your expiring license. For details, see <a href="#">Extending a License Using QNAP ID</a> .
Offline using an unused license	If you have a valid, unused subscription-based license and your NAS is not connected to the internet, you can use this method to extend your expiring license. For details, see <a href="#">Extending a License Offline Using an Unused License</a> .
Offline using a product key	The 25-character product key is purchased together with the product from either QNAP or an authorized reseller. The product key is normally printed on the product package. If you have a valid, unused product key for a subscription-based license, and your NAS is not connected to the internet, you can use this method to extend your expiring license. For details, see <a href="#">Extending a License Offline Using a Product Key</a> .
Purchasing a new license on the QNAP Software Store	You can purchase a new subscription-based license from the QNAP Software Store, and then use it to extend your expiring license. For details, see <a href="#">Extending a License by Purchasing Online</a> .

## Extending a License Using QNAP ID

Before extending licenses, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
- You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
- You have an existing valid, unused subscription-based license.

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to extend, and then click .



**Tip**

If a license is expiring in 30 days or less, its status is `Expires soon`.

The **License Extension** window appears.

4. Select an unused license.




**Warning**

License Center will use this license to extend your expiring license. This process is irreversible. Once this license is used for extension, you cannot use it for anything else.

5. Click **Extend**.  
License Center extends the license.  
A confirmation message appears.
6. Click **Close**.

## Extending a License Offline Using an Unused License

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to extend, and then click .



**Tip**

If a license is expiring in 30 days or less, its status is `Expires soon`.

The **License Extension** window appears.

4. Read the instructions, and then click **Download**.  
License Center downloads the device identity file (DIF) file to your computer.
5. Read and agree to the terms of service.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Read the instructions, and then click **Go to License Manager**.  
Your web browser opens the QNAP License Manager website.
8. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
9. Go to **My Licenses**.
10. From the list of licenses, select the license you want to activate.
11. In the table below, click **Activation and Installation**.  
The license activation details appear.
12. Click **Extend on QuTS Hero**.  
The **Extend License** window appears.
13. Select **Use an unused license**, and then click **Next**.  
The list of unused licenses appears.
14. Select an unused license.




**Warning**

License Center will use this license to extend your expiring license. This process is irreversible. Once this license is used for extension, you cannot use it for anything else.

15. Click **Next**.
16. Click **Browse**.  
The file browser appears.

17. Locate and select the DIF from your computer.
18. Click **Upload**.  
A confirmation message appears.
19. Click **Download**.  
QNAP License Manager downloads the license install file (LIF) to your computer.
20. Click **Done**.
21. Go back to License Center.
22. In the **License Extension** window, click **Next**.
23. Click **Browse Files**.  
The file browser appears.
24. Locate and select the LIF from your computer.
25. Click **Next**.  
License Center uploads the LIF and displays the license summary.
26. Click **Extend**.  
A confirmation message appears.
27. Click **Close**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.

## Extending a License Offline Using a Product Key

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to extend, and then click .



### Tip

If a license is expiring in 30 days or less, its status is `Expires soon`.

The **License Extension** window appears.


4. Read the instructions, and then click **Download**.  
A notification message appears.
5. Click **Download**.  
License Center downloads the device identity file (DIF) file to your computer.
6. Read and agree to the terms of service.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Read the instructions, and then click **Go to License Manager**.  
Your web browser opens the QNAP License Manager website.
9. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
10. Go to **My Licenses**.
11. From the list of licenses, select the license you want to activate.



12. In the table below, click **Activation and Installation**.  
The license activation details appear.
13. Click **Extend on QUTS Hero**.  
The **Extend License** window appears.
14. Select **Use a product key**, and then click **Next**.
15. Specify the product key.
16. Click **Next**.  
A confirmation message appears.
17. Click **Download**.  
QNAP License Manager downloads the license install file (LIF) to your computer.
18. Click **Done**.
19. Go back to License Center.
20. In the **License Extension** window, click **Next**.
21. Click **Browse Files**.  
The file browser appears.
22. Locate and select the LIF from your computer.
23. Click **Next**.  
License Center uploads the LIF and displays the license summary.
24. Click **Extend**.  
A confirmation message appears.
25. Click **Close**.  
The license appears on the list of active licenses.

## Extending a License by Purchasing Online

Before extending licenses, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
  - You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
1. Open License Center.
  2. Go to **My Licenses**.
  3. Identify the license you want to extend, and then click .



### Tip

If a license is expiring in 30 days or less, its status is `Expires soon`.

The **License Extension** window appears.

4. Click **manually extend a license**.
5. Select **Purchase online**.
6. Click **Next**.

The **Authentication** dialog box appears.

7. Specify your QNAP ID password.
8. Click **Next**.  
The product window appears.
9. Select the item you want to buy, and then review the price.
10. Read and agree to the terms of service and product agreement.
11. Click **Checkout**.  
The purchase summary page appears in your web browser.
12. Review the details, and then click **Buy Now**.  
The secure PayPal browser window appears.
13. Select a payment method.

Payment Method	Description
Credit or debit card	Specify your payment information, including your card details, billing address, and contact information.
PayPal	Use your existing PayPal account or create a new one.

14. Click **Pay Now**.  
The license is extended.  
A confirmation message appears in License Center.
15. Click **Close**.

## License Management

License Center allows you to perform any of the following license management tasks. For license management tasks that are not included in this list, contact customer support through the QNAP [Service Portal](#).

Task	Description
Recover a license	Licenses will become unavailable after you restore QNAP NAS devices to factory settings. To recover licenses, see <a href="#">Recovering Licenses</a> .
Transfer a license to the new QNAP License Server	When upgrading older versions of QuTS hero to QuTS hero 4.3.4.0483 build 20180213 and later, valid PAKs purchased from the old QNAP License Store are deactivated. These PAKs are accessible on License Center and can be transferred to and activated on the new QNAP License Manager website. For details, see <a href="#">Transferring a License to the New QNAP License Server</a> .
Delete a license	You can delete expired subscription-based licenses from the <b>My Licenses</b> screen. For details, see <a href="#">Deleting a License</a> .

## Recovering Licenses


Before recovering licenses, ensure that your NAS is connected to the internet.

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **Recover Licenses**.

3. Click **Get Started**.  
The **License Recovery** dialog box appears.
4. Read and agree to the terms of service.
5. Click **Recover**.  
License Center automatically recovers all available licenses for applications installed on your NAS.

## Transferring a License to the New QNAP License Server

Before transferring licenses, ensure the following.

- Your NAS is connected to the internet.
  - You are signed in to myQNAPcloud.
1. Open License Center.
  2. Go to **My Licenses**.
  3. Identify the license you want to transfer, and then click .  
A confirmation message appears.
  4. Read the terms of service, and then click **Transfer & Activate**.




### Warning

After you register a license with your current QNAP ID, it will no longer be transferable.

License Center transfers the license.  
A confirmation message appears.

5. Optional: Click **QNAP License Manager** to review the license details.
6. Click **Close**.

## Deleting a License

1. Open License Center.
2. Go to **My Licenses**.
3. Identify the license you want to delete, and then click .  
A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **Yes**.  
License Center deletes the license.



### Tip

If the license has not yet expired, the license will still be listed in the **License Activation** table.

## 15. Helpdesk


Helpdesk is a built-in application that allows users to quickly find solutions or contact the QNAP support team when they encounter any issues while using QUTS hero and related applications.

### Overview

On the **Overview** screen, you can contact the QNAP support team, browse frequently asked questions and application notes, download QNAP user manuals, find out how to use a QNAP NAS, search the QNAP knowledge base, and find compatible devices. This screen also displays Helpdesk message logs.

Title	Description
<b>Help Request</b>	Contact the QNAP support team by submitting your issues or questions.
<b>QNAP Online Tutorial &amp; FAQ</b>	Browse frequently asked questions and application notes for QNAP NAS and applications.
<b>NAS User Manual</b>	View or download QNAP NAS user manuals.
<b>Help Center</b>	Find how to use a QNAP NAS.
<b>QNAP Helpdesk Knowledge Base</b>	Search the QNAP knowledge base for answers from the support team for different issues.
<b>Compatibility List</b>	Find drives and devices that are compatible with QNAP NAS.
<b>My Tickets</b>	View your submitted tickets status.

### Configuring Settings

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Overview**.
3. Click .  
The **Settings** window appears.
4. Specify the message retention time.
5. Optional: Click **Retain all messages**.
6. Optional: Click **I am allowing QNAP Support to access my system logs**.
7. Optional: click **Sign In**.  
The **Settings** window appears.
8. Specify your QNAP ID.
9. Specify the password.
10. Click **Sign In**.
11. Click **Apply**.

### Help Request

Help Request allows users to directly submit requests to QNAP from your NAS. Helpdesk automatically collects and attaches NAS system information and system logs to your request to help the QNAP technical support team identify and troubleshoot potential issues.

## Submitting a Ticket

You can submit a Helpdesk ticket to receive support from QNAP.

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Help Request**.
3. Sign in with your QNAP ID.
4. Specify the ticket details.

Field	User Action
<b>Subject</b>	Specify the subject.
<b>Issue Category</b>	Select an issue category, and then select an issue.
<b>Issue Type</b>	Select an issue type.
<b>Operating System</b>	Select an operating system.
<b>Description</b>	Specify a short description for each issue.


5. Upload the attachments.
  - a. Optional: Select **I am allowing QNAP Support to access my system logs**.
  - b. Upload screenshots or other related files.



### Note

- You can upload up to 8 attachments, including system logs.
- Each file must be less than 5 MB.

6. Specify the following information.

Field	User Action
<b>Your Email Address</b>	Specify your email address.
<b>Phone number</b>	Specify your phone number.
<b>Customer type</b>	Select a customer type.
<b>Company name</b>	Specify your company name. <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  <b>Note</b>                      This field only appears when Business User is selected in <b>Customer type</b>.                 </div>
<b>Your timezone</b>	Select a timezone.
<b>Apply the changes to my profile in QNAP Account Center</b>	Click to apply the changes to your profile in the QNAP Account Center.
<b>First name</b>	Specify your first name.
<b>Last name</b>	Specify your last name.
<b>Your location</b>	Select a location.

7. Optional: Select **Apply the changes to my profile in QNAP Account Center**.

8. Click **Submit**.

## Remote Support

Remote Support allows the QNAP support team to access your NAS directly to assist you with your issues.

### Enabling Remote Support

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Remote Support**.
3. Specify your ticket ID.
4. Specify your email address.
5. Click **Enable Remote Support**.  
The **QNAP Helpdesk Terms of Service** window appears.
6. Click **I agree to these Terms of Service**.
7. Click **Agree**.  
The **Enable Remote Support** window appears.



#### Note

Steps 6 and 7 are required only when the user enables Remote Support for the first time.

8. Click **Confirm**.  
Helpdesk creates a private key and temporary account.

### Extending Remote Support

Extending Remote Support allows the users to extend the remote session by a week in case users want to have the remote session at a specific time. QNAP will also notify the user to extend the session if the issue is unsolved.

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Remote Support**.
3. Click **Extend**.



#### Note

The **Extend** button only appears after Remote Support is enabled.

### Disabling Remote Support

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Remote Support**.
3. Click **Disable**.



#### Note

The **Disable** button only appears after Remote Support is enabled.

4. Click **Finish**.

**Note**

Remote Support will also be disabled when the support team has completed the remote session, or when the private key has expired.

## Diagnostic Tool

The Diagnostic Tool provides several features for checking the stability of the NAS. Users can export system kernel records to quickly check whether abnormal operations have recently occurred. In addition, users can send the records to QNAP technical support for further investigation. The Diagnostic Tool also provides features for checking the file system, hard drives, and RAM.

## Downloading Logs

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Diagnostic Tool > Download Logs** .
3. Click **Download**.  
Helpdesk generates a ZIP file.
4. Download the ZIP file.
5. Optional: Send the file to QNAP through [Help Request](#) for further investigation.

## Performing an HDD Standby Test

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Diagnostic Tool > HDD Standby Test** .
3. Select an enclosure to analyze.
4. Click **Start**.  
Helpdesk performs an HDD standby test.
5. Optional: Click **Download** to download the test reports.

## Performing an HDD Stress Test

1. Open **Helpdesk**.
2. Go to **Diagnostic Tool > HDD Stress Test** .
3. Click **Start**.  
Helpdesk performs an HDD stress test.